

EXHIBIT 100-100000

[Faint, illegible handwriting]

[Faint, illegible handwriting]

[Faint, illegible handwriting]

[Faint, illegible handwriting]

[Faint, illegible handwriting]

ENGLISH GRAMMAR,

ADAPTED TO THE

DIFFERENT CLASSES OF LEARNERS

WITH

AN APPENDIX,

CONTAINING

RULES AND OBSERVATIONS

FOR ASSISTING THE MORE ADVANCED STUDENTS

TO WRITE WITH FREQUENT AND ACCURACY.

"They who are learning to compose and arrange their sentences with accuracy and order, are learning, at the same time, to think with accuracy and order."

BLAIR.

BY LINDLEY MURRAY.

LAST EDITION.

ST. JOHN'S, (N. H.)

PRINTED BY AND FOR WILLIAM RAYMOND,
AND SOLD WHOLESALE AND RETAIL

AT HIS BOOK-STORE,
PRINCE WILLIAM STREET,
1821.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

AND ITS USES

FOR THE USE OF TEACHERS

IN SCHOOLS

AND COLLEGES

BY J. H. GREEN

OF THE UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

THE UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO PRESS
TORONTO, CANADA

BY J. H. GREEN

LAST EDITION

AT THE UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

PRINTED BY AND FOR WILLIAM LEWIS

AND JOHN L. LEWIS, 101 BAYVIEW

AT THE UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

PRINTED BY AND FOR WILLIAM LEWIS

Public Archives of Nova Scotia
HALIFAX, N. S.

was designed for the instruction of youth, there is a necessity for the teacher, by recommending the subject in so interesting and instructive a manner, as to excite them and enable them to persevere in the pursuit, even for their comprehension; and the other part, consisting of by each part and giving to each part its proper name, so that we may be able to refer to the different parts of the poem, which is also defective in this respect, but that a summary to people the poem, understanding, and to extend the knowledge of the principles of literature. A student, general view, or outline, of all the connected parts of the story to which they are engaged; a printed and judicious supply of this outline; and a due arrangement of the divisions, according to their natural order and connection, appears to be among the best means of enlightening the minds of youth, and of facilitating their acquisition of knowledge. The author of this work, at the same time, that he has endeavored to avoid a plan which may be too narrow or too extensive, depending on its particular application to their disposition, has studied to render his subject as instructive, as possible, and interesting. He has not, however, written completely to please those objects. It could be too successful in the present, and perhaps he has failed, and he has failed in the present, of the Indians and other people.

This method which he has adopted, is the only one
 known in chemistry, and different from all, he trusts, known

desire to that gradual and regular procedure, which is so favourable to the business of instruction. The more important rules, definitions, and observations, and which are therefore the most proper to be committed to memory, are printed with a larger type; whilst remarks and remarks that are of less consequence, that extend or diversify the general idea, or that serve as explanations, are contained in the smaller letter; those, or the chief of them, will be pursued by the student to the greatest advantage; if perused still the general system is completed. The use of notes and observations, at the bottom and detached spaces, at the bottom of the page, would not, it is imagined, be so likely to attract the personal or youthful student as to sample and regular illustration as a continued and uniform view of the several subjects. In adapting this work, care has been taken to adjust it so that the whole may be pursued in a connected progress, or the part contained in the larger character read in order by itself. Except the notes and observations intended, not only to explain the subjects, but to illustrate them, by comparative views of the grammar of other languages, and of the various sentiments of English grammarians; but like to invite the ingenious student to inquiry and reflection, and to prompt to a more extensive metaphysical and philosophical research.

With respect to the definitions and rules, it may not be improper more particularly to observe, that in selecting and forming them, it has been the author's aim to render them as exact and comprehensive, and, at the same time, as intelligible to young minds, as the nature of the subject, and the difficulties attending it, would admit. He presumes that they are also calculated to be readily committed to memory, and easily retained. For this purpose, he has been sollicitous to select terms that are smooth and valuable in perspective throughout of the sentence, to use another; to avoid prolixity and periods; and to give the whole, as far as possible, an air of brevity of expression as he could devise, and to the end of his duty.

From the sentiment generally admitted, that a proper selection of English composition is more instructive to the young grammarian, than any rules and definitions, and propriety that

can be given, the Compiler has been induced to pay particular attention to this part of the subject; and though the instances of false grammar, under the rules of Syntax, are numerous, it is hoped they will not be found too many, when their variety and usefulness are considered.

It is a work which professes itself to be a compilation; and which, from the nature and design of it, must consist chiefly of materials selected from the writings of others. It is scarcely necessary to apologise for the use which the Compiler has made of his predecessors' editions; or for omitting to insert their names. From the alterations which have been frequently made in the contents and the language, to suit the connexion, and to adapt them to the particular purposes for which they are introduced; and, in many instances, from the uncertainty as to when the passages originally belonged, the insertion of names could seldom be made with propriety. But if this could have been generally done, a work of this nature would derive an advantage from it, equal to the inconvenience of crowding the pages with a repetition of names and references. It is, however, proper to acknowledge, in general terms, that the authors to whom the grammatical part of this compilation is principally indebted for its materials, are Harris, Johnson, Lowth, Priestley, Beattie, Sheridan, Walker, and Gort.

The Rules and Observations respecting Punctuation, are contained in the Appendix, and which are, chiefly, extracted from the writings of Blair and Campbell; will, it is intended, form a proper addition to the Grammar. The subjects are very nearly related; and the study of punctuation and accuracy in writing, appears naturally to follow that of Grammar. A competent acquaintance with the principles of both, will prepare and qualify the students, for prosecuting those additional improvements in language, to which they may be properly directed.

On the utility and importance of the study of Grammar, and the principles of Composition, much might be advanced; for the encouragement of persons in early life to apply themselves to this branch of learning; but as the limits of this Introduction will not allow of many observations on the subject, a

Now leading sentences are all that can be admitted here with propriety. As words are the signs of our ideas, and the medium by which we perceive the sentiments of others, and communicate our own; and as signs exhibit the things which they are intended to represent, more or less accurately, according as their real or established conformity to the things is more or less exact; it is evident, that in proportion to our knowledge of the nature and properties of words, of their relation to each other, and of their established connection with the ideas to which they are applied, will be the certainty and force with which we transfuse our sentiments into the minds of another; and that, without a competent knowledge of this kind, we shall frequently be in hazard of misunderstanding others, and of being misunderstood ourselves. It may indeed be justly asserted, that many of the differences in opinion amongst men, with the disputes, contentions, and alienations of heart, which have too often proceeded from such differences, have been occasioned by a want of proper skill in the connection and meaning of words, and by a treacherous misapplication of language.

One of the best supports, which the recommendation of this study can receive, in small compass, may be derived from the following sentiments of an eminent and candid writer on language and composition. "All that regards the study of composition, merits the higher attention upon this account, that it is intimately connected with the improvement of all intellectual powers. For I must be allowed to say, that when we are employed, after a proper manner, in the study of composition, we are cultivating the understanding itself. The study of arranging and expressing our thoughts with propriety, teaches to think, as well as to speak, accurately."

Reviewing the close of this Introduction, it may not be superfluous to observe, that the author of the following work has no interest in it, but that which arises from the hope, that it will prove of some advantage to young persons, and relieve the labours of those who are employed in their education. He wishes

to p
learn
which
truth
your
more
much
well
back
really
does
the

The
book
place
The s
econo
review
super
very
the le
reader
editio
piece
ber; a
or to c

STI
and inter
will not
is perfect
comes to
give coll
tion of the
Hold

to promote, in some degree, the cause of virtue, as well as of learning; and, with this view, he has been studious, through the whole of the work, not only to avoid every example and illustration, which might have an improper effect on the minds of youth; but also to introduce, on many occasions, such as have a moral and religious tendency. His attention to objects of so much importance will, he trusts, meet the approbation of every well-disposed reader. If they were faithfully regarded in all books of education, they would doubtless contribute very materially to the order and happiness of society, by guarding the conscience, and cherishing the virtue of the rising generation.

Holdgate, near York, 1804.

ADVERTISEMENT

TO THE SECOND EDITION.

The eighth edition of this grammar received considerable alterations and additions; but works of this nature admit of repeated improvements; and are, perhaps, never complete. The author, solicited to render his book more worthy of the encouraging approbation bestowed on it by the public, has again revised the work with care and attention. The new edition, he hopes will be found much improved. The additions, which are very considerable, are, chiefly, such as are calculated to expand the learner's views of the subject; to obviate objections; and to render the study of grammar both easy and interesting. This edition contains also a new and enlarged system of parsing; copious lists of nouns arranged according to their gender and number; and many notes and observations, which serve to sustain, or to explain, particular rules and positions.*

*The author conceives that the occasional strictures, dispersed through the book, and intended to illustrate and support a number of important grammatical points, will not, to young persons of ingenuity, appear to be dry and useless discussions. He is persuaded that, by such persons, they will be read with attention. And he presumes that these strictures will gratify their curiosity, stimulate application, and give solidity and permanence to their grammatical knowledge.—In the Oxford edition of the grammar, the reader will find many additional discussions of this nature.

Holdgate, near York, 1804.

INTRODUCTION.

The writer is sensible that, after all his endeavours to vindicate the principles of the book, there are few of the divisions, arrangements, definitions, or rules, against which critical sagacity cannot devise plausible objections. The subject is attended with so much controversy, and admits of views so various, that it was not possible to render every part of it unexceptionable; or to accommodate the work, in all respects, to the opinions and preconceptions of every grammarian and teacher. If the author has adopted that system which, on the whole, is best calculated to illustrate the nature of the subject, and conformable to the understanding of the most judicious grammarians; if his reasonings and illustrations, respecting particular points, are founded on just principles, and the pronunciation of the English language; he has, perhaps, done all that could reasonably be expected in a work of this nature; and he may warrantably indulge a hope, that the book will be still more extensively approved and circulated.

CHAP.
CHAP.
CHAP.
CHAP.
CHAP.
CHAP.

CONTENTS.

PART I.—ORTHOGRAPHY.

CHAP. 1.	Of letters.	Page.
SECT. 1.	Of the nature of the letters, and of a perfect orthography.	13
2.	Of the orthography on the sounds of the letters.	31
3.	The orthography of numbers explained.	32
CHAP. 2.	Of syllables, and the rules for arranging them.	35
CHAP. 3.	Of words in general, and the rules for spelling them.	57

PART II.—GRAMMAR.

CHAP. 1.	A general view of the parts of speech.	41
CHAP. 2.	Of the articles.	44
CHAP. 3.	Of substantives.	46
SECT. 1.	Of substantives in general.	46
2.	Of nouns.	47
3.	Of numbers.	50
4.	Of cases.	53
CHAP. 4.	Of adjectives.	55
SECT. 1.	Of the nature of adjectives, and the degrees of comparison.	55
2.	Remarks on the subject of comparison.	59
CHAP. 5.	Of pronouns.	60
SECT. 1.	Of the personal pronouns.	60
2.	Of relative pronouns.	62
3.	Of the adjective pronouns.	65

CHAP. 6.	Of verbs.	Page.
SECT. 1.	Of the nature of verbs in general.	70
2.	Of number and person.	73
3.	Of moods and participles.	74
4.	Remarks on the potential mood.	78
5.	Of the tense.	80
6.	The conjugation of the auxiliary verbs <i>to</i> <i>Am</i> and <i>to</i> <i>be</i> .	86
7.	The auxiliary verbs conjugated in their simple form, with observations on their peculiar nature and force.	88
8.	The conjugation of regular verbs.	89
9.	Observations on primitive verbs.	108
10.	Of irregular verbs.	111
11.	Of defective verbs, and of the different ways in which verbs are conjugated.	117

CHAP. 7.	Of adverbs.	119
----------	-------------	-----

CHAP. 8.	Of prepositions.	120
----------	------------------	-----

CHAP. 9.	Of conjunctions.	126
----------	------------------	-----

CHAP. 10.	Of interjections.	129
-----------	-------------------	-----

CHAP. 11.	Of derivation.	
-----------	----------------	--

SECT. 1.	Of the various ways in which words are derived from one another.	130
----------	--	-----

2.	A sketch of the progress by which the English language has risen to its present state of refinement.	134
----	--	-----

PART III.—SYNTAX. 137

Of the syntax of the article.	160
-------------------------------	-----

Of the syntax of the noun.	
----------------------------	--

Of several nouns joined by copulatives.	143
---	-----

Of nouns connected by disjunctives.	146
-------------------------------------	-----

Of nouns of multitude.	147
------------------------	-----

Of one noun governing another in the possessive case.	168
---	-----

Page.
70
73
74
78
80
83
85
89
100
111
117
119
120
126
129
130
134
137
166
143
146
147
169

Of the syntax of the pronoun.	Page.
Of pronouns agreeing with their antecedents.	140
Of the relative being nominative to the verb.	153
Of the relative preceded by nominatives of different persons.	156
Of the syntax of the adjective.	158
Of the syntax of the verb.	
Of the verb's agreement with the nominative case.	159
Of verbs active requiring the objective case.	175
Of one verb governing another in the infinitive mood.	176
Of verbs related in point of time.	179
Of the syntax of the participle.	184
Of the rules respecting adverbs.	
Of the position of adverbs.	186
Of two negatives.	189
Of the syntax of prepositions.	190
Of the syntax of conjunctions.	
Of conjunctions connecting the same moods, tenses, and cases.	194
Of conjunctions requiring the subjunctive mood, &c.	196
Of the syntax of interjections.	192
Of comparisons by the conjunction <i>than</i> or <i>as</i> .	206
Directions respecting the ellipsis.	207
General rule of syntax.	212
Directions for parsing.	215

PART. IV.—PROSE.

CHAP. 1.	Of pronunciation.	Page.
1.	Of accent.	224
2.	Of quantity.	229
3.	Of emphasis.	236
4.	Of pauses.	238
5.	Of tones.	239

CHAP. 2.	Of the verification of the	241
Of Punctuation.		
CHAP. 1.	Of the comma	258
CHAP. 2.	Of the semicolon	264
CHAP. 3.	Of the colon	266
CHAP. 4.	Of the period	266
CHAP. 5.	Of the dash, notes of interrogation, exclamation, capitals, &c.	267

APPENDIX.

RULES AND OBSERVATIONS FOR PROMOTING PERSPICUITY AND ACCURACY IN WRITING.

PART I.

Of perspicuity and accuracy of expression, with respect to single words and phrases.

CHAP. 1.	Of purity	274
CHAP. 2.	Of propriety	275
CHAP. 3.	Of precision	282

PART II.

Of perspicuity and accuracy of expression, with respect to the construction of sentences.

CHAP. 1.	Of the clearness of a sentence	287
CHAP. 2.	Of the unity of a sentence	293
CHAP. 3.	Of the strength of a sentence	297
CHAP. 4.	Of figures of speech	315

ADDRESS TO YOUNG STUDENTS.	335
------------------------------------	-----

ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR. The art of speaking and writing the English language with propriety.

It is divided into four parts, viz. ORTHOGRAPHY, ETYMOLOGY, SYNTAX, and PUNCTUATION.

Orthography teaches the correct use of letters to the student, showing, in other words, that Grammar treats, first, of the form and sound of the letters, the combination of letters into syllables and syllables into words; secondly, of the derivation of words, their various modifications, and their derivation; thirdly, of the proper and right order of words in the formation of a sentence; and finally, of the just pronunciation and construction of sentences.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE LETTERS.

Orthography teaches the nature of the letters, and of the proper method of writing them.

Orthography teaches the nature and powers of letters, and the just method of spelling words.

A letter is the first principle, or least part, of a word.

The letters of the English language, called the English Alphabet, are twenty-six in number.

These letters are the representatives of certain articulate sounds, the elements of the language. An articulate sound is the sound of the human voice, formed by the organs of speech.

English Grammar.

The following table of the Latin, French, Italian, and Old English Alphabets.

Latin	French	Italian	Old English	Notes
A	A	A	A	
B	B	B	B	
C	C	C	C	
D	D	D	D	
E	E	E	E	
F	F	F	F	
G	G	G	G	
H	H	H	H	
I	I	I	I	
K	K	K	K	
L	L	L	L	
M	M	M	M	
N	N	N	N	
O	O	O	O	
P	P	P	P	
Q	Q	Q	Q	
R	R	R	R	
S	S	S	S	
T	T	T	T	
U	U	U	U	u or you
V	V	V	V	va
W	W	W	W	double u
X	X	X	X	etc.
Y	Y	Y	Y	oy.
Z	Z	Z	Z	zal

Printed by J. G. & Co. 1811

[illegible]

Year	Month	Day	Time	Location	Remarks
1911	Jan	1	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	2	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	3	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	4	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	5	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	6	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	7	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	8	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	9	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	10	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	11	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	12	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	13	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	14	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	15	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	16	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	17	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	18	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	19	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	20	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	21	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	22	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	23	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	24	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	25	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	26	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	27	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	28	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	29	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1911	Jan	30	10:00	St. Paul	Left
1911	Jan	31	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived

By this list it appears that human language is made up of a large number of simple vocal sounds, but as, for example, the pronounced long may be considered as composed of a diphthongal sound, our language, though making use of but twelve simple vocal sounds, is nevertheless made up of only five distinct characters or letters. If *a* is the same simple sound as *ā* in *fat*, and *i* in *bird*, the same or similar sound, which is the opinion of some grammarians, then there can but be ten original vocal sounds in the English language.

The following list denotes the sounds of the consonants, being in number twenty letters.

Letters denoting the simple sound.	Letters denoting the compound sound.	Words containing the simple sound.
b	ab, ob, ub	boy, buy
c	ac, oc, uc	day, sea
d	ad, od, ud	dog, sea
e	ae, oe, ue	day, sea
f	af, of, uf	day, sea
g	ag, og, ug	day, sea
h	ah, oh, uh	day, sea
i	ai, oi, ui	day, sea
j	aj, oj, uj	day, sea
k	ak, ok, uk	day, sea
l	al, ol, ul	day, sea
m	am, om, um	day, sea
n	an, on, un	day, sea
p	ap, op, up	day, sea
q	aq, oq, uq	day, sea
r	ar, or, ur	day, sea
s	as, os, us	day, sea
t	at, ot, ut	day, sea
v	av, ov, uv	day, sea

* Some grammarians suppose *A* to mark only an aspiration, or breathing, but it appears to be a distinct sound, and formed in a particular manner, by *Samuel Johnson*.

Latin name	Chinese name	Meaning
yes	是	ye, yeh
ing	一	ing, sing
sh	二	shy, sh
th	三	thih, thih
ch	四	chen, chen
sh	五	shewno

From the preceding premises, it appears to be a point of considerable importance, that every learner of the English language should be taught to pronounce perfectly, and with facility, every English vowel sound that belongs to it. It is chiefly and justly our care in this respect, that every scholar be prepared to utter, with ease and accuracy, every pronunciation of vowels and diphthongs that confuses and imperfect manner of pronouncing words which accompanies, through life, many persons who have not, in this respect, been properly instructed at an early period.

Letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

A consonant is an articulate sound, which cannot

he positively entered without the help of a vowel: as, *h, k, g*, which require vowels to express them fully.

The vowels are, *a, e, i, o, u*, and sometimes *w* and *y*.

W and *y* are consonants when they begin a word or syllable; but in every other situation they are vowels.

It is generally acknowledged by the best grammarians, that *w* and *y* are consonants when they begin a syllable or word, and vowels when they end one. That they are consonants, when used as initials, seems to be evident from their not admitting the article *an* before them, as it would be improper to say *an walnut*, *an yard*, &c.; and from their taking a vowel without any hiatus or difficulty in pronouncing, *last year*, *lost youth*. That they are vowels in some situations, appears from their regularly taking the sound of other vowels: *as, w* has the exact sound of *u* in *law*, *few*, *now*, &c.; and *y* that of *i* in *myan*, *crystal*, &c. For the letters *W* and *Y*, pages 20 and 21.

We consider the following as true vocal and phonetic definitions of a vowel and consonant.

A vowel is a simple, articulate sound, perfect in itself, and formed by a continued motion of the breath, and a certain configuration of the mouth, without any alteration in the position, or any motion of the organs of speech, from the moment the vocal sound commences, till it ends.

A consonant is a simple, articulate sound, imperfect by itself, and which, joined with a vowel, forms a complete sound, by a particular motion or contact of the organs of speech.

Some grammarians subdivide vowels into the *simple* and

* The letters *w* and *y* are of an ambiguous nature; being consonants at the beginning of words, and vowels at the end.

Encyclopædia Britannica, page 20, third column.

PERRY'S English Dictionary, Preface, page 2.

the compound. But there does not appear to be any foundation for the distinction. Simplicity is essential to the nature of a vowel, which excludes every degree of mixed or compound sounds. It requires, according to the definition, but one conformation of the organs of speech, to form it, and no motion in the organs, whilst it is forming.

Consonants are divided into mutes and semi-vowels.

The mutes cannot be sounded at all, without the aid of a vowel. They are *b, p, t, c, k*, and *d, g* hard.

The semi-vowels have an imperfect sound of themselves. They are *f, v, s, z, j, x, y*, and *e* and *g* soft.

Four of the semi-vowels, namely, *f, v, s, z*, are also distinguished by the name of *liquids*, from their readily uniting with other consonants, and flowing as it were into their sound.

We have shown above, that it is essential to the nature of a consonant, that it cannot be fully uttered without the aid of a vowel. We may further observe, that even the names of the consonants, as they are pronounced in reciting the alphabet, require the help of vowels to express them. In pronouncing the names of the mutes, the assistant vowels, *u* for the consonants *b, p, t, c, k*, *a* for *d, g*. In pronouncing the names of the semi-vowels, the vowels generally precede the consonants, as *of* *a*, *ay*, *er*, *or*, *ey*, *ex*. The exceptions are, *ce, ge, ne, red*.

This distinction between the *nature* and the *name* of a consonant, is of great importance, and should be well explained to the pupils. They are frequently confounded by writers on grammar. Observations and reasonings on the *nature*, are often applied to explain the *name*, of a consonant: and, by this means, the student is led into error and perplexity, respecting these elements of language. It should be impressed on his mind, that the *name* of every

consonant is a simple sound; but that the consonant itself, is always a simple sound.

Some writers have divided the vowels and semi-vowels, with their subdivisions, nearly in the following manner.

The vowels are those consonants whose sounds cannot be prolonged. The semi-vowels, such whose sounds can be continued at pleasure, partaking of the nature of vowels, from which they derive their name.

The vowels may be subdivided into pure and impure. The pure are those whose sounds cannot be at all prolonged; they are *i, e, u*. The impure are those whose sounds may be continued though for a very short space; they are *ä, ä, g*.

The semi-vowels may be subdivided into vocal and aspirated. The vocal are those which are formed by the voice; the aspirated, those formed by the breath. There are eleven vocal, and five aspirated. The vocal are *a, u, r, e, i, y, o, ä, ä, ä, ä*; the aspirated, *f, h, k, g, sharp, &c*.

The vocal semi-vowels may be subdivided into pure and impure. The pure are those which are formed entirely by the voice; the impure, which do have a mixture of breath with the voice. There are seven pure—*i, e, u, ä, ä, ä, ä*; and five impure—*ä, ä, ä, ä, ä*.

A diphthong is the union of two vowels, pronounced by a single impulse of the voice, as *ou* in *house*, *eo* in *sound*.

A triphthong is the union of three vowels, pronounced in like manner; as, *eau* in *beau*, *iew* in *view*.

A proper diphthong is that in which both the vowels are sounded; as, *oi* in *voice*, *ou* in *ounce*.

An improper diphthong has but one of the vowels sounded; as, *ea* in *east*, *eo* in *boat*.

Each of the diphthongal letters was, doubtless, originally

original

boy, and that of a short in laurel, laudarium, &c.

He has always the strength of hand as in bow, sword,

by the introduction of a document like the long
document of a: as a non-day delay.

3. In the event of a change of the business, the

In some ways it is similar to an *amphibian*, *adder*, *apple*, *ax*. In others, besides being silent, it lengthens the syllable, as in *elephant*, *beam*, *beam*.

clothing, curious, wail, tract, cloth, &c.; and whom it ends a valuable work in the field.

It has called like v before c, i, and y, generally; as in
center, there, civil, symbol, mercy, etc. It has sometimes
the sound of a, as in the social.

Characteristics, not mentioned by the author:

2. say, "Do columnists, whether in the Herald or otherwise, never make a word, and therefore a column, in our best literature, with stock market, politics, etc. But many writers of minor years consider an unbroken column essential; and this practice is quite common, though it is productive of irregularity, and of a very inferior and inferior style and reflection."

C is occasionally written *ch*, as in church, chin, chalk, charter; but its words derived from the Greek, have the sound of *k*, as in chymist, scholar, chorea, clysis, tactic; and in foreign names; as, Achill, Barnish, Eudora.

CH, in some words derived from the French, takes the sound of sh: as in *chance, chess, champion, machine*.

Arch is arch, believe it or not, sounds like it, and archangel, archives, archipelago, except in arches, archery, archer, and arch-cum, but before a command it always

considering the fact that the following conditions are observed for the use of the material in the following cases, and yet:

1. The first of the three is the "primary" or "basic" type, which is the most common and is characterized by a high degree of stability and a low degree of volatility. This type is typically found in the form of a solid, crystalline material and is often used in the manufacture of electronic components.

It has sometimes the sound of a broken glass in clank, and
 joint, and sometimes that of short V, as in *slang*; yes,
 possibly, but not in all cases in which it is used.

It is always mute at the end of words, and is never written at the end of a syllable that have been pronounced, as, an, in, then. On the contrary, it is found at the end of words, as, another, all, nothing, something. It is not written at the end of the long vowels, as, time, sign, since, things, or at the end of the preceding vowels, as, come, when, the, sing, talk, refer.

• The diphthong *ou* is generally sounded like a long *o*, and appears to have the same force as the *ou* in the word *now*. It is not heard in *you*, *you*, *you*, and it is not heard in *now*, *now*, *now*, as in these words, *ou* and *ow* are sounded like *ow*.

• Unlike the birds of long ago, this mass, featureless, pale
waxen-looking bird and its conspecifics, it has the same
long, straight, bill.

[illegible]

It is pronounced like a long *u*, as in *purple*, and other times like a short; as in *leopard*, *jeopardy*. It has the sound of short *u*, as in *dungeon*, *sturgeon*, *punchion*, &c.

It is always sounded like long *o* or *ow*, as in food, good, now, above, proud, below, now, dew.

Eg, when the accent is on it, is always pronounced like *o*, except in *now*, *good*, *below*, *dew*, *above*, where it is sounded like long *o*.

When this *o* is unaccented, it takes the sound of *e* long, as, alloy, valley, valley, valley.

O keeps one pure unvaried sound at the beginning, middle, and end of words; as, *ocean*, *oceanic*, *oceanic*, &c. except in *go*, in which it has the first sound of *o*, but not in *compassion*, as, *compassion*, &c. We should not pronounce, a wife's jointure, a calf's head; but a wife's jointure, a calf's head.

O has two sounds, one hard, as in *go*, *no*, *poor*, the other soft, as in *poor*, *poor*.

At the end of a word it is always hard, as in *bar*, *bar*, *dog*. It is hard before *g*, *g*, *g*, and *g*, as *gall*, *gall*, *gall*, *gall*.

Before *e*, *i*, and *y*, it is soft, as in *genius*, *genius*, *genius*, *genius*; except in *gen*, *gen*, *gen*, *gen*, and *gen*.

It is mute before *g*, as in *gen*, *gen*, *gen*, &c.

G, at the end of a word, or syllable accented, gives the preceding vowel a long sound; as in *region*, *region*, *region*, *region*, *region*, *region*; pronounced, *region*, *region*, *region*, &c.

G, at the beginning of a word, has the sound of the hard *g*; as, *ghost*, *ghostly*; in the middle, and sometimes at the end, it is quite silent; as in *right*, *high*, *plough*, *mighty*.

At the end it has often the sound of *f*; as in *laugh*, *congratulate*. Sometimes only the *g* is sounded; as in *burgh*, *burgh*.

T
an s
hear
the
rhet
H
han
F
word
gene
perf
of ac
incor
cate
T
Th
syllab
often
it has
gabin
Th
christ
has
riago
Is
dier
and
leu
lo,
distin
tions
except
digest
The

H

The sound signified by this letter, it, as before observed, is an articulate sound, and not merely an aspiration. It is heard in the words, hat, horse, Hull. It is seldom mute at the beginning of a word. It is always silent after *r*; as, rhetoric, rheum, rhubarb.

H final, preceded by a vowel, is always silent; as, ah! hah! oh! feh! Sarah, Messiah.

From the faintness of the sound of this letter, in many words, and its total silence in others, added to the negligence of tutors, and the inattention of pupils, it has happened, that many persons have become almost incapable of acquiring its just and full pronunciation. It is, therefore, incumbent on teachers, to be particularly careful to inculcate a clear and distinct utterance of this sound.

I has a long sound; as in fine; and a short one; as in fit.

The long sound is always marked by the *e* final in monosyllables; as thin, time: except give, live. Before *r* it is often sounded like a short *u*; as dirt, first. In some words it has the sound of *e* long; as in machine, hominism, magazine.

The diphthong *ia* is frequently sounded like *ya*; as in christian, filial, coniard; pronounced christ-yan, &c. It has sometimes the sound of short *i*; as in carriage, marriage, parliament.

ie sounds in general like *e* long; as in grief, thief, grenadier. It has also the sound of long *i*; as in die, pie, lie; and sometimes that of short *i*; as in sieve.

Ieu has the sound of long *u*; as in lieu, adieu, perfieu.

io, when the accent is upon the first vowel, forms two distinct syllables; as, priory, violet, violent. The terminations *tion* and *sion*, are sounded exactly like the verb *thus*; except when the *t* is preceded by *s* or *x*; as in question, digestion, combustion, mixtion, &c.

The triphthong *ieu* is sometimes pronounced *yeu*; as in

two syllables; as in bilious, various, abstemious. But these syllables, which contain the *o*, are *long*; as in *poison*, *hastious*, *notious*.

o is pronounced exactly like *u*, except in the *hallowish*, where it is pronounced like *y*.

k has the sound of *c* hard, and is used before *a* and *i*, where according to English analogy *c* would be soft; as *kept*, *king*, *shirt*. It is not sounded before *e*; as in *knife*, *knell*, *knocker*. It is never doubled, except in *Habakkuk*; but *c* is used before *i* to shorten the vowel by a double consonant; as *cockle*, *pickle*, *nickel*.

l has always a soft liquid sound; as in *love*, *billow*, *quarrel*. It is sometimes mute; as in *hall*, *call*, *main*. The custom is to double the *l* at the end of monosyllables; as *milk*, *will*, *tail*; except where a disyllable precedes it; as *hail*, *tail*, *soil*.

le at the end of words, is pronounced like a weak *l*, in which the *e* is almost mute; as *tabic*, *shuttle*.

m has always the same sound; as *murmur*, *monumental*, except in *comptroller*, which is pronounced *comptles*.

N has two sounds: the one pure, as in *noble*, *noble*; the other a ringing sound like *ng*; as in *thank*, *harmful*, &c.

N is mute when it ends a syllable, and is preceded by *ss*; as *hymn*, *colonnade*, *autumn*.

The participial *ing* must always have the ringing sound; as *writing*, *reading*, *speaking*. Some writers have supposed that when *ing* is preceded by *ng*, it should be pronounced *in*; as *singing*, *bringing*, should be *so*lled *single*, *bringer*; but as it is a good rule, with respect to pronunciation, to follow the written words, unless custom has clearly decided otherwise, it does not seem proper to adopt this exception.

Put these

It has a long sound: as in note, boy, obedient, error;
and a short one: as in not, not, lot, foot.

P has always the same sound, except, perhaps, in *upposed*, where it sounds like *s*. It is sometimes mute; as in *psalm*, *psaltery*, *psalmody*; and between *w* and *t* as, *tempt*, *empty*, *pretentious*.

P is generally pronounced like *f*, as in *philosophy*, *philanthropy*, *philip*.

In *sophy* and *Stephen*, it has the sound of *t*. In *apophthegm*, *psalmist*, *plotted*, and *paradoxical*, both letters are entirely dropped.

Q is always followed by *u*; as, *quadrant*, *queen*, *quint*.

Q is sometimes sounded like *k*; as, *conquer*, *liquor*, *risque*.

R has a rough sound; as in *Rome*, *river*, *rage*: and a smooth one; as in *hard*, *card*, *regard*.

Re at the end of many words, is pronounced like a weak *er*; as in *theatre*, *sepulchre*, *massacre*.

S has two different sounds.

A soft and flat sound like *z*; as *besom*, *nasal*, *dismal*.

A sharp hissing sound; as *saint*, *sister*, *cyprus*.

It is always sharp at the beginning of words.

At the end of words it takes the soft sound; as, *his*, *was*, *trees*, *eyes*; except in the words *this*, *thus*, *us*, *yes*, *rebus*, *surplus*, &c.; and in words terminating with *ous*.

It sounds like *z* before *ion*, if a vowel goes before; as, *intrusion*; but like *s* sharp, if it follows a consonant; as *conversion*. It also sounds like *z* before a mute; as, *amuse*; and before *y* final; as *rosy*; and in the words *hosem*, *desire*, *wisdom*, &c.

S is mute in *isle*, *island*, *demesne*, *viscount*.

T

T generally sounds, as in *take*, *tempter*. T before *u*, when the accent *precedes*, sounds like *fw*; as, *nature*, *virtue*, are pronounced, *natchure*, *virtichue*. T before a vowel has the

... in cap-
... motor, on
... and 1, 2,

Monopoly

of 6. In both nations

don quite
quer liquor,

rage: and a

like a weak

1, diamal.

15.

as, his, was,

yes, rebus,

before; and
present; and

2. 24. 1970

...bosem, de-

fore u, when

, virtue, are

quod. It has also the sound of long *o*; as in *cue*, *hue*, *ague*. In a few words, it is pronounced like *u* short; as in *guast*, *quest*. It sometimes is a diphthong, as in *anlique*, *oblique*, *perique*, *retrolique*, *catalogue*, &c.

It is frequently pronounced *oi*; as in *illegible*, *unguish*, *extinguish*. It has sometimes the sound of *i* long; as in *guile*, *guile*, *guile*, and sometimes that of *i* short; as in *guilt*, *guinea*, *guildhall*. In some words it is sounded like long *u*; as in *juice*, *juice*, *juice*; and often *u*, like *oo*; as in *bruits*, *fruit*, *recruit*.

It is pronounced like *uo*, as in *quois*, *quorum*, *quodam*. It has the sound of long *e*, as in *obloquy*, *colloquy*; pronounced *obloque*, *colloque*, *buy*, and its derivatives.

It has the sound of *ai*; and bears the same relation to it, as *i* bears to *ai*; as *ai* to *i*, and *e* to *a*. It has also one trifling sound; as *vain*, *vain*, *love*.

It, when a consonant has nearly the sound of *ay*, as *water* resembles the sound of *oe*; but that it has a stronger and quicker sound than *oe*, and has a formation essentially different, will appear to any person who pronounces, with attention, the words *oe*, *oe*, *oe*, and that reflects that it will not admit the article *an* before it, which *oe* would admit. In some words it is not sounded; as in *mauer*, *crowd*, *wholesome*. It is always silent before *r*; as in *wrap*, *wreck*, *wrinkle*, *wrist*, *wrong*, *wry*, *beswray*, &c.

It before *t* is pronounced as if it were after the *h*; as, *why*, *hwy*; *when*, *hwen*; *what*, *hwat*.

It is often joined to *o* at the end of a syllable, without affecting the sound of that vowel; as in *crow*, *blow*, *grow*, *know*, *row*, *flow*, &c.

When *o* is a vowel, and is distinguished in the pronunciation, it has exactly the same sound as *u* would have in the same situation; as, *draw*, *stew*, *view*, *now*, *sawyer*, *vowel*, *enflow*.

X has three sounds, viz.

It is constant like *x* at the beginning of proper names of Greek origin; as in, *Xanthus*, *Xenophon*, *Xerxes*.

It has a sharp sound like *ks*, when it ends a syllable with the accent upon it; as *exit*, *extreme*, *excellence*; or when the accent is on the next syllable, if it begins with a consonant; as *excuse*, *extent*, *expense*.

It has, generally, a soft sound like *g*, when the accent is not on it, and the following syllable begins with a vowel; as, *example*, *examine*, *examine*, *examine*, *examine*.

Y, when a consonant, has nearly the sound of *ce*; as, *year*, *York*, resembling the sounds of *ceuth*, *ceoff*: but that this is its proper sound, will be clearly perceived by pronouncing the word, *ye*, *ye*, *ye*, in which its just and proper sound is ascertained. It not only requires a stronger motion of the organs of speech to pronounce it, than is required to pronounce *ce*, but its formation is essentially different. It will not assist of *ce* before it, as *ce* will in the following example; as *ce*. The opinion that *y* and *ce*, when they begin a word or syllable, take exactly the sound of *ce* and *ce*, has induced some grammarians to assert, that these letters are always vowels or diphthongs.

When *y* is a vowel, it has exactly the same sound as *i* would have in the same situation; as, *my*, *me*, *system*, *justly*, *pyramid*, *patty*, *fancy*, *hangry*.

Z

Z has the sound of an *s* uttered with a closer compression of the palate by the tongue: it is the first *s*; as, *freeze*, *freest*, *branch*.

It may be proper to remark, that the sounds of the letters vary, as they are differently associated, and that the pronunciation of these associations depends upon the position of the accent. It may also be observed, that, in order to pronounce accurately, great attention must be paid to

the vowels which are not accepted. There is scarcely any thing which more distinguishes a person of a poor education, from a person of a good one, than the pronunciation of the unaccented vowels. When vowels are under the accent, the best speakers and the lowest of the people, with very few exceptions, pronounce them in the same manner; but the unaccented vowels in the mouths of the former, have a distinct, open, and specific sound, while the latter often totally sink them, or change them into some other sound.

SECTION 3. *The nature of articulation explained.*

A concise account of the origin and formation of the sound emitted by the human voice, may, perhaps, not improperly, be here introduced. It may gratify the inquisitive student and serve to explain more fully the nature of articulation, and the radical distinction between vowels and consonants.

Human voice is sent out from the lungs, and so articulated or modified in its passage through the windpipe and larynx, as to become distinctly audible. The windpipe is that tube, which, on touching the front of our throat externally, we feel hard and uneven. It conveys air into the lungs for the purpose of breathing and speech. The top or upper part of the windpipe is called the larynx, consisting of four or five cartilages, that may be expanded or brought together by the action of certain muscles which operate all at the same time. In the middle of the larynx there is a small opening, called the *glottis*, through which the breath and voice are conveyed. This opening is not wider than one tenth of an inch; and, therefore, the breath transmitted through it from the lungs, must pass with considerable velocity. The voice thus formed, is strengthened and softened by a reverberation from the palate and other hollow places in the inside of the mouth and nostrils; and as these are better or worse shaped for this reverberation, the voice is said to be more or less agreeable.

If we consider the many varieties of sound, which one and the same human voice is capable of uttering, together

with
few
few
res
sit
the
so m
unio
man
cont
is pr
as be
Sp
artic
laryn
tongu
breath
The
from
sound
may
which
sound
over,
gentl
or by
variet
The
agree
servin
they
opera
produ
mute v
Wh
lally

with the roundness of the diameter of the glottis) and reflect, that the same diameter must always produce the same tone; and, consequently, that for every change of tone a corresponding change of diameter is necessary; we must be filled with admiration at the mechanism of these parts, and the fineness of the fibres that operate in producing effects so minute, so various, and in their proportions so exactly uniform. For it admits of proof, that the diameter of the human glottis is capable of more than sixty distinct degrees of contraction or enlargement, by each of which a different note is produced; and yet the greatest diameter of that aperture, as before observed, does not exceed one tenth of an inch.

Speech is made up of articulate voices; And what we call *articulation*, is performed, not by the lungs, windpipe, or larynx, but by the action of the throat, palate, teeth, tongue, lips, and nostrils. Articulation begins not, till the breath, or voice, has passed through the larynx.

The simplest articulate voices are those which proceed from an open mouth, and are by grammarians called *vowel* sounds. In transmitting these, the aperture of the mouth may be pretty large, or somewhat smaller, or very small; which is one cause of the variety of vowels; a particular sound being produced by each particular aperture. Moreover, in passing through an open mouth, the voice may be *freely acted upon*, by the lips, or by the tongue and palate, or by the tongue and throat; whence another source of variety in vowel sounds.

Thus ten or twelve simple vowel sounds may be formed, agreeably to the plan in page 16; and the learners, by observing the position of their mouth, lips, tongue, &c. when they are uttering the sounds, will perceive that various operations of these organs of speech, are necessary to the production of the different vowel sounds; and that by minute variations they may all be distinctly pronounced.

When the voice, in its passage through the mouth, is *totally interrupted*, or *strongly compressed*, there is formed a

scarcely any
poor edifica-
pronunciation
under the ap-
people, with
manner;
former, have
latter often
their sound
pleased
of the sounds
improperly,
student and
ulation, and
sonants,
and so art-
windpipe and
windpipe is
ur throat, &c.
into the
The top of
r, consisting
d or brought
ch operate
max there is
h the breath
wider than
th transmit-
considerable
themed and
other hot-
rils; and as
eration, the
which one
ng, together

certain modification of articulate sound, which, as expressed by a character in writing, is called a consonant. Silence is the effect of a total interruption; and indistinct sound of a strong compression; and therefore a consonant is not of itself a distinct articulate voice; and its influence is varying the tone of language is not clearly perceived, unless it be accompanied by an opening of the mouth, that is, by a vowel.

By making the experiments with attention, the student will perceive that each of the notes is formed by the voice being intercepted, by the lips, by the tongue and palate, or by the tongue and throat; and that the consonants are formed by the same organs strongly compressing the voice in its passage, but not totally intercepting it.

The elements of language, according to the different parts since they are formed, or the several organs of speech chiefly concerned in their pronunciation, are divided into several classes, and denominated as follows: these are called *labials*, which are formed by the lips; those *dentals*, that are formed with the teeth; *palatals*, that are formed with the palate; and *nasals*, that are formed by the nose.

The importance of obtaining, in early life, a clear, distinct, and accurate knowledge of the sounds of the first principles of language, and a wish to lead young minds to a further consideration of a subject so curious and useful, have induced the compiler to bestow particular attention on the preceding part of his work. Some writers think that these subjects do not properly constitute any part of grammar; and consider them as the exclusive province of the spelling-book; but if we reflect, that letters and their sounds are the constituent principles of that art, which teaches us to speak and write with propriety, and that, in general, very little knowledge of their nature is acquired by the spelling-book, we must admit, that they properly belong to grammar; and that a rational consideration of these elementary prin-

cles
of the
clear
of gram
present

Let
of gram
consequ
conson
But the
ple of a
tivity of
travelling
for the

The
nation;
ordance
and sen
diction
to partic
ary sound
has been
merable
of man

OF THE

A system
pronoun
stituting
Spelling
their sy
letters.

The f
words in

of the young grammarian. The constituents of a word just clear and sufficient matter (Syllables) representing the parts of grammar, and, perhaps, the property indicated on the present occasion.

Let no person, despite, be impatiently, the element of grammar, because it may seem to be a matter of small consequence, to show the distinction between vowels and consonants, and to divide the latter into liquids and mutes. But they who penetrate into the innermost parts of this temple of science, will there discover other fundamental utility of grammar, as not only properly dispensable with the writings of young persons, but also necessary for the most profound knowledge and cultivation.

The elementary sounds, under this name, consist of single letters, syllables, properly combined, produce a word, words duly combined, form a sentence, and sentences properly combined, form a discourse or dissertation. Thus it is, says the sage, that the human mind, by the principles apparently so trivial and simple, of elementary sounds, we are enabled to express our thoughts, which has been sufficient to explain the sentiments of an immense number of nations, and the passions and passions of men.

CHAPTER II

OF SYLLABLES, AND THE RULES FOR ARRANGING THEM.

A SYLLABLE is a sound, either simple or compounded, pronounced by a single impulse of the voice, and constituting a word, or part of a word: as, a, an, ha.

Spelling is the art of rightly dividing words into their syllables, or of expressing a word by its proper letters.

The following are the general rules for the division of words into syllables.

1. A syllable contains between two vowels, what is joined to the latter syllable : as, de-light, let-tle, re-source ; except the letter *r* : as, let-ter, spir-itual ; and except three wise words compounded : as, up-on, an-even, dis-tant.

2. Two consonants proper to begin a word, must not be separated : as, *ph*ysics, *ch*emistry. But when they come between two vowels, they are such as cannot begin a word, they must be divided : as, *ph*-e-nomenon, *ch*-emist, in-vent, or-der, ac-cuse.

3. When three consonants meet in the middle of a word, if they are English words, and the preceding vowel be pronounced long, they are not to be separated : as, in-throw, de-velop. But when the vowel of the preceding syllable is pronounced short, one of the consonants always belongs to the following : as, in-struct, de-velop, de-velop.

4. When three or four consonants, which are not proper to begin a syllable, come between two vowels, each of them may be taken as a syllable to the latter, the rest to the former syllable : as, in-vent, com-plete, de-velop, can-dle, de-velop, de-velop, de-velop, de-velop, de-velop.

5. Two vowels, not being a diphthong, must be divided into separate syllables : as, or-a-cl, de-mi-cl, so-ci-e-ty.

6. Compounded words must be traced into the simple words of which they are composed : as, tea-house, glow-worm, ever-power, never-the-less.

7. Grammatical, and other particular terminations, are generally separated : as, teach-est, teach-est, teach-ing, teach-er, contend-est, great-er, wretch-ed ; good-ness, free-dom, false-hood.

The rules for dividing words into syllables, with the reasons in support of them, are expressed at large in the author's English Spelling-book, The tenth, or any subsequent, edition, page 210—215.

of v

Wo
went, s

A w
word
syllable
syllable

All

A p
to any
conten

A d
another
ful, go

The
pounds
cumsp
compli
derivat

The
with m
part of
to the
learner
spelling
almost

Mon
vowel,

* A c
penknife,
simplicity

CHAPTER III.

Of words in general, and the RULES for spelling them.

Words are articulate sounds, used by common consent, as signs of our ideas.

A word of one syllable is termed a *Monosyllable*; a word of two syllables, a *Dissyllable*; a word of three syllables, a *Trisyllable*; and a word of four or more syllables, a *Polysyllable*.

All words are either *primitive* or *derivative*.

A *primitive* word is that which cannot be reduced to any simpler word in the language: as, *man*, *good*, *content*.

A *derivative* word is that which may be reduced to another word in English of greater simplicity: as, *manful*, *goodness*, *contentment*, *Yorkshire*.*

There are many English words which, though compounds in other languages, are to us primitives: thus, *circumspect*, *circumvent*, *circumstance*, *delude*, *conceive*, *complicate*, &c. primitive words in English; will be found derivatives, when traced in the Latin tongue.

The orthography of the English Language is attended with much uncertainty and perplexity. But a considerable part of this inconvenience may be remedied, by attending to the general laws of formation; and, for this end, the learner is presented with a view of such general maxims in spelling primitive and derivative words, as have been almost universally received.

RULE 1.

Monosyllables ending with *f*, *l*, or *s*, preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant: as, *staff*, *mill*, *pass*, &c.

* A compound word is included under the head of derivative words: as, *penknife*, *teacup*, *looking-glass*; may be reduced to other words of greater simplicity.

The only exceptions are, *of, if, us, is, has, was, yes, his, this, us, and thus.*

RULE II.

Monosyllables ending with any consonant but *f, l, or s*, and preceded by a single vowel, never double the final consonant; excepting *add, ebb, butt, egg, odd, err, inn, buan, putt, and buzz.*

RULE III.

Words ending with *y*, preceded by a consonant, form the plurals of nouns, the persons of verbs, verbal nouns, past participles, comparatives, and superlatives, by changing *y* into *i*: as, *spy, spies; I carry, thou carriest; he carrieth, or carries; carrier, carried; happy, happier, happiest.*

The present participle in *ing*, retains the *y*, that *i* may not be doubled; as, *carry, carrying; bury, burying &c.*

But *y*, preceded by a vowel, in such instances as the above, is not changed; as, *boy, boys; I cloy, he cloyeth, cloyed, &c.;* except in *lay, pay, and say*, from which are formed; *laid, paid, and said*; and their compounds, *unlaid, unpaid; unsaid, &c.*

RULE IV.

Words ending with *y*, preceded by a consonant, upon assuming an additional syllable beginning with a consonant, commonly change *y* into *i*; as, *happy, happily, happiness.* But when *y* is preceded by a vowel, it is very rarely changed in the additional syllable; as, *coy, coyly; boy, boyish, boyhood; annoy, annoyer, annoyance; joy, joyless, joyful.*

RULE V.

Monosyllables, and words accented on the last syllable, ending with a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, double that consonant, when they take another syllable beginning with a vowel: as, *wit, witty; thin, thinish; to abet, an abettor; to begin, a beginner.*

But if a diphthong precedes, or the accent is on the preceding syllable, the consonant remains single: as, to toil, toiling; to offer, an offering; maid, maiden, &c.

RULE VI.

Words ending with any double letter but *l*, and taking *ness*, *less*, *ly*, or *ful*, after them, preserve the letter double; as, harmlessness, carelessness, carelessly, stiffly, successful, distressful, &c. But those words which end with double *l*, and take *ness*, *less*, *ly*, or *ful*, after them, generally omit one *l*; as fulness, skillless, fully, skilful, &c.

RULE VII.

Ness, *less*, *ly*, and *ful*, added to words ending with silent *e*, do not cut it off: as, paleness, guileless, closely, peaceful; except in a few words; as, duly, truly awful.

RULE VIII.

Ment, added to words ending with silent *e*, generally preserves the *e* from elision; as, abatement, chastisement, incitement, &c. The words judgment, abridgment, acknowledgment, are deviations from the rule.

Like other terminations, *ment* changes *y* into *e*, when preceded by a consonant; as, accompany, accompaniment; merry, merriment.

RULE IX.

Able and *ible*, when incorporated into words ending with silent *e*, almost always cut it off: as, blame, blamable; cure, curable; sense, sensible, &c.; but if *c* or *g* soft comes before *e* in the original word, the *e* is then preserved in words compounded with *able*; as change, changeable; peace, peaceable, &c.

RULE X.

When *ing* or *ish* is added to words ending with silent *e*, the *e* is almost universally omitted: as, place, placing; lodge, lodging; slave, slavish; prude, prudish.

RULE XI.

Words taken into composition, often drop those letters

which were superfluous in the simple words as, handful, dunghil, withal, also, chilblain, foretel.

The orthography of a great number of English words is far from being uniform, even amongst writers of distinction. Thus, *honour* and *honor*, *inquire* and *enquire*, *negotiate* and *negociate*, *control* and *controul*, *expense* and *expence*, *allege* and *alledge*, *surprise* and *surprize*, *complete* and *compleat*, *connexion* and *connection*, *abridgment* and *abridgement*, and many other orthographical variations, are to be met with in the best modern publications. Some authority for deciding differences of this nature, appears to be necessary: and where can we find one of equal pretensions with Dr. Johnson's Dictionary? though a few of his decisions do not appear to be warranted by the principles of etymology and analogy, the stable foundations of his improvements.—“As the weight of truth and reason (says Nares in his “Elements of Orthoepey”) is irresistible, Dr. Johnson's Dictionary has nearly fixed the external form of our language. Indeed, so convenient is it to have one acknowledged standard to recur to; so much preferable, in matters of this nature, is a trifling degree of irregularity, to a continual change, and fruitless pursuit of unattainable perfection; that it is earnestly to be hoped, that no author will henceforth, on light grounds, be tempted to innovate.”

This Dictionary, however, contains some orthographical inconsistencies, which ought to be rectified: such as, *immovable moveable*, *chastely chastness*, *fertileness fertility*, *skiness slyly*, *fearlessly fearlessness*, *heedlessness needlessly*. If these, and similar irregularities, were corrected by spelling the words analogically, according to the first word in each part of the series, and agreeably to the general rules of spelling, the Dictionary would doubtless, in these respects, be improved.

PART II. ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

A General View of the Parts of Speech.

THE second part of grammar is **ETYMOLOGY**, which treats of the different sorts of words, their various modifications, and their derivation.

There are, in English, nine sorts of words, or, as they are commonly called, **PARTS OF SPEECH**; namely, the **ARTICLE**, the **SUBSTANTIVE** or **NOUN**, the **ADJECTIVE**, the **PRONOUN**, the **VERB**, the **ADVERB**, the **PREPOSITION**, the **CONJUNCTION**, and the **INTERJECTION**.

1. An **Article** is a word prefixed to substantives, to point them out, and to show how far their signification extends: as, *a garden, an eagle, the woman.*

2. A **Substantive** or **noun** is the name of any thing that exists, or of which we have any notion: as, *London, man, virtue.*

A substantive may, in general, be distinguished by its taking an article before it, or by its making sense of itself: as, *a book, the sun, an apple; temperance, industry, chastity.*

3. An **Adjective** is a word added to a substantive, to express its quality: as, "*An industrious man; a virtuous woman.*"

An **Adjective** may be known by its making sense with the addition of the word *being*: as, *a good thing; a bad thing*: or of any particular substantive; as, *a sweet apple, a pleasant prospect, a lively boy.*

4. A **Pronoun** is a word used instead of a noun, to

avoid the too frequent repetition of the same word: as, "The man is happy; *he* is benevolent; *he* is useful."

5. A Verb is a word which signifies to BE, to DO, or to SUFFER: as, "I *am*; I *ride*; I *am ruled*."

A Verb may generally be distinguished, by its making sense with any of the personal pronouns, or the word to before it: as, I *walk*, *he plays*, *they write*; or, to *walk*, to *play*, to *write*.

6. An Adverb is a part of speech joined to a verb, an adjective, and sometimes to another adverb, to express some quality or circumstance respecting it: as, "He reads *well*; a *truly* good man; he writes *very correctly*."

An Adverb may be generally known, by its answering to the question, How? how much? when? or where? as, in the phrase "He reads *correctly*," the answer to the question, How does he read? is, *correctly*.

7. Prepositions serve to connect words with one another, and to show the relation between them: as, "He went *from* London *to* York;" "she is *above* disguise;" "they are supported *by* industry."

A preposition may be known by its admitting after it a personal pronoun, in the objective case; as, *with*, *for*, *to*, &c. will allow the objective case after them; with *him*, for *her*, to *them*, &c.

8. A conjunction is a part of speech that is chiefly used to connect sentences: so as, out of two or more sentences, to make but one: it sometimes connects only words: as, "Thou *and* he are happy, *because* you are good." "Two *and* three are five."

9. Interjections are words thrown in between the parts of a sentence, to express the passions or emotions of the speaker: as, "O *dear*! how variable thou art!"

The observations which have been made, to aid learners in distinguishing the parts of speech from one another, may afford them some small assistance; but it will certainly be much more instructive, to distinguish them by the definitions, and an accurate knowledge of their nature.

In the following passage, all the parts of speech are exemplified:

1 2 7 2 5 1 2 3 7 2

The power of speech is a faculty peculiar to man ;

8 5 5 7 4 7 4 3 2 7

and was bestowed on him by his beneficent Creator, for

1 3 3 2 2 2 3 3 3 6

the greatest and most excellent uses; but alas! how often

5 6 6 7 1 3 7 2

do we pervert it to the worst of purposes!

In the foregoing sentence, the words *the, a*, are articles; *power, speech, faculty, man, Creator, uses, purposes*, are substantives; *peculiar, beneficent, greatest, excellent, most*, are adjectives; *him, his, we, it*, are pronouns; *is, was, bestowed, do, pervert*, are verbs; *most, here, often*, are adverbs; *of, to, on, by, for*, are prepositions; *and, but*, are conjunctions; and *alas* is an interjection.

The number of the different sorts of words, or of the parts of speech, has been variously reckoned by different grammarians. Some have enumerated ten, making the participle a distinct part; some eight, excluding the participle, and ranking the adjective under the noun; some four, and others only two; (the noun and the verb,) supposing the rest to be contained in the parts of their division. We have followed those authors, who appear to have given them the most natural and intelligible distribution. Some remarks on the division made by the learned HORN TOOK, are contained in the first section of the eleventh chapter of etymology.

The interjection, indeed, seems scarcely worthy of being considered as a part of artificial language or speech, being rather a branch of that natural language, which we possess in common with the brute creation, and by which

we express the sudden emotions and passions that actuate our frame. But, as it is used in written as well as oral language, it may, in some measure, be deemed a part of speech. It is with us, a virtual sentence, in which the noun and verb are concealed under an imperfect or indigested word.—See this Chapter, in the OCTAVO Grammar.

CHAPTER II.

Of the Articles.

AN Article is a word prefixed to substantives, to point them out, and to show how far their signification extends; as, *a garden, an eagle, the woman.*

In English, there are but two articles, *a* and *the*: *a* becomes *an* before a vowel*, and before a silent *h*; as, *an acorn, an hour.* But if the *h* be sounded, the *a* only is to be used; as, *a hand, a heart, a highway.*

The inattention of writers and printers to this necessary distinction, has occasioned the frequent use of *an* before *h*, when it is to be pronounced; and this circumstance, more than any other, has probably contributed to that indistinct utterance, or total omission, of the sound signified by this letter, which very often occurs amongst readers and speakers. As hence, *an husband, an herald, an heathen*, and many similar associations, are frequently to be found in works of taste and merit. To remedy this evil, readers should be taught to omit, in all similar cases, the sound of the *n*, and to give the *h* its full pronunciation.

A or *an* is styled the indefinite article: it is used in a vague sense, to point out one single thing of the kind, in other respects indeterminate: as, "Give me *a* book;" "Bring me *an* apple."

The is called the definite article; because it ascertains what particular thing or things are meant: as, "Give me *the* book;" "Bring me *the* apples;" meaning some book, or apples, referred to.

* Instead of *an* is now used before words beginning with a long. See page 20, letter *U*. It is also used before *one*; as, *many a one*.

ALLY
rally t
propo
Th
seen
son of
phras
forent
"T
tion)
is an
the ho
The
ferent
metals
hood i
prefix
that of
thing)
family
Howar
not a
when
(river)
Wh
article
noun;
best fri
preced
as Ale
The
singula
also to
But
rule, in
chiefly

A substantive without any article to limit it, is generally taken in its widest sense : as, "A candid temper is proper for man;" that is, for all mankind.

The peculiar use and importance of the articles will be seen in the following examples ; "The son of a king—the son of the king—a son of the king." Each of these three phrases has an entirely different meaning, through the different application of the articles *a* and *the*.

"Thou art *a* man," is a very general and harmless position; but, "Thou art *the* man," (as Nathan said to David,) is an assertion capable of striking terror and remorse into the heart.

The article is omitted before nouns that imply the different virtues, vices, passions, qualities, sciences, arts, metals, herbs, &c. ; as, "prudence is commendable; falsehood is odious; anger ought to be avoided;" &c. It is not prefixed to a proper name; as, "Alexander;" (because that of itself denotes a determinate individual or particular thing,) except for the sake of distinguishing a particular family: as, "He is *a* Howard, or of the family of the Howards;" or by way of eminence: as, "Every man is not *a* Newton;" "He has the courage of *an* Achilles;" or when some noun is understood; "He sailed down *the* (river) Thames, in *the* (ship) Britannia."

When an adjective is used with the noun to which the article relates, it is placed between the article and the noun; as "*a good* man," "*an agreeable* woman," "*the best* friend." On some occasions, however, the adjective precedes *a* or *an*; as, "*such a* shame," "*as great a* man as Alexander," "*too careless an* author."

The indefinite article can be joined to substantives in the singular number only; the definite article may be joined also to plurals.

But there appears to be a remarkable exception to this rule, in the use of the adjectives *few* and *many*, (the latter chiefly with the word *great* before it,) which, though

joined with plural substantives, yet admit of the singular article *a* : as, *a few men* ; *a great many men*.

The reason of it is manifest, from the effect which the article has in these phrases ; it means a small or great number collectively taken, and therefore gives the idea of a whole, that is, of unity. Thus likewise, a dozen, a score, a hundred, or a thousand, is one whole number, an aggregate of many collectively taken ; and therefore still retains the article *a*, though joined as an adjective to a plural substantive ; as, *a hundred years*, &c.

The indefinite article is sometimes placed between the adjective *many*, and a singular noun : as,

" Full *many a* gem of purest ray serene,

" The dark unfathom'd caves of ocean bear :

" Full *many a* flower is born to blush unseen,

" And waste its sweetness on the desert air."

In these lines, the phrases, *many a gem* and *many a flower*, refer to *many gems* and *many flowers*, separately, not collectively considered.

The definite article *the* is frequently applied to adverbs in the comparative and superlative degree ; and its effect is, to mark the degree the more strongly, and to define it the more precisely ; as, "*The more* I examine it, *the better* I like it. I like this *the least* of any." See this Chapter, in the Octavo Grammar.

CHAPTER III.

Of Substantives.

SECTION 1. *Of Substantives in general.*

A SUBSTANTIVE or Noun is the name of any thing that exists, or of which we have any notion : as, *London*, *man*, *virtue*.

Substantives are either proper or common.

Proper names or substantives, are the names appropriated to individuals : as, *George*, *London*, *Thames*,

Con-
taining
viduals

Wh-
they a-
cero of
Caesari

Com-
duals,
" The

To s-
and the
and of
tend us
that is,

GEN

sex. T
MININE

The
kind : a
The
kind : a

The
her mal-
of speech
gender :
of a ship

* Nouns
or nouns of,
nouns, or the
edge, good
reading, wri

Common names or substantives, stand for kinds containing many sorts, or for sorts containing many individuals under them; as, animal, man, tree, &c.

When proper names have an article annexed to them, they are used as common names: as, "He is the Cicero of his age; he is reading the lives of the Twelve Cæsars."

Common names may also be used to signify individuals, by the addition of articles or pronouns: as, "The boy is studious; that girl is discreet."

To substantives belong gender, number, and case; and they are all of the third person when spoken of, and of the second when spoken to: as, "Blessings attend us on every side; be grateful, children of men!" that is, ye children of men.

SECTION 2. Of Gender.

GENDER is the distinction of nouns with regard to sex. There are three genders, the MASCULINE, the FEMININE, and the NEUTER.

The Masculine Gender denotes animals of the male kind: as, a man, a horse, a bull.

The Feminine Gender signifies animals of the female kind: as, a woman, a duck, a hen.

The Neuter Gender denotes objects which are neither males nor females: as, a field, a house, a garden.

Some substantives, naturally neuter, are, by a figure of speech, converted into the masculine or feminine gender: as, when we say of the sun, *he* is setting; and of a ship, *she* sails well.

* Nouns may also be divided into the following classes: *Collective nouns* or nouns of multitude; as, the people, the parliament, the army. *Abstract nouns*, or the names of qualities abstracted from their substances; as, knowledge, goodness, whiteness. *Verbal* or *participial nouns*; as, beginning, reading, writing.

Figuratively, in the English tongue, we commonly give the masculine gender to nouns which are conspicuous for the attributes of imparting or communicating, and which are by nature strong and efficacious. These, again, are made feminine, which are conspicuous for the attributes of containing or bringing forth, or which are peculiarly beautiful or amiable. Upon these principles, the sun is said to be masculine; and the moon, being the receptacle of the sun's light, to be feminine. The earth is generally feminine. A ship, a country, a city, &c. are likewise made feminine; being receivers or containers. Time is always masculine, on account of its mighty efficacy. Virtue is feminine from its beauty, and its being the object of love. Fortune and the church are generally put in the feminine gender.

The English language has three methods of distinguishing the sex, viz.

1. By different words: as,

Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.
Bachelor.	Maid.	Husband.	Wife.
Boar.	Sow.	King.	Queen.
Boy.	Girl.	Lad.	Lass.
Brother.	Sister.	Lord.	Lady.
Buck.	Do.	Man.	Woman.
Bill.	Cow.	Master.	Mistress.
Bullock or	} Heifer.	Milster.	Spawner.
Steer.		Nephew.	Niece.
Cock.	Hen.	Ram.	Ewe.
Dog.	Bitch.	Ginger.	{ Songster or Singer.
Drake.	Duck.		
Earl.	Countess.	Sloven.	Blat.
Father.	Mother.	Son.	Daughter.
Friar.	Nun.	Stag.	Hind.
Gander.	Goose.	Uncle.	Aunt.
Hart.	Roe.	Wizard.	Witch.
Horse.	Mare.		

namely give
pleasure for
and which
again are
attributes of
particularly
the sun is
a receptacle
is generally
fewer made
he is always
. Virtue is
ject of love.
the feminine

distinguish-

Female.
 He.
 When.
 and.
 early.
 Woman.
 mistress.
 pawned.
 niece.
 two.
 longness or
 finger.
 that.
 daughter.
 find.
 and.
 which.

[illegible]

S. 101. THE NATIONAL SYSTEM OF ELECTRICITY DELIVERY

100-443887-100
 100-443887-100
 100-443887-100

[illegible]

100

_____ A female child

Male and Female Development

It is important to remember that the same result is obtained when

neighbour, friend, and several others, are used indifferently for males or females.

Nouns with various terminations consist of considerable and perspicuity of expression. We have a sufficient number of them to make us feel the want; for when we say of a woman; she is a philosopher, an astronomer, a builder, a weaver, we perceive an impropriety in the termination, which we cannot avoid; but we can say, that she is a botanist, a student, a witness, a singer, a philosopher, a companion, because these terminations have not annexed to them the notion of sex.

SECTION 3. Of Number.

NUMBERS is the consideration of an object, as one or more.

Substantives are of two numbers, the singular and the plural.

The singular number expresses but one object; as, a man, a child.

The plural number signifies more objects than one; as, children, children.

Some nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, are used only in the singular form; as, wheat, truth, gold, cloth, pride, &c. others, only in the plural form; as, bellows, scissors, lungs, riches, &c.

Some words are the same in both numbers; as, deer, sheep, swine, &c.

The plural number of nouns is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular; as, dove, doves; face, faces; thought, thoughts. But when the substantive singular ends in *x*, *ch*, *soft*, *sh*, *es*, or *e*, we add *es* in the plural; as, box, boxes; church, churches; lady, ladies; house, houses; rebui, rebuies. If the singular ends in *th* or *d*, the plural is formed by adding *es*; as, monarch, monarches; distich, distiches.

Nouns which end in *s*, sometimes *es*, added to the plural; as, *magis, ecclie, heri, magis, manifesti, potius, volcano, wo*: and sometimes only *s*, as, *belli, nunci, passio, apocrypha*.

Nouns ending in *y*, or *je*, are rendered plural by the change of those terminations into *ies*; as, *leaf, leaves; half, halves; wife, wives*. Except *grief, relief, reproof* and several others, which form the plural by the addition of *s*. Those which end in *y*, have the regular plural: as, *rust, rusts; staff, staffs; slave, slaves*.

Nouns ending in *y* in the singular, with no other vowel in the same syllable, change the *y* into *i* in the plural; as, *beauty, beauties; fly, flies*. But the *y* is not changed, when there is another vowel in the syllable; as, *key, keys; delay, delays; attorney, attorneys*.

Some nouns become plural by changing the *a* of the singular into *i*; as, *man, men; woman, women; alderman, aldermen*. The words, *ox* and *child*, form *oxen* and *children*. *brother* makes either *brothers* or *brethren*. Sometimes the diminutive *us* is changed into *i* in the plural; as, *foot, feet; goose, geese; tooth, teeth*. *Louse* and *mouse* make *lice* and *mice*. *Penny* makes *pennies*, when the coin is meant; *die, dice* (for *die, dies*), *die, dice* (for *die, dies*).

It is agreeable to analogy, and the practice of the generality of correct writers, to denote the following words as plural nouns: *coins, riches, arms*, and also *mathematics, metaphysics, ethics, optics, pneumatics*, with other similar names of sciences.

Dr. Johnson says that the adjective *pains* is sometimes a term of number, as well as of quality. This may account for the manner we meet with in associating with *pains* as a plural noun: as, "much pains". The connection, however, is not to be recommended.

The *pains* is now almost universally considered as belonging to the singular number.

SECTION 2. Of Case.

In English, substantives have three cases, the nominative, the possessive, and the objective.*

The nominative case simply expresses the name of a thing, or the subject of the verb: as, "The boy plays;" "The girls learn."

The possessive case expresses the relation of property or possession; and has an apostrophe with the letter s coming after it: as, "The scholar's duty;" "My father's house."

When the plural ends in s, the other s is omitted, but the apostrophe is retained: as, "on eagles' wings;" "The drapers' company."

Sometimes also, when the singular terminates in s, the apostrophic s is not added: as, "For goodness' sake;" "For righteousness' sake."

The objective case expresses the object of an action, or of a relation; and generally follows a verb active, or a preposition: as, "John assists Charles;" "They are in London."

English substantives are declined in the following manner:

	Singular	Plural
<i>Nominative Case.</i>	A mother.	Mothers.
<i>Possessive Case.</i>	A mother's.	Mothers'.
<i>Objective Case.</i>	A mother.	Mothers.
<i>Nominative Case.</i>	The man.	The men.
<i>Possessive Case.</i>	The man's.	The men's.
<i>Objective Case.</i>	The man.	The men.

* The possessive is sometimes called the genitive case; and the objective the accusative.

The English language, to express different connexions and relations of one thing to another, uses, for the most part, prepositions. The Greek and Latin among the ancient, and more too among the modern languages, as the German, vary the termination or ending of the substantive, to answer the same purpose; an example of which, in the Latin, is inserted, as explanatory of the nature and use of cases, viz.

Singular.		
Nominative.	Dominus,	A Lord.
Genitive.	Dominī,	Lord's, of a Lord.
Dative.	Dominō,	To a Lord.
Accusative.	Dominum,	A Lord.
Vocative.	Domine,	O Lord.
Ablative.	Dominō,	By a Lord.
Plural.		
Nominative.	Dominī,	Lords.
Genitive.	Dominorum,	Lords, of Lords.
Dative.	Dominis,	To Lords.
Accusative.	Dominos,	Lords.
Vocative.	Dominī,	O Lords.
Ablative.	Dominis,	By Lords.

Some writers think, that the relations signified by the addition of articles and prepositions to the noun, may properly be denominated cases, in English; and that, on this principle, there are, in our language, as many cases as in the Latin tongue. But to this mode of forming cases for our substantives, there are strong objections. It would, indeed, be a formal and useless arrangement of nouns, articles, and prepositions. If an arrangement of this nature were to be considered as constituting cases, the English language would have a much greater number of them than the Greek and Latin tongues: for, as every preposition has its distinct meaning and effect, every combination of a preposition and article with the noun, would form a different relation, and would constitute a distinct case.

This is
and
On
and for
we
society
six
modern
half a
comple
sing
the six
But
pond y
great p
which
I prop
the obj
refer
re ma
be nor
same f
they be
re war
or own
all adm
govern
rently
the p
correspo
proper.
connexio
† If cases
the differ
language as
with a man,
all be cas

This would require new language, and many new terms, and a long and tedious book of definitions.

On the principle of learning other languages in names and forms, without a correspondence in nature and idiom, we might expect a number of exceptions, as well as a variety of cases in the English case-system. Thus five or six declensions, distinguished according to the various modes of forming the plural of substantives, with at least half a dozen cases in each declension, would furnish a complete arrangement of English nouns, in all their wrappings. But on this subject, the *first and ninth sections of the sixth chapter* of etymology.

But though the variety of cases does not at all correspond with the idiom of our language, there seems to be great propriety in admitting a case in English substantives, which shall serve to denote the objects of active verbs and of prepositions; and which shall therefore properly termed the *objective case*. The general idea of case doubtless has reference to the termination of the noun; but there are many instances, both in Greek and Latin, in which the nominative and accusative cases have precisely the same form, and are distinguished only by the relation they bear to other words in the sentence. We are therefore warranted, by analogy, in applying this principle to our own language, as far as utility, and the knowl- of it will admit. Now it is obvious, that in English, a noun governed by an active verb, or a preposition, is very differently circumstanced from a noun in the nominative, or the possessive case; and that a comprehensive term, correspondent to that difference, must be useful and proper. The business of parsing, and of showing the connexion and dependence of words, will be most con-

† If cases are to be distinguished by the different significations of the nouns, or by the different relations it may bear to the governing word, then we have in our language as many cases almost, as there are prepositions; and above a man, below a man, beyond a man, round about a man, within a man, without a man, he and he again, as well as, of a man, to a man, out with a man.

Dr. Keble

vaniously accomplished, by the adoption of such a case; and the singularity of having our nouns sometimes placed in a situation, in which they cannot be said to be, in any case what, will be avoided.

The author of this work long doubted the propriety of assigning to English substantives an objective case: but a renewed critical examination of the subject; an attention to which he was prompted by the extensive and increasing demand for this grammar, has produced in his mind a full persuasion, that the nouns of our language are entitled to this comprehensive objective case.

When the thing to which another is said to belong, is expressed by a circumlocution, or by many terms, the sign of the possessive case is commonly added to the last term: as, "The king of Great Britain's dominions."

Sometimes, though rarely, two nouns in the possessive case immediately precede each other, in the following form: "My friend's wife's sister," a sense which would be better expressed by saying, "the sister of my friend's wife," or, "my friend's sister in law." Some grammarians say, that in each of the following phrases, viz. "A book of my brother's," "A servant of the queen's," "A soldier of the king's," there are two genitive cases; the first phrase implying, "one of the books of my brother," the next, "one of the servants of the queen," and the last, "one of the soldiers of the king." But as the preposition governs the objective case; and as this is not, in each of these sentences, two apostrophes with the letter *s* coming after them, we cannot with propriety say, that there are two genitive cases.

CHAPTER IV.

Of Adjectives.

SECTION I. Of the nature of Adjectives, and the degree of comparison.

An Adjective is a word added to a substantive, to ex-

such a case,
times placed
be in any

propriety of
case, but a
is maintain-
ive and in-
in his mind
are entitled

to belong, in
ans, the sign
the last term:

possessive
following
which would
my friend's
grammari-
s, viz. "A
teen's," "A
cares, the
my brother,"
and the last,
proposition
not, in each
letter's com-
at there are

and the

ative, to ex-

press its quality: as, "An *old* man," "A *young*
woman," "A *single* man."

In English, the adjective is not varied on account of
gender, number, or case. Thus we say, "A *careless*
boy," "A *careless* girl," "A *careless* man."

The only variation which it admits is that of the de-
gree of comparison.

Adjectives admit of being compared in three degrees, of
superiority, equality, or inferiority. The comparative and the
superlative.

Grammarians have generally enumerated three kinds of
degrees of comparison; but the first of these has been thought
by some writers to be improperly named a degree of
comparison, as it seems to be rather shown than the due
of the adjective, and best to apply rather to nouns
than to adjectives. The English language has followed, unless
the adjective be applied to nearly comparison or degree,
by continuing a series of general relations to other things,
as, when we say, "he is a *tall* man," "this is a *fine* day,"
we make some reference to the ordinary size of man, and
to different weather.

The Positive State expresses the quality of an ob-
ject without any increase or diminution: as, good,
wise, great.

The Comparative Degree increases or lessens the
positive in signification: as, *wiser*, *greater*, *less* wise.

The Superlative Degree increases or lessens the co-
sistive to the highest or lowest degree: as, *wisest*, *great-
est*, *least* wise.

The simple word, or positive, becomes the compa-
rative, by adding *-er* or *-y*; and the superlative, by add-
ing *-est* or *-yest* to the end of it: as, *wise*, *wiser*, *wisest*;
great, *greater*, *greatest*. And the adverbs *more* and

most, placed before the adjective, have the same effect: as, *wise, more wise, most wise.*

The termination *est* may be accounted in some sort a degree of comparison, by which the degree of an adjective is diminished: as, *the wisest is the least wise; the healthiest is the least healthy; the least sickly is the least unwell.*

The words *superior* and *inferior* are used to express a small degree of increase or decrease: as, "This mountain is *superior* to that in height."

Monosyllables, for the most part, are composed of one and two, and dissyllables of more and more; as, *mild, mildly, milder, mildest, milderly, mildestly, milderly, mildestly.* Dissyllables ending in *er* or *ly*, are *comparative*; and such others as *able, simple*, are accounted for the *positive*; as, *deeper, deeperly, deeperest, deeperly, deeperestly, deeperly, deeperestly, deeperly, deeperestly, deeperly, deeperestly.*

In some words the superlative is formed by adding the adverb *most* to the end of them; as, *numbermost, attempt, attemptest, attemptest, attemptest, attemptest.*

In English, as in most languages, there are some words of very common use, (in which the caprice of custom is apt to get the better of analogy,) that are irregular in this respect: as, *good, better, best; bad, worse, worst; little, less, least; much or many, more, most; near, nearer, nearest or next; late, later, latest or last; old, older or elder, oldest or eldest; and a few others.*

An adjective put without a substantive, with the definite article before it, becomes a substantive in sense and meaning, and is written as a substantive; as, "Providence rewards *the good*, and punishes *the bad*."

Vicious nouns placed before other nouns assume the nature of adjectives; as, *sea fish, wine vessel, corn field, meadow ground, &c.*

Numerical adjectives are either cardinal, or ordinal; cardinal, as, one, two, three, &c.; ordinal, as, first, second, third, &c.

Remarks on the subject of Quantities.

If we consider the subject of comparison attentively, we shall perceive, immediately, we believe, in quantity, or at least in degree. — A mountain is larger than a mole; or by how many degrees? How much bigger is the earth than a grain of sand? By how many degrees was Socrates wiser than Alcibiades? or by how many whiter than this paper? It is plain, that to these and the like questions, no definite answer can be returned.

In quantities, however, that can be exactly measured, the degrees of excess may be exactly ascertained. — A foot is just twelve times as long as an inch; and an hour is sixty times the length of a minute. But, in regard to qualities, and to those quantities which cannot be measured exactly, it is impossible to say how many degrees may be comprehended in the comparative process.

But though these degrees are infinite, or indefinite in fact, they cannot be so in language; nor would it be convenient, if language were to express many of them. In regard to measured quantities and qualities, the degrees of more and less, (besides those marked above,) may be expressed intelligibly, at least, if not accurately, by certain adverbs, or words of like import, as, "Socrates was much wiser than Alcibiades;" "Snow is a great deal whiter than this paper;" "Epaminondas was by far the most accomplished of the Thebans;" "The evening star is a very splendid object, but the sun is incomparably more splendid;" "The Deity is infinitely greater than the greatest of his creatures." The inaccuracy of these, and the like expressions, is not a material inconvenience; and, if it were, it is unavoidable: for human speech can only express human thoughts.

and which thought is necessarily connected, language must be so too.

When the word *very*, *exceedingly*, or any other of similar import is put before the adjective, it is called a *degree* without the superlative or comparative, to distinguish it from the other superlative, which has been already explained, and is called the *superlative of comparison*. Thus *very elegant*, is termed the *superlative of comparison*, and *element*, the *superlative of comparison*. In the superlative of comparison, sometimes of comparison is *expressed*, regularly or irregularly, *inferiority*; thus *inferiority* is *inferiority* call a *thing* *very* *inferior* *to* *another* *thing* *in* *inferiority* with the *superlative* of *comparison*.

The comparative may be *expressed* *inferiority* *in* the *prevalence* or *inferiority* of the *inferiority*. Thus, the sentence, *My* *inferiority* *is* *inferior* *to* *the* *inferiority* *of* *another* *inferiority*, conveys the same sentiment as the following; "Virtue is more valuable than every other acquisition."

CHAPTER V.

OF PRONOUNS.

A **PRONOUN** is a word used instead of a noun, to avoid the too frequent repetition of the same word; as, "The man is happy; he is benevolent; he is useful."

There are three kinds of pronouns, viz. the **PERSONAL**, the **RELATIVE**, and the **ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS**.

SECTION I. Of the Personal Pronouns.

THERE are five Personal Pronouns, viz. *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, *it*; with their plurals, *we*, *ye* or *you*, *they*.

Personal pronouns admit of person, number, gender and case.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

The number of pronouns are three in each number, viz.

I, is the first person
Thou, is the second person
He, she, it, is the third person
We, is the first person
You, is the second person
They, is the third person

Singular

Plural

This system of pronouns will be very intelligible, when we consider that there are three persons who may be the subject of a discourse; first, the person who speaks, they speak of himself; secondly, he may speak of the person to whom he is speaking himself; thirdly, he may speak of some other person, as the speaker, the persons spoken to, and the other persons spoken of, may be many, so each of these must have the plural number.

The number of pronouns, like those of substantives, are two, the singular and the plural: as, *I, thou, he; we, ye or you, they.*

Gender has respect only to the third person singular of the pronouns, *he, she, it.* *He* is masculine; *she* is feminine; *it* is neuter.

The persons speaking and spoken to, being at the same time the subjects of the discourse, are supposed to be present; from which, and other circumstances, their sex is commonly known, and needs not to be marked by a distinction of gender in the pronouns: but the third person or thing spoken of, being absent, and in many respects unknown, it is necessary that it should be marked by a distinction of gender; at least when some particular person or thing is spoken of, that ought to be more distinctly marked: accordingly the pronoun singular of the third person has the three genders, *he, she, it.*

Pronouns have three cases, the nominative, the possessive, and the objective.

The objective case of a pronoun has, in general, a form different from that of the nominative, and sometimes from the possessive case.

The personal pronouns are thus declined:

Person.	Case.	Number.	Gender.
First.	Nom.	I.	Male.
	Poss.	Mine.	Female.
	Obj.	Me.	OF
Second.	Nom.	Thou.	Thy or you
	Poss.	Thine.	
	Obj.	Thee.	
Third.	Nom.	He.	They.
	Poss.	His.	Their.
	Obj.	Him.	Them.
Third.	Nom.	She.	They.
	Poss.	Hers.	Theirs.
	Obj.	Her.	Them.
Third.	Nom.	It.	They.
	Poss.	Its.	Theirs.
	Obj.	It.	Them.

SECTION 2. Of the Relative Pronoun.

RELATIVE Pronouns are such as relate, in general, to some word or phrase going before, which is then called the antecedent: they are, *who*, *which*, and *that*.
 "The man is happy *who* lives virtuously."

† The relative pronoun, *which*, does not antecedently relate to a word or phrase which is not antecedent, but subsequent, to the relative. See note under the title of *Myself*.

[illegible]

They.
Their.
Them.

They. What, then, and what are likenesses of both members, if they do not use the designation, except the others in something used as the excessive case of them: as, "if there are other doctrine whose followers are punished."

Yours.
 Them.
 Of that forbidden land, where mortal men
 Drown'd death.

Whose very name is a liability?

The light of wisdom, which well educated men
Gives all the strength and colour of our life.
This is one of the elements of character of the being
which is the origin of all things.

2. The use of the phrase, one word is substituted for another word or phrase, under the first

there; as, "The boy, whom I saw, is a student, as is the husband of mine." Or, "The boy, of whom I saw, is to instruct us." (2)

It is noted, and well, that the relative pronouns are not and are annexed to them; as, "the boy, whom I saw," which seems to indicate, that the relative pronouns are seldom used in English.

The participle is sometimes used in the same manner, as in the preceding example, "the boy, whom I saw," which is a relative, when it may be turned into a relative pronoun, as, "the boy, whom I saw, is a student, as is the husband of mine." The participle, when it is followed immediately by a verb, and which it is either joined, or refers, and which is a relative pronoun: as, "That boy is industrious," "The boy, whom I saw," meaning, that boy, that I saw, &c. In such a situation, when it joins sentences together, but cannot be turned into a relative pronoun, without destroying the sense, as, "Take care that every day he well employed," "There he will believe that I have acted improperly."

The which, and who, are called *interrogatives*, when they are used in asking questions, as, "Who is he?" "Which is the best?" "What are you doing?"

Whether was formerly made use of to signify interrogation: as, "Whether of these shall I choose?" but it is now seldom used, the interrogative which being substituted for it. Some Grammarians think that the word *whether* should be retained, as, like *either* and *neither*, it points to the dual number; and would contribute to clear our expressions relative and definite.

Some writers have placed the interrogatives as a separate kind of pronouns; but they are too nearly related to the relative pronouns, both in nature and form, to render such a division proper. They do not lose the character of relatives, when they become interrogatives. The only

difference is, that while in interrogation, the unknown have position, in answer, which is interrogative sentence, and known, that in interrogation, to a subject which is interrogative sentence, and unknown, and which it is expected will be known, known or not, and ascertain.

PRONOUNS: Pronominal Problems.

Pronouns are of a mixed nature, participating the properties both of nouns and adjectives.

The pronominal pronouns may be subdivided into four sorts, namely, the possessive, the demonstrative, the demonstrative, and the definite.

1. The possessive are those which relate to possession or property. There are seven of them; viz. *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*.

Mine and thine, instead of *my* and *thy*, were formerly used before a substantive, or adjective, beginning with a vowel, or a *th* as, "But out all mine iniquities."

The pronouns, *his, mine, thine*, have the same form, whether they are possessive pronouns, or the possessive cases of their respective personal pronouns. See p. 170.

A few examples will probably assist the learner, to distinguish the possessive pronouns from the possessive cases of their corresponding personal pronouns.

The following sentences exemplify the possessive pronouns.—*My lesson is finished; Thy books are defaced; He loves his studies; She performs her duty; We own our faults; Your situation is distressing; I admire their virtues."*

The following are examples of the possessive cases of the personal pronouns.—*"This desk is mine; the other is thine; These trinkets are his; those are hers; This house is ours; and that is yours. There is very commodious."*

Some grammarians consider *its* as a possessive pronoun.

The two words *own* and *self* are used in conjunction with pronouns. *Own* is added to possessives, both singular and plural: as, "My *own* house, our *own* house." It is emphatical, and implies a silent contrast or opposition: as, "I live in *my own* house." *Own* is, "not a hired house." *Self* is added to possessives: as, *myself*, *yourself*, &c. and sometimes to personal pronouns: as, *himself*, *itself*, *themselves*. It then, like *own*, expresses emphasis and opposition: as, "I did this *myself*," that is, "not another," or it forms a reciprocal pronoun: as, "We hurt *ourselves* by vain rage."

Himself, *themselves*, are now used in the nominative case, instead of *himself*, *themselves*: as, "He came *himself*," "He *himself* shall do this," "They performed it *themselves*."

2. The *distributive* are those which denote the persons or things that make up a number, as taken separately and singly. They are *each*, *every*, *either*: as, "Each of his brothers is in a favourable situation;" "Every man must account for himself;" "I have not seen *either* of them."

Each relates to two or more persons or things, and signifies either of the two, or every one of any number taken separately.

Every relates to several persons or things, and signifies each one of them all taken separately. This pronoun was formerly used apart from its noun, but it is now constantly annexed to it, except in legal proceedings: as, in the phrase "all and *every* of them."

Either relates to two persons or things taken separately, and signifies the one or the other. To say, "either of the three," is therefore improper.

Neither imports "not either," that is, not one nor the other; as, "Neither of my friends was there."

1. The *Demonstratives* are those which precisely point

one the subject to which the pronoun refers, they are called *relative*. Thus, *one* is a relative pronoun: *that* is only in the same way.

There is also the *relative* pronoun *who*, and *that* to the most extent: as, *That man is more intelligent than this.* This sentence is correct as it is written; *that*, the former as it is more intelligent, and *that* the latter as it is more intelligent.

Perhaps the most common pronoun may be *one*, which is used in many of the sentences. The sentence *one* may be used in many sentences: as, *one* is a pronoun, and *one* is a pronoun. *one* is a pronoun, and *one* is a pronoun. *one* is a pronoun, and *one* is a pronoun.

The *relative* pronoun *who* is used in many sentences: as, *who* is a pronoun, and *who* is a pronoun. *who* is a pronoun, and *who* is a pronoun. *who* is a pronoun, and *who* is a pronoun.

Of these pronouns, only the words *one* and *who* are used. *One* has a possessive case, which is *one's*. *One* is used in many sentences: as, *one* is a pronoun, and *one* is a pronoun. *one* is a pronoun, and *one* is a pronoun. *one* is a pronoun, and *one* is a pronoun.

Other is declined in the following manner:

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>Other</i>	<i>Others</i>
Poss.	<i>Other's</i>	<i>Others'</i>
Obj.	<i>Other</i>	<i>Others</i>

The plural others is only used when apart from the noun which it refers to there is supposed to be another of the same kind. "Where have you been, George, I will ask you the others?" He always says, not to the others. When this pronoun is joined to a noun, either singular or plural, it has no variation: he "the other man," the other men."

The following questions were asked to determine the students' perceptions of the program. The questions were: "What do you like about the program?" "Are there any things that you do not like about the program?" "Are there any things that you would like to change?" "How often do you use your own voice?" "How were all present?" "What is the state of your thinking in general now?" "Some are happy, while others are miserable."

The word *either* is composed of the indefinite article *either* and the word *or*.

None is used in both numbers: as "None is as deaf as
so that will not hear;" "None of these are equal to these."
It seems originally to have signified, according to its deri-
vation, *not one*, and therefore to have had no plural; but
there is good authority for the use of it in the plural num-
ber: as, "None that go unto her return again." Prov. ii. 19.

"There are people here who consider 'L' BENTON," says the editor, "one of the best men to address the people. None of them have different feelings for the number." Lewis's friends agree. "None of them are as close as 'BENTON' BENTON."

We have endeavored to ascertain the nature of the adjective pronouns, and to distinguish and arrange them accordingly: what is difficult, perhaps impossible, to define and divide them in a manner perfectly unexceptionable. Some of them, in particular, may seem to require a different arrangement. We presume, however, that, for every useful purpose, the present classification is sufficiently correct. All the pronouns, except the personal and relative, may indeed, in a general view of them, be considered as adjective pronouns, because they define or ascertain the extent of the common name, or general term, to

...the noun
...as,
...the
...When
...or plural, it
...other men."

...the inde-
... "A
...Neither
...to know
...is the
...are happy,

...article
...an deaf as
...to these."
...to the deri-
...but
...final mem-
...Free, ii. 10.
...RON. "None
...one of them
...a Introduc-
...BLESS.

...one of the
...range, then
...edible, to
...unaccep-
...to re-
...however,
...attention is
...personal
...in, be care-
...or ascer-
...al terms, to

...the that
...this is John's;
...and each person.

Some writers are of opinion that the pronouns should be caused into two classes, and called personal and relative. Under the former they include the personal and the relative; under the latter, all the others. But this division, though a neat one, does not appear to be accurate. All the relative pronouns will not range under the substantive head. — We have introduced these parts of grammar in the mode which we think most correct and intelligible; but, for the information of students, and to direct their inquiries on the

... several judgments ...
... the ...
... the ...

... the ...
... the ...
... the ...

... the ...
... the ...
... the ...

... the ...
... the ...
... the ...

... the ...
... the ...
... the ...

... the ...
... the ...
... the ...

... the ...
... the ...
... the ...

... the ...
... the ...
... the ...

... the ...
... the ...
... the ...

... the ...
... the ...
... the ...

... the ...
... the ...
... the ...

...
...
...

follow
"depe
tive m
with
"I de
degre
most
conve
than

We
must
lent
in sen
nature

To

Ve
as, "

In

Firm
Seca
Thi

Th
expres
as, "I
press d
ye love
verb, t
ent per
the san
scanty
purpose

following sentence, "I desire your departure." The words "depart instantly," may be proved to be, not the imperative mood with an adverb, but the indicative and infinitive, with a noun and preposition; for they are equivalent to "I desire you to depart in an instant." The *superlative* degree in this sentence, "Of all acquirements virtue is the most valuable," may pass for the *comparative*, because it conveys the same sentiment as, "Virtue is more valuable than every other acquirement."

We shall not pursue this subject any further, as the reader must be satisfied, that only the word *desire*, in the equivalent sentence, implies affirmation; and that one phrase may, in sense, be equivalent to another, though its grammatical nature is essentially different.

To verbs belong NUMBER, PERSON, MOOD, and TENSE.

SECTION 2. Of Number and Person.

Verbs have two numbers, the Singular and the Plural: as, "I run, we run;" &c.

In each number there are three persons; as,

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>First Person.</i>	I love.	We love.
<i>Second Person.</i>	Thou lovest.	Ye or you love.
<i>Third Person.</i>	He loves.	They love.

Thus the verb, in some parts of it, varies its endings, to express, or agree with, different persons of the same number: as, "I love, thou lovest; he loveth, or loves;" and also to express different numbers of the same person: as, "thou lovest, ye love, he loveth, they love." In the plural number of the verb, there is no variation of ending to express the different persons; and the verb, in the three persons plural, is the same as it is in the first person singular. Yet this scanty provision of terminations is sufficient for all the purposes of discourse, and no ambiguity arises from it.

verb being always attended, either with the noun expressing the subject acting or acted upon, or with the pronoun representing it. For this reason, the plural termination in *en*, *they loven*, *they werer*, formerly in use, was held as unnecessary, and has long been obsolete.

SECTION 3. *Of Moods and Participles.*

Mood or Mode is a particular form of the verb, showing the manner in which the being, action, or passion, is represented.

The nature of a mood may be more intelligibly explained to the scholar, by observing, that it consists in the change which the verb undergoes, to signify various intentions of the mind, and various modifications and circumstances of action: which explanation, if compared with the following account and uses of the different moods, will be found to agree with and illustrate them.

There are five moods of verbs, the **INDICATIVE**, the **IMPERATIVE**, the **POTENTIAL**, the **SUBJUNCTIVE**, and the **INFINITIVE**.

The indicative Mood simply indicates or declares a thing: as, "He loves, he is loved:" or it asks a question: as, "Does he love?" "Is he loved?"

The Imperative Mood is used for commanding, exhorting, entreating, or permitting: as, "Depart thou; mind ye; let us stay; go in peace."

Though this mood derives its name from its intimation of command, it is used on occasions of a very opposite nature, even in the humblest supplications of an inferior being to one who is infinitely his superior: as, "Give us this day our daily bread; and forgive us our trespasses."

The potential Mood implies possibility or liberty, power, will, or obligation: as, "It may rain; he may go or stay, I can ride; he would walk; they should learn."

The Subjunctive Mood represents a thing under a condition, motive, wish, supposition, &c.; and is preceded by a conjunction, expressed or understood, and attended by another verb: as, "I will respect him, *though* he chide me;" "Were he good, he would be happy;" that is, "*if* he were good."—See pages 202, 203.

The Infinitive Mood expresses a thing in a general and unlimited manner, without any distinction of number or person; as, "to act, to speak, to be feared."

The participle is a certain form of the verb, and derives its name from its participating, not only of the properties of a verb, but also of those of an adjective: as, "I am desirous of *knowing* him;" "*admired* and *applauded*, he became vain;" "*Having finished* his work, he submitted it," &c.

There are three participles, the Present or Active, the Perfect or Passive, and the Compound Perfect: as, "*loving, loved, having loved*."—See p. 102.

Agreeably to the general practice of grammarians, we have represented the present participle, as active; and the past, as passive: but they are not uniformly so: the present is sometimes passive; and the past is frequently active. Thus, "*The youth was consuming* by a slow malady;" "*The Indian was burning* by the cruelty of his enemies;" appear to be instances of the present participle being used passively. "*He has instructed* me," "*I have gratefully repaid* his kindness;" are examples of the past participle being applied in an active sense. We may also observe, that the present participle is sometimes associated with the past and future tenses of the verb; and the past participle connected with the present and future tenses.—The most unexceptionable distinction which grammarians make between the participles, is, that the one points to the continuation of the action, passion, or state, denoted by the

verb; and the other, to the completion of it. Thus, the present participle signifies *imperfect action*, or action begun and not ended: as, "I *am* writing a letter." The past participle signifies *action perfected*, or finished: as, "I *have* written a letter;" "The letter *is* written."

The participle is distinguished from the adjective, by the former's expressing the idea of time, and the latter's denoting only a quality. The phrases, "*loving* to give as well as to receive," "*moving* in haste," "*heated* with liquor," contain participles giving the idea of time; but the epithets contained in the expressions, "a *loving* child," "a *moving* spectacle," "a *heated* imagination," mark simply the qualities referred to, without any regard to time; and may properly be called *participial adjectives*.

Participles not only convey the notion of time; but they also signify actions, and govern the cases of nouns and pronouns, in the same manner as verbs do; and therefore should be comprehended in the general name of verbs. That they are mere modes of the verb, is manifest, if our definition of a verb be admitted: for they signify being, doing, or suffering, with the designation of time superadded. But if the essence of the verb be made to consist in affirmation or assertion, not only the participle will be excluded from its place in the verb, but the infinitive itself also; which certain ancient grammarians of great authority held to be alone the genuine verb, simple and unconnected with persons and circumstances.

The following phrases, even when considered in themselves, show that participles include the idea of time: "The letter *being* written, or *having been* written;" "Charles *being* writing, *having* written, or *having been* writing." But when arranged in an entire sentence, which they must be to make a complete sense, they show it still more evidently: as, "Charles *having* written the letter, sealed and

* When this participle is joined to the verb *to have*, it is called *perfect*; when it is joined to the verb *to be*, or understood with it, it is denominated *passive*.

different
writing,"
jection for
five time
our positi

Particly
and are u
beginning
"The ch
crows;"
occasional
long time

That th
perform t
as such, v
has exact
chancellor
and that
The word
the posses
ment gove
substantiv
statutes,

The fol
above, ch
genitive c
being att
former, th
case to the
in the latte
only a circ
minative

* From the
present former
ed, that the ph

despatched it."—The participle does indeed associate with different tenses of the verb: as, "I am writing," "I was writing," "I shall be writing;" but this forms no just objection to its denoting time. If the time of it is often relative time, this circumstance, far from disproving, supports our position. See observations under Rule 13 of Syntax.

Participles sometimes perform the office of substantives, and are used as such; as in the following instances: "The beginning;" "a good understanding;" excellent writing;" "The chancellor's being attached to the king secured his crown;" "The general's having failed in this enterprise occasioned his disgrace;" "John's having been writing a long time had wearied him."

That the words in italics of the three latter examples, perform the office of substantives, and may be considered as such, will be evident, if we reflect, that the first of them has exactly the same meaning and construction as, "The chancellor's attachment to the king secured his crown;" and that the other examples will bear a similar construction. The words, *being attached*, govern the word *chancellor's* in the possessive case, in the one instance, as clearly as *attachment* governs it in that case, in the other: and it is only substantives, or words and phrases which operate as substantives, that govern the genitive or possessive case.

The following sentence is not precisely the same as the above, either in sense or construction, though, except the genitive case, the words are the same; "The chancellor, being attached to the king, secured his crown." In the former, the words, *being attached*, form the nominative case to the verb, and are stated as the cause of the effect; in the latter, they are not the nominative case, and make only a circumstance to *chancellor*, which is the proper nominative. It may not be improper to add another form of

† From the very nature of time, an action may be present now, it may have been present formerly, or it may be present at some future period—yet who ever supposed, that the present of the indicative denotes no time?

this sentence, by which the learner may better understand the peculiar nature and form of each of these modes of expression : *"The chancellor being attached to the king, his crown was secured."* This constitutes what is properly called, the *CASE ABSOLUTE*.

SECTION 4. *Remarks on the Potential Mood.*

THAT the Potential Mood should be separated from the subjunctive, is evident, from the intricacy and confusion which are produced by their being blended together, and from the distinct nature of the two moods ; the former of which may be expressed without any condition, supposition, &c. as will appear from the following instances : *"They might have done better ;" "We may always act uprightly ;" "He was generous, and would not take revenge ;" "We should resist the allurements of vice ;" "I could formerly indulge myself in things, of which I cannot now think but with pain."*

Some grammarians have supposed that the Potential Mood, as distinguished above from the Subjunctive, coincides with the Indicative. But as the latter "simply indicates or declares a thing," it is manifest that the former, which modifies the declaration, and introduces an idea materially distinct from it, must be considerably different. *"I can walk," "I should walk,"* appear to be so essentially distinct from the simplicity of, *"I walk," "I walked,"* as to warrant a correspondent distinction of moods. The Imperative and Infinitive Moods, which are allowed to retain their rank, do not appear to contain such strong marks of discrimination from the Indicative, as are found in the Potential Mood.

There are other writers on this subject, who exclude the Potential Mood from their division, because it is formed, not by varying the principal verb, but by means of the auxiliary verbs *may, can, might, could, would,* &c. : but if we recollect, that moods are used "to signify various

intentions of the mind, and various modifications and circumstances of action," we shall perceive that these auxiliaries, far from interfering with this design, do, in the clearest manner, support and exemplify it. On the reason alleged by these writers, the greater part of the Indicative Mood must also be excluded; as but a small part of it is conjugated without auxiliaries. The Subjunctive too will fare no better; since it so nearly resembles the Indicative, and is formed by means of conjunctions, expressed or understood, which do not more effectually show the varied intentions of the mind, than the auxiliaries do which are used to form the Potential Mood.

Some writers have given our moods a much greater extent than we have assigned to them. They assert that the English language may be said, without any great impropriety, to have as many moods as it has auxiliary verbs; and they allege, in support of their opinion, that the compound expression which they help to form, point out these various dispositions and actions, which, in other languages, are expressed by moods. This would be to multiply the moods without advantage. It is, however, certain, that the conjugation or variation of verbs, in the English language, is effected almost entirely by the means of auxiliaries. We must, therefore, accommodate ourselves to this circumstance, and do that by their assistance, which has been done in the learned languages, (a few instances to the contrary excepted,) in another manner, namely, by varying the form of the verb itself. At the same time, it is necessary to set proper bounds to this business, so as not to occasion obscurity and perplexity, when we mean to be simple and perspicuous. Instead, therefore, of making a separate mood for every auxiliary verb, and introducing moods *Interrogative, Optative, Promissive, Hortative, Precative, &c.* we have exhibited such only as are obviously distinct; and which, whilst they are calculated to unfold and display the subject intelligibly to the learner, seem to be sufficient, and

not more than sufficient, to answer all the purposes for which moods were introduced.

From Grammarians who follow their ideas, and make their decisions, respecting this part of English Grammar, on the principles and construction of languages, which, in these points, do not suit the peculiar nature of our own, but differ considerably from it, we may naturally expect grammatical schemes that are not very perspicuous nor perfectly consistent, and which will tend more to perplex than inform the learner. See pages 94—96, 102—104, 108—111, 201—203.

SECTION 3. *Of the Tenses.*

TENSE, being the distinction of time, might seem to admit only of the present, past, and future; but to mark it more accurately, it is made to consist of six variations, viz. the PRESENT, the IMPERFECT, the PERFECT, the PLUPERFECT, and the FIRST and SECOND FUTURE TENSES.

The Present Tense represents an action or event, as passing at the time in which it is mentioned: as, "I rule; I am ruled; I think; I fear."

The present tense likewise expresses a character, quality, &c. at present existing: as, "He is an able man." "She is an amiable woman." It is also used in speaking of actions continued, with occasional intermissions, to the present time: as, "He frequently rides;" "He walks out every morning." "He goes into the country every summer." We sometimes apply this tense even to persons long since dead; as, "Seneca reasons and moralizes well;" "Job speaks feelingly of his afflictions."

The present tense, preceded by the words, *when, before, after, as soon as, &c.* is sometimes used to point out the relative time of a future action: as, "*When* he arrives he will hear the news;" "He will hear the news *before* he arrives, or *as soon as* he arrives, or, at farthest, *even after*

he arrive
she will

In an
substitu
ritory or
takes an
uffers, an

The J
either a
at a cert
and virtu
them."

The J
but also
"I have
that was

In the
of the let
very near
stance, it
seen by
meaning
period w
When th
is prior t
would be

"I have
imperfect
finished m
nitely of
the day, y
must be e
"I have tr
dangers th
vision of t

he arrives;" "The more she improves, the more amiable she will be."

In animated historical narrations, this tense is sometimes substituted for the Imperfect tense: as, "*He enters the territory of the peaceable inhabitants; he fights and conquers, takes an immense booty, which he divides amongst his soldiers, and returns home to enjoy an empty triumph.*"

The Imperfect Tense represents the action or event, either as past and finished, or as remaining unfinished at a certain time past: as, "I loved her for her modesty and virtue;" "They were travelling post when he met them."

The Perfect Tense not only refers to what is past, but also conveys an allusion to the present time: as, "I have finished my letter;" "I have seen the person that was recommended to me."

In the former example, it is signified that the finishing of the letter, though past, was at a period immediately, or very nearly, preceding the present time. In the latter instance, it is uncertain whether the person mentioned was seen by the speaker a long or short time before. The meaning is, "I have seen him some time in the course of a period which includes, or comes to, the present time." When the particular time of any occurrence is specified, as prior to the present time, this tense is not used: for it would be improper to say, "I have seen him yesterday;" or, "I have finished my work last week." In these cases the Imperfect is necessary: as, "I saw him yesterday;" "I finished my work last week." But when we speak indefinitely of any thing past, as happening or not happening in the day, year, or age, in which we mention it, the perfect must be employed: as, "I have been there this morning;" "I have travelled much this year;" "We have escaped many dangers through life." In referring, however, to such a division of the day as is past before the time of our speaking,

we use the imperfect: as, "They came home early this morning;" "He was with them at three o'clock this afternoon."

The perfect tense, and the imperfect tense, both denote a thing that is past; but the former denotes it in such a manner, that there is still actually remaining some part of the time to slide away, wherein we declare the thing has been done; whereas the imperfect denotes the thing or action past, in such a manner, that nothing remains of that time in which it was done. If we speak of the present century, we say, "Philosophers *have made* great discoveries in the present century:" but if we speak of the last century, we say, "Philosophers *made* great discoveries in the last century." "He *has been* much afflicted this year;" "I *have* this week read the king's proclamation;" "I *have heard* great news this morning:" in these instances, "He *has been*," "I *have read*," and "*heard*," denote things that are past; but they occurred in this year, in this week, and to-day; and still there remains a part of this year, week, and day, whereof I speak.

In general, the perfect tense may be applied wherever the action is connected with the present time, by the actual existence, either of the author, or of the work, though it may have been performed many centuries ago; but if neither the author nor the work now remains, it cannot be used. We may say, "Cicero *has written* orations;" but we cannot say, "Cicero *has written* poems;" because the orations are in being, but the poems are lost. Speaking of priests in general, we may say, "They *have* in all ages claimed great powers;" because the general order of the priesthood still exists: but if we speak of the Druids, as any particular order of priests, which does not now exist, we cannot use this tense. We cannot say, "The Druid priests *have claimed* great powers;" but must say, "The Druid priests *claimed* great powers;" because that order is now totally extinct. See PICKBURN on the English verb.

The Pluperfect Tense represents a thing, not only as past, but also as prior to some other point of time

specific
before
The
to con
time:
them
The
be fully
future
o'clock
business
It is
event b
in the f
tingent,
of the p
them so
morrow
come to
to him.
would, I
sent and
that he
well as,
yesterda
verb is v
the sente
The p
definitely
tion. W
vidual ac
motes ha
more the
more use

specified in the sentence: as, "I had finished my letter before he arrived."

The First Future Tense represents the action as yet to come, either with or without respect to the precise time: as, "The sun will rise to-morrow;" "I shall see them again."

The Second Future intimates that the action will be fully accomplished, at or before the time of another future action or event: as, "I shall have dined at one o'clock;" "The two houses will have finished their business, when the king comes to prorogue them."†

It is to be observed, that in the subjunctive mood, the event being spoken of under a condition or supposition, or in the form of a wish, and therefore as doubtful and contingent, the verb itself in the present, and the auxiliary both of the present and past imperfect times, often carry with them somewhat of a future sense: as, "If he come to-morrow, I may speak to him;" "If he should, or would come to-morrow, I might, would, could, or should speak to him." Observe also, that the auxiliaries *should* and *would*, in the imperfect times, are used to express the present and future as well as the past: as, "It is my desire, that he should, or would, come now, or to-morrow;" as well as, "It was my desire, that he should or would come yesterday." So that in this mood the precise time of the verb is very much determined by the nature and drift of the sentence.

The present, past, and future tenses, may be used either *definitely* or *indefinitely*, both with respect to *time* and *action*. When they denote customs or habits, and not individual acts, they are applied indefinitely: as, "Virtue *promotes* happiness;" "The old Romans *governed* by benefits more than by fear;" "I *shall* hereafter *employ* my time more usefully." In these examples, the words, *promotes*,

† See an account of the simple and compound tenses, at page 100.

governed, and *shall employ*, are used indefinitely, both in regard to action and time; for they are not confined to individual actions, nor to any precise points of present, past, or future time. When they are applied to signify particular actions, and to ascertain the precise points of time to which they are confined, they are used definitely; as in the following instances: "My brother *is writing*;" "He *built* the house last summer, but did not *inhabit* it till yesterday." "He *will write* another letter to-morrow."

The different tenses also represent an action as *complete* or *perfect*, or as *incomplete* or *imperfect*. In the phrases, "I *am writing*," "I *was writing*," "I *shall be writing*," imperfect, unfinished actions are signified. But the following examples, "I *wrote*," "I *have written*," "I *had written*," "I *shall have written*," all denote complete perfect action.

From the preceding representation of the different tenses, it appears, that each of them has its distinct and peculiar province; and that though some of them may sometimes be used promiscuously, or substituted one for another, in cases where great accuracy is not required, yet there is a real and essential difference in their meaning. It is also evident, that the English language contains the six tenses which we have enumerated. Grammarians who limit the number to two, or at most to three, namely, the present, the imperfect, and the future, do not reflect that the English verb is mostly composed of principal and auxiliary; and that these several parts constitute one verb. Either the English language has no regular future tense, or its future is composed of the auxiliary and the principal verb. If the latter be admitted, then the auxiliary and principal united, constitute a tense, in one instance; and, from reason and analogy, may doubtless do so, in others, in which minuter divisions of time are necessary, or useful. What reason can be assigned for not considering this case as other cases, in which a whole is regarded as composed of several parts, or of principal and adjuncts? There is nothing heterogene-

our in
neces
In
emin
"Som
thing
presse
verb
appear
we sho
and the
at all
would
e-laver
I heard
hear, m
The
tongues
these la
we unif
variation
dition o
the prin
constitu
This po
to Engli
venienc
If it a
ticiples
verb is
pronoun
preposit
mode of
we think
inapplic

ous in the parts: and precedent, analogy, utility, and even necessity, authorize the union.

In support of this opinion, we have the authority of eminent grammarians; in particular, that of Dr. Beattie. "Some writers," says the doctor, "will not allow any thing to be a tense, but what in one inflected word, expresses an affirmation with time; for that those parts of the verb are not properly called tenses, which assume that appearance, by means of auxiliary words. At this rate, we should have, in English, two tenses only, the present and the past in the active verb, and in the passive no tenses at all. But his is a needless nicety; and, if adopted, would introduce confusion into the grammatical art. If *eraveram* be a tense, why should not *amatus fueram*? If *I heard* be a tense, *I did hear*, *I have heard*, and *I shall hear*, must be equally entitled to that appellation."

The proper form of a tense, in the Greek and Latin tongues, is certainly that which it has in the grammars of those languages. But in the Greek and Latin grammars, we uniformly find, that some of the tenses are formed by variations of the principal verb; and others, by the addition of a helping verb. It is, therefore, indisputable, that the principal verb, or rather its participle, and an auxiliary, constitute a regular tense in the Greek and Latin languages. This point being established, we may, doubtless, apply it to English verbs; and extend the principle as far as convenience, and the idiom of our language require.

If it should be said, that, on the same ground that a participle and auxiliary are allowed to form a tense, and the verb is to be conjugated accordingly, the English noun and pronoun ought to be declined at large, with articles and prepositions; we must object to the inference. Such a mode of declension is not adapted to our language. This we think has been already proved. It is also confessedly inapplicable to the learned languages. Where then is the

grammatical inconsistency, or the want of conformity to the principles of analogy, in making some tenses of the English verb to consist of principal and auxiliary; and the cases of English nouns, chiefly in their termination. The argument from analogy, instead of militating against us, appears to confirm and establish our position. See pages 78—80. 102—104. 108—111. 201—203.

We shall close these remarks on the tenses, with a few observations extracted from the *ENCYCLOPÆDIA BRITANNICA*. They are worth the student's attention, as a part of them applies, not only to our views of the tenses, but to many other parts of the work.—“Harris [by way of hypothesis] has enumerated no fewer than twelve tenses. Of this enumeration we can by no means approve: for, without entering into a minute examination of it, nothing can be more obvious, than that his *inceptive present*, “I am going to write,” is a future tense; and his *completive present*, “I have written,” a past tense. But, as was before observed of the classification of words, we cannot help being of opinion, that, to take the tenses as they are commonly received, and endeavour to ascertain their nature and their differences, is a much more useful exercise, as well as more proper for a work of this kind, than to raise, as might easily be raised, new theories on the subject.”†

SECTION 6. *The Conjugation of the auxiliary verbs* “TO HAVE and TO BE.

THE Conjugation of a verb, is the regular combination and arrangement of its several numbers, persons, moods, and tenses.

The Conjugation of an active verb is styled the **ACTIVE VOICE**; and that of a passive verb, the **PASSIVE VOICE**.

† The following criticism affords an additional support to the author's system of the tenses, &c.

“Under the head of Etymology, the author of this grammar judiciously adheres to the natural simplicity of the English language, without embarrassing the learner with distinctions peculiar to the Latin tongue. The difficult subject of the Tenses, is clearly explained; and with less encumbrance of technical phraseology, than in most other grammars.”

Analytical Review.

The
ed in

1. Pers
2. Pers
3. Pers
bath

1. I had
2. Thou
3. He, &

1. I hav
2. Thou
3. He h

1. I had
2. Thou
3. He h

1. I shal
2. Thou
3. He sh

† The term
be exactly
grammarians
meaning att
carefully ex
terms to ge
are supporte
note in his
however, an
they cannot
pretend, and

The auxiliary and active verb **TO HAVE**, is conjugated in the following manner.

TO HAVE.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>Pers.</i> I have.	1. We have.
2. <i>Pers.</i> Thou hast.	2. Ye or you have.
3. <i>Pers.</i> He, she, or it } hath or has.	3. They have.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. I had.	1. We had.
2. Thou hadst.	2. Ye or you had.
3. He, &c. had.	3. They had.

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. I have had.	1. We have had.
2. Thou hast had.	2. Ye or you have had.
3. He has had.	3. They have had.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. I had had.	1. We had had.
2. Thou hadst had.	2. Ye or you had had.
3. He had had.	3. They had had.

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. I shall or will have.	1. We shall or will have.
2. Thou shalt or wilt have.	2. Ye or you shall or will have.
3. He shall or will have.	3. They shall or will have.

† The terms which we have adopted, to designate the three past tenses, may not be exactly significant of their nature and distinctions. But as they are used by grammarians in general, and have an established authority; and, especially, as the meaning attached to each of them, and their different significations, have been carefully explained; we presume that no solid objection can be made to the use of terms so generally approved, and so explicitly defined. See pag. 86 and 88. We are supported in these sentiments, by the authority of Dr. Johnson. See the first note in his "Grammar of the English Tongue," prefixed to his dictionary. I, however, as teachers should think it warrantable to change the established names, they cannot perhaps find any more appropriate, than the terms *first preterit*, *second preterit*, and *third preterit*.—See the Octavo Grammar.

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I shall have had.
2. Thou wilt have had.
3. He will have had.

PLURAL.

1. We shall have had.
2. Ye or you will have had.
3. They will have had.

Imperative Mood.

SINGULAR.

1. Let me have.
2. Have, or have thou, or do thou have.
3. Let him have.

PLURAL.

1. Let us have.
2. Have, or have ye, or do ye or you have.
3. Let them have†.

The imperative mood is not strictly entitled to three persons. The command is always addressed to the *second* person, not to the first or third. For when we say, "Let me have," "Let him, or let them have," the meaning and construction are, *do thou*, or *do ye*, let me, him, or them have. In philosophical strictness, both number and person might be entirely excluded from every verb. They are, in fact, the properties of substantives, not a part of the essence of a verb. Even the name of the *imperative* mood, does not always correspond to its nature: for it sometimes *petitions* as well as *commands*. But, with respect to all these points, the practice of our grammarians is so uniformly fixed, and so analogous to the languages, ancient and modern, which our youth have to study, that it would be an unwarrantable degree of innovation, to deviate from the established terms and arrangements. See the *advertisement* at the end of the Introduction, page 8; and the quotation from the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, page 86.

Potential Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I may or can have.
2. Thou mayst or canst have.
3. He may or can have.

PLURAL.

1. We may or can have.
2. Ye or you may or can have.
3. They may or can have.

† If such sentences should be rigorously examined, the Imperative will appear to consist merely in the word *let*. See *Parsing*, p. 226.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I might, could, would, or should have.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst or shouldst have.
3. He might, could, would, or should have.

PLURAL.

1. We might, could, would, or should have.
2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should have.
3. They might, could, would, or should have.

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I may or can have had.
2. They mayst or canst have had.
3. He may or can have had.

PLURAL.

1. We may or can have had.
2. Ye or you may or can have had.
3. They may or can have had.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I might, could, would, or should have had.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have had.
3. He might, could, would, or should have had.

PLURAL.

1. We might, could, would, or should have had.
2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should have had.
3. They might, could, would, or should have had.

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. If I have.
2. If thou have†.
3. If he have†.

PLURAL.

1. If we have.
2. If ye or you have.
3. If they have.

|| *Shall* and *will*, when they denote inclination, resolution, promise, may be considered, as well as their relations *should* and *would*; as belonging to the potential mood. But as they generally signify futurity, they have been appropriated, as helping verbs, to the formation of the future tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods.

† Grammarians, in general, conjugate the present of the auxiliary, in this manner. But we presume that this is the form of the verb, considered as a *principal*, not as an *auxiliary* verb. See page 280. Note 4.

The remaining tenses of the subjunctive mood, are, in every respect, similar to the correspondent tenses of the indicative mood; with the addition to the verb, of a conjunction, expressed or implied, denoting a condition, motive, wish, supposition, &c. It will be proper to direct the learner to repeat all the tenses of this mood, with a conjunction prefixed to each of them. See, on this subject, the observations at page 103; and the notes on the nineteenth rule of syntax.

Infinitive Mood.

PRESENT. To have.

PERFECT. To have had.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT OR ACTIVE. Having.

PERFECT. Had.

COMPOUND PERFECT. Having had.

As the subjunctive mood, in English, has no variation, in the form of the verb, from the indicative, (except in the present tense, and the second future tense, of verbs generally, and the present and imperfect tenses of the verb *to be*,) it would be superfluous to conjugate it in this work, through every tense. But all the other moods and tenses of the verbs, both in the active and passive voices, are conjugated at large, that the learners may have no doubts or misapprehensions respecting their particular forms. They to whom the subject of grammar is entirely new, and young persons especially, are much more readily and effectually instructed, by seeing the parts of a subject so essential as the verb, unfolded and spread before them, in all their varieties, than by being generally and cursorily informed of the manner in which they may be exhibited. The time employed by the scholars, in consequence of this display of the verbs, is of small moment, compared with the advantages which they will probably derive from the plan.

† Except that the second and third persons, singular and plural, of the second future tense, require the auxiliary *shall*, *shall*, instead of *will*, *will*. Thus, "He *will* have completed the work by midsummer," is the indicative form; but the subjunctive is, "If he *shall* have completed the work by midsummer."

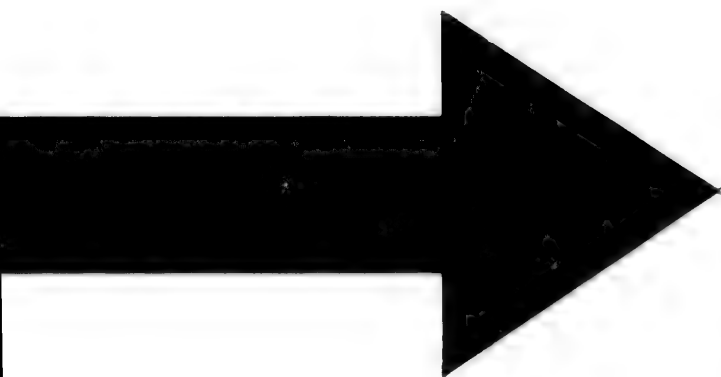
It m
person
memor
namely
first fu
to mem
the bus
progress
general
may aft
It app
ers, to n
the tenn
some gr
fect tenn
they are
to time,
will app
but he r
in time;
"He wa
misunder
might ha
done it b
some oc
should, re
The ne
person sin
he auxili
ense, in
lied. T
erred fro
notice, wh
erved th
He shall
rives."

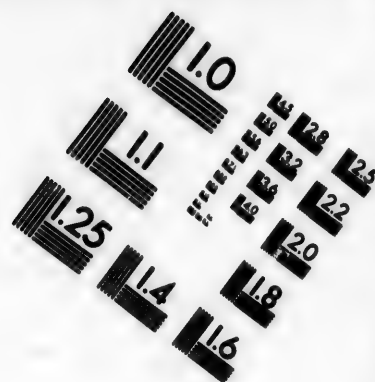
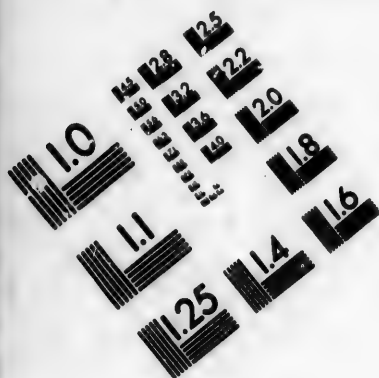
It may not, however, be generally proper for young persons beginning the study of grammar, to commit to memory all the tenses of the verbs. If the *simple tenses*, namely, the *present* and the *imperfect*, together with the *first future tense*, should, in the first instance, be committed to memory, and the rest carefully perused and explained, the business will not be tedious to the scholars, and their progress will be rendered more obvious and pleasing. The general view of the subject, thus acquired and improved, may afterwards be extended with ease and advantage.

It appears to be proper, for the information of the learners, to make a few observations in this place, on some of the tenses, &c. The first is, that, in the potential mood, some grammarians confound the present with the imperfect tense; and the perfect with the pluperfect. But that they are really distinct, and have an appropriate reference to time, correspondent to the definitions of those tenses, will appear from a few examples: "I wished him to stay, but he *would* not;" "I *could* not accomplish the business in time;" "It was my direction that he *should* submit;" "He was ill, but I thought he *might* live;" "I *may* have misunderstood him;" "He *cannot* have deceived me;" "He *might* have finished the work sooner, but he *could* not have done it better."—It must, however, be admitted, that, on some occasions, the auxiliaries *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, refer also to present and to future time. See page 83.

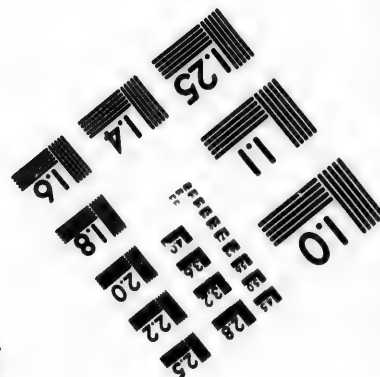
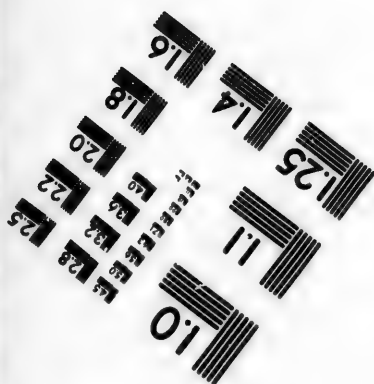
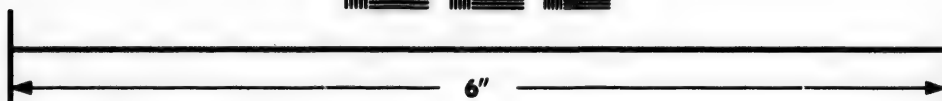
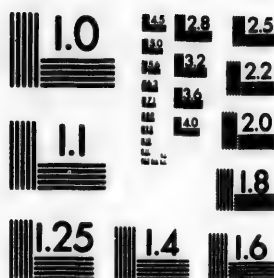
The next remark is, that the auxiliary *will*, in the first person singular and plural of the second future-tense; and the auxiliary *shall*, in the second and third persons of that tense, in the indicative mood, appear to be incorrectly applied. The impropriety of such associations may be inferred from a few examples: "I *will* have had previous notice, whenever the event happens;" "Thou *shall* have served thy apprenticeship before the end of the year;" "He *shall* have completed his business when the messenger arrives." "I *shall* have had; thou *will* have served; he







**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

10
16
18
20
22
25

11

10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

will have completed," &c. would have been correct and applicable. The peculiar import of these auxiliaries, as explained in page 98, under section 7, seems to account for their impropriety in the applications just mentioned.

Some writers on Grammar object to the propriety of admitting the second future, in both the indicative and subjunctive moods: but that this tense is applicable to both moods, will be manifest from the following examples. "John will have earned his wages the next New-year's day," is a simple declaration; and therefore in the indicative mood: "If he shall have finished his work when the bell rings, he will be entitled to the reward," is conditional and contingent, and is therefore in the subjunctive mood.

We shall conclude these detached observations, with one remark which may be useful to the young scholar, namely, that an indicative mood is converted into the subjunctive, by the expression of a condition, motive, wish, supposition, &c. being superadded to it; so the potential mood may, in like manner, be turned into the subjunctive; as will be seen in the following examples: "If I could deceive him, I should abhor it;" "Though he should increase in wealth, he would not be charitable;" "Even in prosperity he would gain no esteem, unless he should conduct himself better."

The auxiliary and neuter verb *To be*, is conjugated as follows:

TO BE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I am.
2. Thou art.
3. He, she, or it is.

PLURAL.

1. We are.
2. Ye or you are.
3. They are.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I was.
2. Thou wast.
3. He was.

PLURAL.

1. We were.
2. Ye or you were.
3. They were.

PERFECT TENSE.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I have been. | 1. We have been. |
| 2. Thou hast been. | 2. Ye or you have been. |
| 3. He hath or has been. | 3. They have been. |

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
| 1. I had been. | 1. We had been. |
| 2. Thou hadst been. | 2. Ye or you had been. |
| 3. He had been. | 3. They had been. |

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
| 1. I shall or will be. | 1. We shall or will be. |
| 2. Thou shalt or wilt be. | 2. Ye or you shall or will be. |
| 3. He shall or will be. | 3. They shall or will be. |

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
| 1. I shall have been. | 1. We shall have been. |
| 2. Thou wilt have been. | 2. Ye or you will have been. |
| 3. He will have been. | 3. They will have been. |

Imperative Mood.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
| 1. Let me be. | 1. Let us be. |
| 2. Be thou or do thou be. | 2. Be ye or you, or do ye be. |
| 3. Let him be. | 3. Let them be. |

Potential Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
| 1. I may or can be. | 1. We may or can be. |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst be. | 2. Ye or you may or can be. |
| 3. He may or can be. | 3. They may or can be. |

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I might, could, would, or should be.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst be.
3. He might, could, would, or should be.

PLURAL.

1. We might, could, would, or should be.
2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should be.
3. They might, could, would, or should be.

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I may or can have been.
2. Thou mayst or canst have been.
3. He may or can have been.

PLURAL.

1. We may or can have been.
2. Ye or you may or can have been.
3. They may or can have been.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I might, could, would, or should have been.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have been.
3. He might, could, would, or should have been.

PLURAL.

1. We might, could, would, or should have been.
2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should have been.
3. They might, could, would, or should have been.

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. If I be.
2. If thou be.
3. If he be.

PLURAL.

1. If we be.
2. If ye or you be.
3. If they be.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. If I were.
2. If thou wert.
3. If he were.

PLURAL.

1. If we were.
2. If ye or you were.
3. If they were.

The remaining tenses of this mood are, in general, similar to the correspondent tenses of the Indicative mood. See pages 90, 102, 103, and the notes under the nineteenth rule of syntax.

Infinitive Mood.

PRESENT TENSE. To be. **PERFECT.** To have been.

Participles.

PRESENT. Being. **PERFECT.** Been.

COMPOUND PERFECT. Having been.

SECTION 7. *The Auxiliary Verbs conjugated in their simple form : with observations on their peculiar nature and force.*

THE learner will perceive that the preceding auxiliary verbs, *to have* and *to be*, could not be conjugated through all the moods and tenses, without the help of other auxiliary verbs; namely, *may, can, will, shall*, and their variations. That auxiliary verbs, in their simple state, and unassisted by others, are of a very limited extent; and that they are chiefly useful, in the aid which they afford in conjugating the principal verbs; will clearly appear to the scholar, by a distinct conjugation of each of them, uncombined with any other. They are offered for his inspection; not to be committed to memory.

TO HAVE

PRESENT TENSE

Sing. 1. I have. 2. Thou hast. 3. He hath or has.

Plur. 1. We have. 2. Ye or you have. 3. They have.

IMPERFECT TENSE

Sing. 1. I had. 2. Thou hadst. 3. He had.

Plur. 1. We had. 2. Ye or you had. 3. They had.

PERFECT. I have had &c. **PLUPERFECT.** I had had &c.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Having. **PERFECT.** Had.

TO BE.**PRESENT TENSE.**

- Sing. 1. I am. 2. Thou art. 3. He is.
 Plur. 1. We are. 2. Ye or you are. 3. They are.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing. 1. I was. 2. Thou wast. 3. He was.
 Plur. 1. We were. 2. Ye or you were. 3. They were.

PARTICIPLES.

- PRESENT.** Being. **PERFECT.** Been.

SHALL.**PRESENT TENSE.**

- Sing. 1. I shall. 2. Thou shalt. 3. He shall.
 Plur. 1. We shall. 2. Ye or you shall. 3. They shall.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing. 1. I should. 2. Thou shouldst. 3. He should.
 Plur. 1. We should. 2. Ye or you should. 3. They should.

WILL.**PRESENT TENSE.**

- Sing. 1. I will. 2. Thou wilt. 3. He will.
 Plur. 1. We will. 2. Ye or you will. 3. They will.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing. 1. I would. 2. Thou wouldst. 3. He would.
 Plur. 1. We would. 2. Ye or you would. 3. They would.

MAY.**PRESENT TENSE.**

- Sing. 1. I may. 2. Thou mayst. 3. He may.
 Plur. 1. We may. 2. Ye or you may. 3. They may.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing. 1. I might. 2. Thou mightst. 3. He might.
 Plur. 1. We might. 2. Ye or you might. 3. They might.

† Shall is here properly used in the present tense, having the same analogy to should that can has to could, may to might, and will to would.

CAN.

PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. I can. 2. Thou canst. 3. He can.
Plur. 1. We can. 2. Ye or you can. 3. They can.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. I could. 2. Thou couldst. 3. He could.
Plur. 1. We could. 2. Ye or you could. 3. They could.

TO DO.

PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. I do. 2. Thou dost. 3. He doth or does.
Plur. 1. We do. 2. Ye or you do. 3. They do.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. I did. 2. Thou didst. 3. He did.
Plur. 1. We did. 2. Ye or you did. 3. They did.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Doing. PERFECT. Done.

The verbs *have*, *be*, *will*, and *do*, when they are unconnected with a principal verb, expressed or understood, are not auxiliaries, but principal verbs: as, "We *have* enough;" "I *am* grateful;" "He *wills* it to be so;" "They *do* as they please." In this view, they also have their auxiliaries; as, "I *shall have* enough;" "I *will be* grateful," &c.

The peculiar force of the several auxiliaries will appear from the following account of them.

Do and *did* mark the action itself, or the time of it, with greater energy and positiveness: as, "I *do* speak truth;" "I *did* respect him;" "Here am I, for thou *didst* call me." They are of great use in negative sentences: as, "I *do not* fear;" "I *did not* write." They are almost universally employed in asking questions: as, "Does he learn?" "Did he not write?" They sometimes also supply the place of another verb, and make the repetition of it, in the same or a subsequent sentence, unnecessary: as, "You attend not to your studies as he *does*," (i. e. as he attends, &c.) "I shall come if I can; but if I *do not*, please to excuse me;" (i. e. if I come not.)

Let not only expresses permission, but entreating, &c.

horting, commanding : as, " Let us know the truth ; " " Let me die the death of the righteous ; " " Let not thy heart be too much elated with success ; " " Let thy inclination submit to thy duty."

May and *might* express the possibility or liberty of doing a thing ; *can* and *could*, the power : as, " It may rain ; " " I may write or read ; " " He might have improved more than he has ; " " He can write much better than he could last year."

Must is sometimes called in for a helper, and denotes necessity : as, " We must speak the truth, whenever we do speak, and we must not prevaricate."

Will, in the first person singular and plural, intimates resolution and promising ; in the second and third person, only foretells : as, " I will reward the good, and will punish the wicked ; " " We will remember benefits, and be grateful ; " " Thou wilt, or he will, repent of that folly ; " " You or they will have a pleasant walk."

Shall, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretells ; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens : as, " I shall go abroad ; " " We shall dine at home ; " " Thou shalt, or you shall, inherit the land ; " " Ye shall do justice, and love mercy ; " " They shall account for their misconduct." The following passage is not translated according to the distinct and proper meanings of the words *shall* and *will* : " Surely goodness and mercy shall follow me all the days of my life ; and I will dwell in the house of the Lord for ever ; " it ought to be, " *Will* follow me," and " *I shall* dwell."—The foreigner who, as it is said, fell into the Thames, and cried out ; " *I will* be drowned ; no body *shall* help me ; " made a sad misapplication of these auxiliaries.

These observations respecting the import of the verbs *will* and *shall*, must be understood of explicative sentences ; for when the sentence is interrogative, just the reverse, for the most part, takes place : thus, " *I shall* go ; you *will*

go ;
inter
But,
exp
W
ing
as th
" He
comm
some
moo
" He
not
W
obliga
med

V
their
perf
when

A
ing

1. I
2. T
3. He
or
f In
we mean
over low

go ;" express event only : but, " *will* you go ?" imports intention ; and, " *shall* I go ?" refers to the will of another. But, " He *shall* go," and " *shall* he go ?" both imply will ; expressing or referring to a command.

When the verb is put in the subjunctive mood, the meaning of these auxiliaries likewise undergoes some alteration ; as the learners will readily perceive by a few examples : " He *shall* proceed," " If he *shall* proceed ;" " You *shall* consent," " If you *shall* consent." These auxiliaries are sometimes interchanged, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, to convey the same meaning of the auxiliary : as, " He *will* not return," " If he *shall* not return ;" " He *shall* not return," " If he *will* not return."

Would, primarily denotes inclination of will ; and *should*, obligation : but they both vary their import, and are often used to express simple event.

SECTION 3. The Conjugation of regular Verbs.

ACTIVE.

Verbs Active are called Regular, when they form their imperfect tense of the indicative mood, and their perfect participle, by adding to the verb *ed*, or *d* only when the verb ends in *e* : as,

Present.	Imperfect.	Participle.
I favour.	I favoured.	Favoured.
I love.	I loved.	Loved.

A Regular Active Verb is conjugated in the following manner.

TO LOVE.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. I love.	1. We love.
2. Thou lovest.	2. Ye or you love.
3. He, she, or it, loveth ; or loves.	3. They love.

{ In the present and imperfect tenses, we use a different form of the verb, when we mean to express energy and positiveness : as, " I *do* love ; thou *doest* love ; he *doth* love ; I *did* love ; thou *didst* love ; he *did* love."

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I loved.
2. Thou lovedst.
3. He loved.

PLURAL.

1. We loved.
2. Ye or you loved.
3. They loved.

PERFECT TENSES.

SINGULAR.

1. I have loved.
2. Thou hast loved.
3. He hath or has loved.

PLURAL.

1. We have loved.
2. Ye or you have loved.
3. They have loved.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I had loved.
2. Thou hadst loved.
3. He had loved.

PLURAL.

1. We had loved.
2. Ye or you had loved.
3. They had loved.

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I shall or will love.
2. Thou shalt or wilt love.
3. He shall or will love.

PLURAL.

1. We shall or will love.
2. Ye or you shall or will love.
3. They shall or will love.

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I shall have loved.
2. Thou wilt have loved.
3. He will have loved.

PLURAL.

1. We shall have loved.
2. Ye or you will have loved.
3. They will have loved.

Those tenses are called simple tenses, which are formed of the principal, without an auxiliary verb: as, "I love, I loved." The compound tenses are such as cannot be formed without an auxiliary verb: as, "I have loved; I had loved; I shall or will love; I may love; I may be loved; I may have been loved;" &c. These compounds are, however, to be considered as only different forms of the same verb.

Imperative Mood.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Let me love. | 1. Let us love. |
| 2. Love, or love thou, or do thou love. | 2. Love, or love ye or you, or do ye love. |
| 3. Let him love. | 3. Let them love. |

Potential Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I may or can love. | 1. We may or can love. |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst love. | 2. Ye or you may or can love. |
| 3. He may or can love. | 3. They may or can love. |

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I might, could, would, or should love. | 1. We might, could, would, or should love. |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst love. | 2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should love. |
| 3. He might, could, would, or should love. | 3. They might, could, would, or should love. |

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. I may or can have loved. | 1. We may or can have loved. |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst have loved. | 2. Ye or you may or can have loved. |
| 3. He may or can have loved. | 3. They may or can have loved. |

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I might, could, would, or should have loved. | 1. We might, could, would, or should have loved. |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have loved. | 2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should have loved. |
| 3. He might, could, would, or should have loved. | 3. They might, could, would, or should have loved. |

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. If I love.
2. If thou love.
3. If he love.

PLURAL.

1. If we love.
2. If ye or you love.
3. If they love.

The remaining tenses of this mood, are, in general, similar to the correspondent tenses of the indicative mood. See page 90, and page 103.

It may be of use to the scholar, to remark, in this place, that though only the conjunction *if* is affixed to the verb, any other conjunction proper for the subjunctive mood, may, with equal propriety, be occasionally annexed. The instance given is sufficient to explain the subject: more would be tedious, and tend to embarrass the learner.

Infinitive Mood.

PRESENT. To love.

PERFECT. To have loved.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Loving.

PERFECT. Loved.

COMPOUND PERFECT.

Having loved.

The active verb may be conjugated differently, by adding its present or active participle to the auxiliary verb *to be*, through all its moods and tenses; as, instead of "I teach, thou teachest, he teaches," &c.; we may say, "I am teaching, thou art teaching, he is teaching," &c.: and instead of "I taught," &c. "I was teaching," &c. and so on, through all the variations of the auxiliary. This mode of conjugation has, on particular occasions, a peculiar propriety; and contributes to the harmony and precision of the language. These forms of expression are adapted to particular acts, not to general habits, or affections of the mind. They are very frequently applied to neuter verbs; as, "I am running; he is sleeping."

† As the participle, in this mode of conjugation, performs the office of a verb, through all the moods and tenses; and as it implies the idea of time, and governs the objective case of nouns and pronouns, in the same manner as verbs do; is it not manifest, that it is a species or form of the verb, and that it cannot be properly considered as a distinct part of speech?

† We
to which

Some grammarians apply, what is called the *conjunctive termination*, to the persons of the principal verb, and to its auxiliaries, through all the tenses of the subjunctive mood. But this is certainly contrary to the practice of good writers. Johnson applies this termination to the present and perfect tenses only. Lowth restricts it entirely to the present tense; and Priestley confines it to the present and imperfect tenses. This difference of opinion amongst grammarians of such eminence, may have contributed to that diversity of practice, so observable in the use of the subjunctive mood. Uniformity in this point is highly desirable. It would materially assist both teachers and learners; and would constitute a considerable improvement in our language. On this subject, we adopt the opinion of Dr. Lowth; and conceive we are fully warranted by his authority, and that of the most correct and elegant writers, in limiting the conjunctive termination of the principal verb, to the second and third persons singular of the *present tense*.

Grammarians have not only differed in opinion, respecting the extent and variations of the subjunctive mood; but a few of them have even doubted the existence of such a mood in the English language. These writers assert, that the verb has no variation from the indicative; and that a conjunction added to the verb, gives it no title to become a distinct mood; or, at most, no better than it would have, if any other particle were joined to it. To these observations it may be replied; 1st. It is evident, on inspection, that, in the subjunctive mood, the present tense of the principal verbs, the present and imperfect tenses of the verb *to be*, and the second and third persons, in both numbers, of the second future tense of all verbs; require a variation from the forms which those tenses have in the indicative mood. So much difference in the form of the verb, would warrant a correspondent distinction of mood,

† We think it has been proved, that the auxiliary is a constituent part of the verb to which it relates: that the principal and its auxiliary form but one verb.

though the remaining parts of the subjunctive were, in all respects, similar to those of the indicative. In other languages, a principle of this nature has been admitted, both in the conjugation of verbs, and the declension of nouns. 2d. There appears to be as much propriety, in giving a conjunction the power of assisting to form the subjunctive mood, as there is in allowing the particle *to* to have an effect in the formation of the infinitive mood†. 3d. A conjunction added to the verb, shows the manner of being, doing, or suffering, which other particles cannot show: they do not coalesce with the verb, and modify it, as conjunctions do. 4th. It may be said, "If contingency constitutes the subjunctive mood, then it is the sense of a phrase, and not a conjunction, that determines this mood." But a little reflection will show, that the contingent sense lies in the meaning and force of the conjunction, expressed or understood.

This subject may be farther illustrated, by the following observations.—Moods have a foundation in nature. They show what is certain; what is possible; what is conditional; what is commanded. They express also other conceptions and volitions; all signifying the manner of being, doing, or suffering. But as it would tend to obscure, rather than elucidate the subject, if the moods were particularly enumerated, grammarians have very properly given them such combinations and arrangements, as serve to explain the nature of this part of language, and to render the knowledge of it easily attainable.

The grammars of some languages contain a greater number of the moods, than others, and exhibit them in different forms. The Greek and Roman tongues denote them, by particular variations in the verb itself. This form, however, was the effect of ingenuity and improvement: it is not essential to the nature of the subject. The moods

† Conjunctions have an influence on the mood of the following verb.
Conjunctions have sometimes a government of moods.

Dr. Stathe.
Dr. Lenth.

ma
by
the
oul,
(
the
pri
tha
tion
see

the
ver
sive
A
par
of
man

1. I
2. T
3. F

1. I
2. T
3. F

1. I
2. T
3. F

may be as effectually designated by a plurality of words, as by a change in the appearance of a single word; because the same ideas are denoted, and the same ends accomplished, by either manner of expression.

On this ground, the moods of the English verb, as well as the tenses, are, with great propriety, formed partly by the principal verb itself, and partly by the assistance which that verb derives from other words. For further observations, relative to the views and sentiments here advanced, see pages 78—80. 84—86. 108—111. 201—203.

PASSIVE.

VERBS Passive are called regular, when they form their perfect participle by the addition of *d* or *ed*, to the verb: as, from the verb "To love," is formed the passive, "I am loved; I was loved, I shall be loved," &c.

A passive verb is conjugated by adding the perfect participle to the auxiliary *to be*, through all its changes of number, person, mood, and tense, in the following manner.

TO BE LOVED.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I am loved. | 1. We are loved. |
| 2. Thou art loved. | 2. Ye or you are loved. |
| 3. He is loved. | 3. They are loved. |

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. I was loved. | 1. We were loved. |
| 2. Thou wast loved. | 2. Ye or you were loved. |
| 3. He was loved. | 3. They were loved. |

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I have been loved. | 1. We have been loved. |
| 2. Thou hast been loved. | 2. Ye or you have been loved. |
| 3. He hath or has been loved. | 3. They have been loved. |

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I had been loved.
2. Thou hadst been loved.
3. He had been loved.

PLURAL.

1. We had been loved.
2. Ye or you had been loved.
3. They had been loved.

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I shall or will be loved.
2. Thou shalt or wilt be loved.
3. He shall or will be loved.

PLURAL.

1. We shall or will be loved.
2. Ye or you shall or will be loved.
3. They shall or will be loved.

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I shall have been loved.
2. Thou wilt have been loved.
3. He will have been loved.

PLURAL.

1. We shall have been loved.
2. Ye or you will have been loved.
3. They will have been loved.

Imperative Mood.

SINGULAR.

1. Let me be loved.
2. Be thou loved, or do thou be loved.
3. Let him be loved.

PLURAL.

1. Let us be loved.
2. Be ye or you loved, or do ye be loved.
3. Let them be loved.

Potential Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I may or can be loved.
2. Thou mayst or canst be loved.
3. He may or can be loved.

PLURAL.

1. We may or can be loved.
2. Ye or you may or can be loved.
3. They may or can be loved.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. I might, could, would, or should be loved.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst be loved.
3. He might, could, would, or should be loved.

PLURAL.

1. We might, could, would, or should be loved.
2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should be loved.
3. They might, could, would, or should be loved.

PERFECT TENSE

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. I may or can have been loved. | 1. We may or can have been loved. |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst have been loved. | 2. Ye or you may or can have been loved. |
| 3. He may or can have been loved. | 3. They may or can have been loved. |

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. I might, could, would, or should have been loved. | 1. We might, could, would, or should have been loved. |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have been loved. | 2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should have been loved. |
| 3. He might, could, would or should have been loved. | 3. They might, could, would, or should have been loved. |

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. If I be loved. | 1. If we be loved. |
| 2. If thou be loved. | 2. If ye or you be loved. |
| 3. If he be loved. | 3. If they be loved. |

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. If I were loved. | 1. If we were loved. |
| 2. If thou wert loved. | 2. If ye or you were loved. |
| 3. If he were loved. | 3. If they were loved. |

The remaining tenses of this mood are, in general, similar to the correspondent tenses of the Indicative mood. See pages 90, 103, and the notes under the nineteenth rule of syntax.

Infinitive Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

To be loved. .

PERFECT.

To have been loved.

Participles.

PRESENT.

Being loved.

PERFECT OR PASSIVE.

Loved.

COMPOUND PERFECT.

Having been loved.

When an auxiliary is joined to the participle of the principal verb, the auxiliary goes through all the variations of person and number, and the participle itself continues invariably the same. When there are two or more auxiliaries joined to the participle, the first of them only is varied according to person and number. The auxiliary *must* admits of no variation.

The neuter verb is conjugated like the active; but as it partakes somewhat of the nature of the passive, it admits, in many instances, of the passive form, retaining still the neuter signification; as, "I am arrived;" "I was gone;" "I am grown." The auxiliary verb *am, was*, in this case, precisely defines the time of the action or event, but does not change the nature of it; the passive form still expressing, not properly a passion, but only a state or condition of being.

SECTION 9. *Observations on Passive Verbs.*

Some writers on grammar assert, that there are no Passive Verbs in the English language, because we have no verbs of this kind with a peculiar termination, all of them being formed by the different tenses of the auxiliary *to be*, joined to the passive participle of the verb. This is, however, to mistake the true nature of the English verb; and to regulate it, not on the principles of our own tongue, but on those of foreign languages. The conjugation, or the variation, of the English verb, to answer all the purposes of verbs, is accomplished by the means of auxiliaries; and if it be alleged that we have no passive verbs, because we cannot

exhibit them without having recourse to helping verbs. It may with equal truth be said, that we have no *perfect*, *pluperfect*, or *future tense*, in the indicative or infinitive mood; since these, as well as some other parts of the verb active, are formed by auxiliaries.

Even the Greek and Latin passive verbs require an auxiliary to conjugate some of their tenses; namely, the former, in the present of the optative and subjunctive moods; and the latter, in the perfect and pluperfect of the indicative, the perfect, pluperfect and future, of the subjunctive mood, and the perfect of the infinitive. The deponent verbs, in Latin, require also an auxiliary to conjugate several of their tenses. This statement abundantly proves that the conjugation of a verb in the learned languages does not consist solely in varying the form of the original verb. It proves that these languages, like our own language, sometimes conjugate with an auxiliary, and sometimes without it. There is, indeed, a difference. What the learned languages require to be done, in some instances, the peculiar genius of our own tongue obliges us to do, in active verbs, principally, and in passive ones, universally. In short, the variation of the verb, in Greek and Latin, is generally accomplished by prefixes, or terminations, added to the verb itself; in English, by the addition of auxiliaries.

The English tongue is, in many respects, materially different from the learned languages. It is, therefore, very possible to be mistaken ourselves, and to mislead and perplex others, by an undistinguishing attachment to the principles and arrangement of the Greek and Latin Grammarians. Much of the confusion and perplexity, which we meet with in the writings of some English Grammarians, on the subject of verbs, moods, and conjugations, has arisen from the misapplication of names. We are apt to think, that the old names must always be attached to the identical forms and things to which they were anciently attached.

ed. But if we rectify this mistake, and properly adjust the names to the peculiar forms and nature of the things in our own language, we shall be clear and consistent in our ideas; and, consequently, better able to represent them intelligibly to those whom we wish to inform.

The observations which we have made under this head, and on the subject of the moods in another place, will not apply to the declension and cases of nouns, so as to require us to adopt names and divisions similar to those of the Greek and Latin languages: for we should then have more cases than there are prepositions in connexion with the article and noun: and after all, it would be a useless, as well as an unwieldy apparatus; since every English preposition points to, and governs, but one case, namely the objective; which is also true with respect to our governing verbs and participles. But the conjugation of an English verb in form, through all its moods and tenses, by means of auxiliaries, so far from being useless or intricate, is a beautiful and regular display of it, and indispensably necessary to the language.

Some grammarians have alleged, that on the same ground that the voices, moods, and tenses, are admitted into the English-tongue, in the forms for which we have contended, we should also admit the dual number, the paulo post future tense, the middle voice, and all the moods and tenses, which are to be found in Greek and Latin. But this objection, though urged with much reliance on its weight, is not well founded. If the arrangement of the moods, tenses, &c. which we have adopted, is suited to the idiom of our tongue; and the principle, on which they are adopted, is extended as far as use and convenience require; where is the impropriety, in arresting our progress, and fixing our forms at the point of utility? A principle may be warrantably adopted, and carried to a precise convenient extent, without subjecting its supporters to the charge of inconsistency, for not pursuing it beyond the line of use and propriety.

Just
the
rub
size

that

has

ed

are,

long

10

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

78

The importance of giving the ingenious student clear and just ideas of the nature of our verbs, moods, and tenses, will apologise for the extent of the Author's remarks on these subjects, both here and elsewhere, and for his solicitude to simplify and explain them.—He thinks it has been proved, that the idiom of our tongue demands the arrangement he has given to the English verb; and that, though the modern languages, with respect to voices, moods, and tenses, are, in general, differently constructed from the English tongue, yet, in some respects, they are so similar to it, as to warrant the principle which he has adopted. See pages 78—80. 84—86. 102—104. 201—203.

SECTION 10. *Of Irregular Verbs.*

IRREGULAR Verbs are those which do not form their imperfect tense, and their perfect participle, by the addition of *d* or *ed* to the verb: as,

Present.	Imperfect.	Perfect Part.
I begin,	I began,	begun.
I know,	I knew,	known.

IRREGULAR VERBS ARE OF VARIOUS SORTS.

1. Such as have the present and imperfect tenses, and perfect participle, the same: as,

Present.	Imperfect.	Perfect Part.
Cost,	cost,	cost.
Put,	put,	put.

2. Such as have the imperfect tense, and perfect participle, the same: as,

Present.	Imperfect.	Perfect Part.
Abide,	abode,	abode.
Sell,	sold,	sold.

3. Such as have the imperfect tense, and perfect participle, different: as,

Present.	Imperfect.	Perfect Part.
Arise,	arose,	arisen.
Blow,	blew,	blown.

ENGLISH VERBS

Many verbs become irregular in the past tense, as, "beat, fed, leave, left:" others by the addition of "ed," as, "filled, taken:" others by the variation of the vowels, as, "bought, taught, might," &c.

The following list of the irregular verbs, with, it is thought, some found both comprehensive and accurate.

	Imperfect.	Past, or Past Part.
Absolve,	absolved,	absolved.
Am,	was,	been.
Arise,	arose,	arisen.
Awake,	awoke, a.	awaked.
Bear, to bring forth,	bore,	born.
Bear, to carry,	bore,	born.
Beat,	beat,	beaten, beat.
Begin,	began,	begun.
Bend,	bent,	bent.
Bereave,	bereft, a.	bereft, a.
Beseech,	besought,	besought.
Bid,	bid, bade,	bidden, bid.
Bind,	bound,	bound.
Bite,	bit,	bitten, bit.
Bleed,	bled,	bled.
Blow,	blew,	blown.
Break,	broke,	broken.
Breed,	bred,	bred.
Bring,	brought,	brought.
Build,	built,	built.
Burst,	burst,	burst.
Buy,	bought,	bought.
Cast,	cast,	cast.
Catch,	caught, a.	caught, a.
Child,	child,	children, child.
Choose,	chose.	chosen.
Cleave, to stick or cut here,	REGULAR.	
Cleave, to split.		cleave, or cleft. cleft, cleven.

Cling,	cling,	cling,
Close,	close,	close,
Come,	come,	come,
Cost,	cost,	cost,
Crow,	crow,	crow,
Crook,	crook,	crook,
Cut,	cut,	cut,
Dance,	dance,	dance,
Deal,	deal,	deal,
Dig,	dig,	dig,
Do,	do,	do,
Draw,	draw,	draw,
Drive,	drive,	drive,
Drink,	drink,	drink,
Dwell,	dwell,	dwell,
Eat,	eat,	eat,
Fall,	fall,	fall,
Feed,	feed,	feed,
Feel,	feel,	feel,
Fight,	fight,	fight,
Find,	find,	find,
Flie,	fly,	fly,
Fling,	fling,	fling,
Fly,	fly,	fly,
Forget,	forget,	forget,
Forseke,	forseke,	forseken,
Freeze,	freeze,	frozen,
Get,	get,	got,
Gild,	gild,	gilt,
Gird,	gird,	girt,
Give,	give,	given,
Go,	went,	gone,
Grave,	graved,	graven,

* *Forseke* is nearly obsolete. Its compound, *forseken*, is still in good use.

114	Prove	Improve	Prove or Prove Part
Grow	grew	ground	ground
Have	had	grow	growing
Hang	hung, a.	had	had
Hear	heard	hang, a.	hanging, a.
How	howed	heard	heard
Hide	hid	howed	hown, a.
Hit	hit	hid	hidden, hid.
Hold	held	hit	hit
Hurt	hurt	held	held
Keep	kept	hurt	hurt
Know	know	kept	kept
Load	loaded	know, a.	known, a.
Lay	laid	known	known
Lead	led	laden	laden
Leave	left	laid	laid
Lend	lent	led	led
Let	let	left	left
Lie, <i>to lie down</i>	lay	lent	lent
Load	loaded	let	let
Loose	lost	lain	lain
Make	made	laden	laden
Meet	met	lost	lost
Mow	mowed	made	made
Pay	paid	met	met
Put	put	mowed	mown, a.
Read	read	paid	paid
Reed	rent	put	put
Rid	rid	read	read
Ride	rode	rent	rent
Ring	rung, rang	rid	rid
Rise	rose	rode	rode, ridden
Rive	rived	rung, rang	rang
Run	ran	rose	risen
		rived	riven
		ran	run

From
 Saw
 Say
 See
 See
 Sell
 Send
 Set
 Shake
 Share
 Share
 Shed
 Shine
 Show
 Shoe
 Shoot
 Shrink
 Shred
 Shut
 Sing
 Sink
 Sit
 Slag
 Sleep
 Slide
 Sling
 Slink
 Silt
 Smite
 Sow
 Speak
 Speed
 Spend
 Spill
 Spin
 Spit
 Split

Present	Part. Pres.	Part. or Pres. Part.
Saw,	sawed,	sawn, a.
Say,	said,	said,
See,	saw,	seen,
Seek,	sought,	sought,
Sell,	sold,	sold,
Send,	sent,	sent,
Set,	set,	set,
Shake,	shook,	shaken,
Shape,	shaped,	shaped, shapen,
Shave,	shaved,	shaven,
Shear,	sheared,	shorn,
Shed,	shed,	shed,
Shine,	shone,	shone,
Show,	showed,	shown,
Shoe,	shod,	shod,
Shoot,	shot,	shot,
Shrink,	shrank,	shrunk,
Shred,	shred,	shred,
Shut,	shut,	shut,
Sing,	sung, sang,	sung,
Sink,	sank,	sunk,
Sit,	sat,	sat,
Slag,	slag,	slag,
Sleep,	slept,	slept,
Slide,	slid,	slidden,
Sling,	sung,	slung,
Slink,	slunk,	slunk,
Slit,	slit, a.	slit or slitt,
Smite,	smote,	smitten,
Sow,	sowed,	sown, a.
Speak,	spoke,	spoken,
Speed,	sped,	sped,
Spend,	spent,	spent,
Spill,	spilt, a.	spilt, a.
Spin,	spun,	spun,
Spit,	spit, spat,	spit, spitten,
Split,	split,	split,

* Spitten is nearly obsolete.

		Part. Pres. Part.
Stretch	stretched	stretching
Spread	spread	spreading
Spring	sprang, sprung	springing
Stand	stood	standing
Stalk	stalked	stalking
Stare	stared	staring
Sting	stung	stinging
Stink	stunk	stinking
Stride	strode or strid	striding
Strike	struck	struck or striking
Strive	struggled	struggling
Strove	striven	striven
Strew or strow	strewed or strowed	strewing, strowed, strowed
Swear	swore	swearing
Sweat	sweat, s.	sweating, s.
Swell	swelled	swelling, s.
Swim	swam, swam	swimming
Swing	swung	swinging
Take	took	taken
Teach	taught	teaching
Tear	tore	torn
Tell	told	telling
Think	thought	thinking
Thrive	throve, s.	thriving
Throw	threw	throwing
Thrust	thrust	thrusting
Tread	trod	treading
Wax	waxed	waxing, s.
Wear	wore	wearing
Weave	wove	weaving
Weep	wept	weeping
Win	won	winning
Wind	wound	winding
Work	wrought or worked	working
Wring	wrung	wringing
Write	wrote	writing

be
wh
Th
can
and
to l
ver
and
as
u
serv
able
tion
allo
care
exc
bec
min
drea
and

Sho

D
some

Can,
May,
Shall
Will,
Must
Ought

In the preceding list, some of the verbs will be found to be conjugated regularly, as well as irregularly; and those which admit of the regular form are marked with an s. There is a preference to be given to some of these, whose custom and judgment must determine. Those principal and participle which are first mentioned in the list, seem to be most eligible. The Compiler has not inserted those verbs as are irregular only in familiar writing or discourse, and which are improperly terminated by t, instead of s, as, learnt, spent, &c. These should be avoided in every sort of composition. It is, however, proper to observe, that some contractions of ed into t, are unexceptionable: and *whom*, the only dissimilated form of expression: as, crept, gift, &c.; and lost, felt, slept, &c. These allowable and necessary contractions must therefore be carefully distinguished by the learner, from those that are exceptionable. The words which are obsolete have also been omitted, that the learner might not be induced to mistake them for words in present use. Such are, wrotht, drunken, holpen, molten, gotten, gotten, bounden, &c.; and swang, wrang, slunk, strawed, gat, brakt, tace, ware, &c.

SECTION 11. Of Defective Verbs: and of the different moods in which verbs are conjugated.

DEFECTIVE VERBS are those which are used only in some of their moods and tenses.

The principal of them are these.

	Imperfect	Part. or Past Part.
Can,	could,	_____
May,	might,	_____
Shall,	should,	_____
Will,	would,	_____
Must,	must,	_____
Ought,	ought,	_____
_____	another,	_____

That the verbs *must* and *ought* have both a present and past signification, appears from the following sentences: "I must own that I am to blame;" "He must have been mistaken;" "Speaking things which they ought not;" "These ought ye to have done."

In most languages there are some verbs which are defective with respect to persons. These are denominated *impersonal* verbs. They are used only in the third person, because they refer to a subject peculiarly appropriated to that person; as, "It rains, it snows, it hails, it lightens, it thunders." But as the word *impersonal* implies a total absence of persons, it is improperly applied to those verbs which have a person; and hence it is manifest, that there is no such thing in English, nor indeed, in any language, as a sort of verbs really impersonal.

The whole number of verbs in the English language, regular and irregular, simple and compounded, taken together, is about 4300. The number of irregular verbs, the defective included, is about 127†.

Some Grammarians have thought that the English verbs, as well as those of the Greek, Latin, French, and other languages, might be classed into several conjugations; and that the three different terminations of the participle might be the distinguishing characteristics. They have accordingly proposed three conjugations; namely, the first to consist of verbs, the participles of which end in *ed*, or its contraction *t*; the second, of those ending in *ght*; and the third of those in *en*. But as the verbs of the first conjugation, would so greatly exceed in number those of both the others, as may be seen by the preceding account of them; and as those of the third conjugation are so various in their form, and incapable of being reduced to one plain rule; it seems better in practice, as Dr. Lowth justly observes, to consider the first in *ed* as the only regular form, and the other as

† The whole number of words, in the English language, is about thirty-five thousand.

de
Ge
ins
ly
use
mo
the
par
ing
lett
drec
Eng
ing
sider
I ha
with
ous,
thus
word
not
more
conce
ness,
An
adjec
some
reads
correc
So
soone
ly, are
wisely

deviations from it; after the example of the Saxon and German Grammarians.

Before we close the account of the verbs, it may afford instruction to the learners, to be informed, more particularly than they have been, that different nations have made use of different contrivances for marking the tenses and moods of their verbs. The Greeks and Latins distinguish them, as well as the cases of their nouns, adjectives, and participles, by varying the termination, or otherwise changing the form, of the word; retaining, however, those radical letters, which prove the inflection to be of the same kindred with its root. The modern tongues, particularly the English, abound in auxiliary words, which vary the meaning of the noun, or the verb, without requiring any considerable varieties of inflection. Thus, *I do love, I did love, I have loved, I had loved, I shall love*, have the same import with *amo, amabam, amavi, amaveram, amabo*. It is obvious, that a language, like the Greek and Latin, which can thus comprehend in one word the meaning of two or three words, must have some advantages over those which are not so comprehensive. Perhaps, indeed, it may not be more perspicuous; but, in the arrangement of words, and consequently in harmony and energy, as well as in conciseness, it may be much more elegant.

CHAPTER VII.

Of Adverbs.

AN Adverb is a part of speech joined to a verb, an adjective, and sometimes to another adverb, to express some quality or circumstance respecting it: as, "He reads *well*;" "A *truly* good man;" "He writes *very correctly*."

Some adverbs are compared, thus; "Soon, sooner, soonest;" "often, oftener, oftenest." Those ending in *ly*, are compared by *more*, and *most*: as, "Wisely, more wisely, most wisely."

Adverbs seem originally to have been contrived to express compendiously in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more: as, "He acted wisely," for he acted with wisdom; "prudently," for, with prudence; "He did it here," for, he did it in this place; "exceedingly," for, to a great degree; "often and seldom," for many, and for few times; "very," for, in an eminent degree, &c.

There are many words in the English language that sometimes used as adjectives, and sometimes as adverbs: as, "More men than women were there;" or, "I am more diligent than he." In the former sentence *more* is evidently an adjective, and in the latter, an adverb. There are others that are sometimes used as substantives, and sometimes as adverbs: as, "To-day's lesson is longer than yesterday's;" here *to-day* and *yesterday* are substantives, because they are words that make sense of themselves, and admit besides of a genitive case: but in the phrase, "He came home yesterday, and sets out again to-day," they are adverbs of time; because they answer to the question *when*. The adverb *much* is used as all three: as, "Where much is given, much is required;" "Much money has been expended;" "It is much better to go than to stay." In the first of these sentences, *much* is a substantive; in the second, it is an adjective; and in the third, an adverb. In short, nothing but the sense can determine what they are.

Adverbs, though very numerous, may be reduced to certain classes, the chief of which are those of Number, Order, Place, Time, Quantity, Manner or Quality, Doubt, Affirmation, Negation, Interrogation, and Comparison.

1. Of *number*: as, "Once, twice, thrice," &c.
2. Of *order*: as, "First, secondly, thirdly, fourthly, fifthly, lastly, finally," &c.
3. Of *place*: as, "Here, there, where, elsewhere, anywhere, somewhere, nowhere, herein, whither, hither, thither, upward, downward, forward, backward, whence, hence, thence, whithersoever," &c.

4. *Of time.*

Of time present : as, "Now, to-day," &c.

Of time past : as, "Already, before, lately, yesterday, heretofore, hitherto, long since, long ago," &c.

Of time to come : as, "To-morrow, not yet, hereafter, henceforth, henceforward, by and by, instantly, presently, immediately, straightways," &c.

Of time definite : as, "Often, often, oftentimes, oftentimes, sometimes, soon, seldom, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, always, when, then, ever, never, again," &c.

5. *Of quantity* : as, "Much, little, sufficiently, how much, how great, enough, abundantly," &c.

6. *Of manner or quality* : as, "Wisely, foolishly, justly, unjustly, quickly, slowly," &c. Adverbs of quality are the most numerous kind ; and they are generally formed by adding the termination *ly* to an adjective or participle, or changing *le* into *ly* : as, "Bad, badly ; cheerful, cheerfully ; able, ably ; admirable, admirably."

7. *Of doubt* : as, "Perhaps, peradventure, possibly, perchance."

8. *Of affirmation* : as, "Verily, truly, undoubtedly, doubtless, certainly, yea, yes, surely, indeed, really," &c.

9. *Of negation* : as, "Nay, no, not, by no means, not at all, in no wise," &c.

10. *Of interrogation* : as, "How, why, wherefore, whether," &c.

11. *Of comparison* : as, "More, most, better, best, worse, worst, less, least, very, almost, little, alike," &c.

Besides the adverbs already mentioned, there are many which are formed by a combination of several of the prepositions with the adverbs of place *here*, *there*, and *where* : as, "Hereof, thereof, whereof ; hereto, thereto, whereto ; hereby, thereby, whereby ; herewith, therewith, wherewith ; herein, therein, wherein ; therefore, (i. e. there-for,) wherefore, (i. e. where-for,) hereupon or hereon, thereupon

or thereon, whereupon or whereon, &c. Except *therefore*, these are seldom used.

In some instances the preposition suffers no change, but becomes an adverb merely by its application: as when we say, "he rides *about*;" "he was *near* falling;" "but do not *after* lay the blame on me."

There are also some adverbs, which are composed of nouns, and the letter *a* used instead of *at*, *on*, &c.: as, "Aside, athirst, afoot, ahead, asleep, aboard, ashore, abed, aground, afloat," &c.

The words *when* and *where*, and all others of the same nature, such as, *whence*, *whither*, *whenever*, *wherever*, &c. may be properly called *adverbial conjunctions*, because they participate the nature both of adverbs and conjunctions: of conjunctions, as they conjoin sentences; of adverbs, as they denote the attributes either of *time*, or of *place*.

It may be particularly observed with respect to the word *therefore*, that it is an adverb, when, without joining sentences, it only gives the sense of, *for that reason*. When it gives that sense, and also connects, it is a conjunction: as, "He is good, *therefore* he is happy." The same observation may be extended to the words *consequently*, *accordingly*, and the like. When these are subjoined to *and*, or joined to *if*, *since*, &c. they are adverbs, the connexion being made without their help: when they appear single, and unsupported by any other connective, they may be called conjunctions.

The inquisitive scholar may naturally ask, what necessity there is for *adverbs of time*, when verbs are provided with *tenses*, to show that circumstance. The answer is, though *tenses* may be sufficient to denote the greater distinctions of time, yet, to denote them all by the *tenses* would be a perplexity without end. What a variety of forms must be given to the verb, to denote *yesterday*, *to-day*, *to-morrow*, *formerly*, *lately*, *just now*, *now*, *immediately*, *presently*, *soon*, *hereafter*, &c. It was this consideration that made the *adverbs of time* necessary, over and above the *tenses*.

CHAPTER VIII.

Of Prepositions.

PREPOSITIONS serve to connect words with one another, and to show the relation between them. They are, for the most part, put before nouns and pronouns, as, "He went *from* London *to* York;" "She is *above* disguise;" "They are instructed *by* him."

The following is a list of the principal prepositions :

Of	into	above	at	off
to	within	below	near	on or upon
for	without	between	up	among
by	over	beneath	down	after
with	under	from	before	about
in	through	beyond	behind	against

Verbs are often compounded of a verb and a preposition; as, to uphold, to invest, to-overlook : and this composition sometimes gives a new sense to the verb; as, to understand, to withdraw, to forgive. But in English, the preposition is more frequently placed after the verb, and separately from it, like an adverb, in which situation it is not less apt to affect the sense of it, and to give it a new meaning; and may still be considered as belonging to the verb, and as a part of it. As, *to cast*, is to throw; but *to cast up*, or to compute, *an account*, is quite a different thing: thus, *to fall on*, *to bear out*, *to give over*, &c. So that the meaning of the verb, and the propriety of the phrase, depend on the preposition subjoined.

In the composition of many words, there are certain syllables employed, which Grammarians have called inseparable prepositions: as, *be*, *con*, *mis*, &c. in *bedeck*, *conjoin*, *mistake*: but as they are not words of any kind, they cannot properly be called a species of preposition.

One great use of prepositions, in English, is, to express

those relations, which, in some languages, are chiefly marked by cases, or the different endings of nouns. See page 54. The necessity and use of them will appear from the following examples. If we say, "he writes a pen," "they ran the river," "the tower fell the Greeks," "Lambeth is Westminster-abbey," there is observable, in each of these expressions, either a total want of connexion, or such a connexion as produces falsehood or nonsense : and it is evident, that, before they can be turned into sense, the vacancy must be filled up by some connecting word : as thus, "He writes *with* a pen ;" "they ran *towards* the river ;" "the tower fell *upon* the Greeks ;" "Lambeth is *over against* Westminster-abbey." We see by these instances, how prepositions may be necessary to connect those words, which in their signification are not naturally connected.

Prepositions, in their original and literal acceptance, seem to have denoted relations of place ; but they are now used *figuratively* to express other relations. For example,

as they who are *above* have in several respects the advantage of such as are *below*, prepositions expressing high and low places are used for superiority and inferiority in general : as, "He is *above* disguise ;" "we serve *under* a good master ;" "he rules *over* a willing people ;" "we should do nothing *beneath* our character."

The importance of the prepositions will be further perceived by the explanation of a few of them.

Of denotes possession or belonging, an effect or consequence, and other relations connected with these : as, "The house *of* my friend ;" that is, "the house belonging to my friend ;" "He died *of* a fever ;" that is, "in consequence of a fever."

To, or *unto*, is opposed to *from* : as, "He rode from Salisbury *to* Winchester."

For indicates the cause or motive of any action or circumstance, &c. as, "He loves her *for* (that is, on account of) her amiable qualities."

By
can
fall w
built
Will
"We
each
means
In re
acting,
1720 ;
Into
as, "H
into bra
With
or time
and finis
The s
as, "Sh
ly oppos
The in
be readi
We shall
there is a
prepositio
like the f
"He was
Put the on
by a staff
and killed
in significa
to imagine
Some of
of conjunc
open," &c
prepared a

By is generally used with reference to the cause, agent, means, &c. : as, "He was killed *by* a fall;" that is, "a fall was the cause of his being killed;" "This house was built *by* him;" that is, "he was the builder of it."

With denotes the act of accompanying, uniting, &c. : as, "We will go *with* you;" "They are on good terms *with* each other."—*With* also alludes to the instrument or means; as, "He was cut *with* a knife."

In relates to time, place, the state or manner of being or acting, &c. : as, "He was born *in* (that is, during) the year 1720;" "He dwells *in* the city;" "She lives *in* affluence."

Into is used after verbs that imply motion of any kind : as, "He retired *into* the country;" "Copper is converted *into* brass."

Within, relates to something comprehended in any place or time : as, "They are *within* the house;" "He began and finished his work *within* the limited time."

The signification of *without* is opposite to that of *within* : as, "She stands *without* the gate;" But it is more frequently opposed to *with* ; as, "You may go *without* me."

The import and force of the remaining prepositions will be readily understood, without a particular detail of them. We shall, therefore, conclude this head with observing, that there is a peculiar propriety in distinguishing the use of the prepositions *by* and *with* ; which is observable in sentences like the following : "He walks *with* a staff *by* moonlight;" "He was taken *by* stratagem, and killed *with* a sword." Put the one preposition for the other, and say, "he walks *by* a staff *with* moonlight;" "he was taken *with* stratagem, and killed *by* a sword;" and it will appear, that they differ in signification more than one, at first view, would be apt to imagine.

Some of the prepositions have the appearance and effect of conjunctions ; as, "After their prisons were thrown open," &c. "Before I die;" "They made haste to be prepared against their friends arrived;" but if the use

time, which is understood, be added, they will lose their conjunctive form; as, "After [the time when] their prisoners," &c.

The prepositions *after*, *before*, *above*, *beneath*, and several others, sometimes appear to be adverbs, and may be so considered: as, "They had their reward soon *after*;" "He died not long *before*;" "He dwells *above*;" but if the nouns *time* and *place* be added, they will lose their adverbial form; as, "He died not long *before* that time," &c.

CHAPTER IX.

Of Conjunctions.

A CONJUNCTION is a part of speech that is chiefly used to connect sentences; so as, out of two or more sentences, to make but one. It sometimes connects only words.

Conjunctions are principally divided into two sorts, the **COPULATIVE** and the **DISJUNCTIVE**.

The Conjunction Copulative serves to connect or to continue a sentence, by expressing an addition, a supposition, a cause, &c.: as, "He *and* his brother reside in London;" "I will go *if* he will accompany me;" "You are happy, *because* you are good."

The Conjunction Disjunctive serves, not only to connect and continue the sentence, but also to express opposition of meaning in different degrees: as, "Though he was frequently reprov'd, yet he did not reform;" "They came with her, *but* they went away without her."

The following is a list of the principal Conjunctions.

The *Copulative*. And, if, that, both, then, since, for, because, therefore, wherefore.

The *Disjunctive*. But, or, nor, as, than, lest, though, unless, either, neither, yet, notwithstanding.

The same word is occasionally used both as a conjunction and as an adverb; and sometimes, as a preposition. "I

rest then upon this argument ; " *And* is here a conjunction : in the following phrase, it is an adverb ; " He arrived *then*, and not before." " I submitted ; *for* it was vain to resist." In this sentence, *for* is a conjunction ; in the next, it is a preposition : " He contended *for* victory only." In the first of the following sentences, *since* is a conjunction ; in the second, it is a preposition ; and in the third, an adverb : " *Since* we must part, let us do it peaceably." " I have not seen him *since* that time." " Our friendship commenced long *since*."

Relative pronouns as well as conjunctions, serve to connect sentences : as, " Blessed is the man *who* feareth the Lord, *and* keepeth his commandments."

A relative pronoun possesses the force both of a pronoun and a connective. Nay, the union by relatives is rather closer, than that by mere conjunctions. The latter may form two or more sentences into one ; but, by the former, several sentences may incorporate in one and the same clause of a sentence. Thus, thou seest a man, and he is called Peter," is a sentence consisting of two distinct clauses, united by the copulative *and* : but, " the man *whom* thou seest is called Peter," is a sentence of one clause, and not less comprehensive than the other.

Conjunctions very often unite sentences, when they appear to unite only words ; as in the following instances : " Duty *and* interest forbid vicious indulgences ;" " Wisdom *or* folly governs us." Each of these forms of expression contains two sentences, namely : " Duty forbids vicious indulgences ; interest forbids vicious indulgences ;" " Wisdom governs us, or folly governs us."

Though the conjunction is commonly used to connect sentences together, yet, on some occasions, it merely connects words, not sentences ; as, " The king *and* queen are an amiable pair ; where the affirmation cannot refer to each ; it being absurd to say, that the king or the queen only is an amiable pair. So in the instances, " two *and*

two are four;" "the fifth and sixth volumes will complete the set of books." Prepositions also, as before observed, connect words; but they do it to show the relation which the connected words have to each other: conjunctions, when they unite words only, are designed to show the relations which those words, so united, have to other parts of the sentence.

As there are many conjunctions and connective phrases appropriated to the coupling of sentences, that are never employed in joining the members of a sentence; so there are several conjunctions appropriated to the latter use, which are never employed in the former; and some that are equally adapted to both those purposes; as, again, *further, besides, &c.* of the first kind; *than, lest, unless, that, so that, &c.* of the second; and *but, and, for, therefore, &c.* of the last.

We shall close this chapter with a few observations on the peculiar use and advantage of the conjunctions; a subject which will, doubtless, give pleasure to the ingenious student, and expand his views of the importance of his grammatical studies.

"Relatives are not so useful in language, as conjunctions. The former make speech more concise; the latter make it more explicit. Relatives comprehend the meaning of a pronoun and conjunction copulative: conjunctions, while they couple sentences, may also express opposition, inference, and many other relations and dependences.

Till men began to think in a train, and to carry their reasonings to a considerable length, it is not probable that they would make much use of conjunctions, or of any other connectives. Ignorant people, and children, generally speak in short and separate sentences. The same thing is true of barbarous nations: and hence uncultivated languages are not well supplied with connecting particles. The Greeks were the greatest reasoners that ever appeared

in the
more

Con
writing
require
of the
too, it
of viol
than i
aphori
nectiv
detach
pear v
told, w
copula
cal par
events

princip
mury
tion.

consec
plicate
tures o
either
pleas
occasi
philoso
and sc
pensab

INT
of a se
speake
fear fo

in the world; and their language, accordingly, should be more than any other in connectives.

Conjunctions are not equally necessary in all sorts of writing. In poetry, where great conciseness of phrase is required, and every appearance of formality avoided, many of them would have a bad effect. In passionately language too, it may be proper to omit them: because it is the nature of violent passion, to speak rather in disjointed sentences, than in the way of inference and argument. Books of aphorisms, like the Proverbs of Solomon, have few connectives; because they instruct, not by reasoning, but in detached observations. And narrative will sometimes appear very graceful, when the circumstances are plainly told, with scarcely any other conjunction than the simple copulative and: which is frequently the case in the historical parts of Scripture. When narration is full of images or events, the omission of connectives may, by crowding the principal words upon one another, give a sort of picture of hurry and tumult, and so heighten the vivacity of description. But when facts are to be traced down through their consequences, or upwards to their causes; when the complicated designs of mankind are to be laid open, or conjectures offered concerning them; when the historian argues either for the elucidation of truth, or in order to state the pleas and principles of contending parties; there will be occasion for every species of connective, as much as in philosophy itself. In fact, it is in argument, investigation, and science, that this part of speech is peculiarly and indispensably necessary."

CHAPTER X.

Of Interjections.

INTERJECTIONS are words thrown in between the parts of a sentence, to express the passions or emotions of the speaker: as, "Oh! I have alienated my friend; alas! I fear for life:" "O virtue! how amiable thou art!"

The English interjections, as well as those of other languages, are comprised within a small compass. They are of different sorts, according to the different passions which they serve to express. Those which intimate earnestness or grief, are, *O! ah! ah! alas!* Such as are expressive of contempt, are *pooh! tush!* of wonder, *heigh! really!* strength, of calling, *hah! ho! who!* of aversion or disgust, *feh!* for *mercy's sake* a call of the attention, *lo! behold! hark!* of requesting silence, *hush! hush!* of salutation, *welcome! hail! all-hail!* Besides these, several others, frequent in the mouths of the multitude, might be enumerated; but, in a grammar of a cultivated tongue, it is unnecessary to expatiate on such expressions of passion, as are scarcely worthy of being ranked among the branches of artificial language.—See the *Octavo Grammar*.

CHAPTER XI.

Of Derivation.

Section 1. *Of the various ways in which words are derived from one another.*

HAVING treated of the different sorts of words, and their various modifications, which is the first part of Etymology, it is now proper to explain the methods by which one word is derived from another.

Words are derived from one another in various ways; viz.

1. Substantives are derived from verbs.
2. Verbs are derived from substantives, adjectives, and sometimes from adverbs.

3. Adjectives are derived from substantives.

4. Substantives are derived from adjectives.

5. Adverbs are derived from adjectives.

1. Substantives are derived from verbs: as, from "to love," comes "lover;" from "to visit, visiter;" from "to survive, survivor;" &c.

In the following instances, and in many others, it is difficult to determine whether the verb was deduced

from the
love; hat
walk; rid

2. Ver
sometime
comes "
and from
they are f
consonant
ding on;
ectives: s

3. Adje
owing ma
rom subst
wealth, we

Adjective
made, a

om "Oak
Adjective

antives, b

l; fruit, f

Adjective

tion, are c

om "Ligh
me," &c.

Adjective

adding le

reless; jo

Adjectives

es, by add

court, c

Some adje

m substan

p, when

ening the

at white.

from the noun, or the noun from the verb, viz. "Love, to love; hate, to hate; fear, to fear; sleep, to sleep; walk, to walk; ride, to ride; act, to act," &c.

2. Verbs are derived from substantives, adjectives, and sometimes from adverbs: as, from the substantive *salt*, comes "to salt;" from the adjective *warm*, "to warm;" and from the adverb *forward*, "to forward." Sometimes they are formed by lengthening the vowel, or softening the consonant; as, from, "grass, to graze;" sometimes by adding *en*; as, from "length, to lengthen;" especially to adjectives: as, from "short, to shorten; bright, to brighten."

3. Adjectives are derived from substantives, in the following manner: Adjectives denoting plenty are derived from substantives by adding *y*: as, from "Health, healthy; wealth, wealthy; might, mighty," &c.

Adjectives denoting the matter out of which any thing made, are derived from substantives by adding *en*; as, from "Oak, oaken; wood, wooden; wool, woollen," &c.

Adjectives denoting abundance are derived from substantives, by adding *ful*: as, from "Joy, joyful; sin, sinful; fruit, fruitful," &c.

Adjectives denoting plenty, but with some kind of diminution, are derived from substantives, by adding *some*: as, from "Light, lightsome; trouble, troublesome; toll, tollsome," &c.

Adjectives denoting want are derived from substantives, by adding *less*: as, from "Worth, worthless;" from "care, careless; joy, joyless," &c.

Adjectives denoting likeness are derived from substantives, by adding *ly*: as, from "Man, manly; earth, earthly; court, courtly," &c.

Some adjectives are derived from other adjectives, or from substantives, by adding *ish* to them; which termination, when added to adjectives, imports diminution, or lessening the quality: as, "White, whitish;" i. e. somewhat white. When added to substantives, it signifies simi-

other lan-
They are
one which
earnestness
pressive of
really!
br disgust,
old! hark!
welcome!
requent in
ed; but, in
ary to ex-
e scarcely
ificial lan-

ds are de-
, and their
Etymology,
n one word
ways; viz.
tives, and

from "to
from "to
here, it is
deduced

itude or tendency to a character; as, "Child, childish; thief, thievish."

Some adjectives are formed from substantives or verbs, by adding the termination *able*; and those adjectives signify capacity: as, "Answer, answerable; to change, changeable."

4. Substantives are derived from adjectives, sometimes by adding the termination *ness*: as, "White, whiteness; swift, swiftness;" sometimes by adding *th* or *ty*, and making a small change in some of the letters: as, "Long, length; high, height."

5. Adverbs of quality are derived from adjectives, by adding *ly*, or changing *th* into *ly*; and denote the same quality as the adjectives from which they are derived: as, from "base," comes "basely;" from "slow, slowly;" from "able, ably."

There are so many other ways of deriving words from one another, that it would be extremely difficult, and nearly impossible, to enumerate them. The primitive words of any language are very few; the derivatives form much the greater number. A few more instances only can be given here.

Some substantives are derived from other substantives, by adding the terminations *hood* or *head*, *ship*, *ery*, *rick*, *dom*, *ian*, *ment*, and *age*.

Substantives ending in *hood* or *head*, are such as signify character or qualities; as, "Manhood, knighthood, falsehood," &c.

Substantives ending in *ship*, are those that signify office, employment, state, or condition: as, "Lordship, stewardship, partnership," &c. Some substantives in *ship*, are derived from adjectives: as, "Hard, hardship," &c.

Substantives which end in *ery*, signify action or habit: as, "Slavery, foolery, prudery," &c. Some substantives of this sort come from adjectives; as, "Brave, bravery," &c.

Substantives ending in *rick*, *rick*, and *dom*, denote do-

minic
rick, l
Sub
fession
ment
mostly
usage
Son
or adj
drunk
Son
these
minati
lambk
cock,
Tha
words
guages
suppos
Englis
tion or
it. Th
Purley
and me
preposi
It is
marian
tions, a
other p
from ob
in kind
therefor
system
admitted
have be
have ac

minion, jurisdiction, or condition: as, "Bailliwick, bishoprick, kingdom, dukedom, freedom," &c.

Substantives which end in *ian*, are those that signify profession; as, "Physician, musician," &c. Those that end in *ment* and *age*, come generally from the French, and commonly signify the act or habit; as, "Commandment, usage."

Some substantives ending in *ard*, are derived from verbs or adjectives, and denote character or habit: as, "Drunk, drunkard; dote, dotard."

Some substantives have the form of diminutives; but these are not many. They are formed by adding the terminations, *kin, ling, ing, ock, el*, and the like: as, "Lamb, lambkin; goose, gosling; duck, duckling; hill, hillock; cock, cockerel," &c.

That part of derivation which consists in tracing English words to the Saxon, Greek, Latin, French, and other languages, must be omitted, as the English scholar is not supposed to be acquainted with these languages. The best English dictionaries will, however, furnish some information on this head, to those who are desirous of obtaining it. The learned Horne Tooke, in his "Diversions of Purley," has given an ingenious account of the derivation and meaning of many of the adverbs, conjunctions, and prepositions.

It is highly probable that the system of this acute grammarian, is founded in truth; and that adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, are corruptions or abbreviations of other parts of speech. But as many of them are derived from obsolete words in our own language, or from words in kindred languages, the radical meaning of which is, therefore, either obscure, or generally unknown; as the system of this very able etymologist is not universally admitted; and as, by long prescription, whatever may have been their origin, the words in question appear to have acquired a title to the rank of distinct species; it

seem proper to consider them, as such, in an elementary treatise of grammar: especially as this plan coincides with that, by which other languages must be taught; and will render the study of them less intricate. It is of small moment, by what names and classification we distinguish these words, provided their meaning and use are well understood. A philosophical consideration of the subject, may, with great propriety, be entered upon by the grammatical student, when his knowledge and judgment become more improved.

SECTION 2. *A sketch of the steps, by which the English Language has risen to its present state of refinement.*

BEFORE we conclude the subject of derivation; it will probably be gratifying to the curious scholar, to be informed of some particulars respecting the origin of the English language; and the various nations to which it is indebted for the copiousness, elegance, and refinement which it has now attained.

"When the ancient Britons were so harassed and oppressed by the invasions of their northern neighbours, the Scots and Picts, that their situation was truly miserable, they sent an embassy (about the middle of the fifth century) to the Saxons, a warlike people inhabiting the north of Germany, with solicitations for speedy relief. The Saxons accordingly came over to Britain, and were successful in repelling the incursions of the Scots and Picts; but seeing the weak and defenceless state of the Britons, they resolved to take advantage of it; and at length established themselves in the greater part of South Britain, after having dispossessed the original inhabitants.

"From these barbarians, who founded several petty kingdoms in this island, and introduced their own laws, language, and manners, is derived the groundwork of the English language; which, even in its present state of cultivation, and notwithstanding the successive augmentations

and
cha
orig
"
the
the
infer
page
ral,
to a
ning
tam o
"T
cupie
ceedin
chang
by the
not be
Danish
source
"T
were.
their l
This p
his ow
his nev
as the
ty fore
words
guage:
the sam
"Fro
continu
till it ac
as to re
ceiv.

and improvements, which it has received through various channels, displays very conspicuous traces of its Saxon original.

"The Saxons did not long remain in quiet possession of the kingdom: for before the middle of the ninth century, the Danes, a hardy and adventurous nation, who had long infested the northern seas with their piracies, began to ravage the English coasts. Their first attempts were, in general, attended with such success, that they were encouraged to a renewal of their ravages: till, at length, in the beginning of the eleventh century, they made themselves masters of the greater part of England.

"Though the period, during which these invaders occupied the English throne, was very short, not greatly exceeding half a century, it is highly probable that some change was introduced by them into the language spoken by those, whom they had subdued: but this change cannot be supposed to have been very considerable, as the Danish and Saxon languages arose from one common source, the Gothic being the parent of both.

"The next conquerors of this kingdom, after the Danes, were the Normans, who, in the year 1066, introduced their leader William to the possession of the English throne. This prince, soon after his accession, endeavoured to bring his own language (the Norman-French) into use among his new subjects; but his efforts were not very successful, as the Saxons entertained a great antipathy to these haughty foreigners. In process of time, however, many Norman words and phrases were incorporated into the Saxon language: but its general form and construction still remained the same.

"From the Conquest to the Reformation, the language continued to receive occasional accessions of foreign words, till it acquired such a degree of copiousness and strength, as to render it susceptible of that polish, which it has received from writers of taste and genius. In the last and pre-

cent centuries. During this period, the learned have enriched it with many significant expressions, drawn from the treasures of Greek and Roman literature; the ingenious and the fashionable have imported occasional supplies of French, Spanish, Italian, and German words, gleaned during their foreign excursions; and the connexions which we maintain, through the medium of government and commerce, with many remote nations, have made some additions to our native vocabulary.

"In this manner did the ancient language of the Anglo-Saxons proceed, through the various stages of innovation, and the several gradations of refinement, to the formation of the present English tongue."

See the Twelfth chapter of the OCTAVO Grammar.

T
the
A
plete
Se
A
finite
A
sente
art in
As
comp
likowi
sente
memb
conne
oth hi
doth
tance
is subd
ly call
Ther
or expl
or com
An e
not to
direct
if the
-1774
(P
will be

PART III.

SYNTAX.

THE third part of grammar is SYNTAX, which treats of the agreement and construction of words in a sentence.

A sentence is an assemblage of words, forming a complete sense.

Sentences are of two kinds; simple and compound.

A simple sentence has in it but one subject, and one finite verb: as, "Life is short."

A compound sentence consists of two or more simple sentences connected together: as, "Life is short, and art is long." "Idleness produces want, vice, and misery."

As sentences themselves are divided into simple and compound, so the members of sentences may be divided likewise into simple and compound members: for whole sentences, whether simple or compounded, may become members of other sentences, by means of some additional connexion; as in the following example: "The ox knoweth his owner, and the ass his master's crib; but Israel doth not know, my people do not consider." This sentence consists of two compounded members, each of which is subdivided into two simple members, which are properly called clauses.

There are three sorts of simple sentences; the *declarative*, or explaining; the *interrogative*, or asking; the *imperative*, or commanding.

An *explicative* sentence is when a thing is said to be, or not to be, to do or not to do, to suffer or not to suffer, in a direct manner: as, "I am; thou writest; Thomas is loved."

If the sentence be negative, the adverb *not* is placed after the verb.

(Finite verbs are those to which numbers and persons are annexed, and which must have no respect to number or person.)

the auxiliary, or after the verb itself when it has no auxiliary: as, "I did not touch him;" or, "I touched him not."

In an interrogative sentence, or when a question is asked, the nominative case follows the principal verb or the auxiliary: as, "Was it he?" "Did Alexander conquer the Persians?"

In an imperative sentence, when a thing is commanded to be, to do, to suffer, or not, the nominative case likewise follows the verb or the auxiliary: as, "Go, thou traitor!" "Do thou go." "Haste ye away." unless the verb *let* be used, as, "Let us be gone."

A phrase is two or more words rightly put together, making sometimes part of a sentence, and sometimes a whole sentence.

The principal parts of a simple sentence are, the subject, the attribute, and the object.

The subject is the thing chiefly spoken of; the attribute is the thing or action affirmed or denied of it; and the object is the thing affected by such action.

The nominative denotes the subject, and usually goes before the verb or attribute, and the word or phrase, denoting the object, follows the verb, as, "A wise man governs his passions." Here, *a wise man* is the subject; *governs*, the attribute, or thing affirmed; and *his passions*, the object.

Syntax principally consists of two parts, *Concord* and *Goverment*.

Concord is the agreement which one word has with another, in gender, number, case, or person.

Goverment is that power which one part of speech has over another, in directing its mood, tense, or case.

To produce the agreement and right disposition of words in a sentence, the following rules and observations should be carefully studied.

RULE I.

A Verb must agree with its nominative case, in number and person: as, "I learn;" "Thou art improved."

"The birds sing."

The following are a few instances of the violation of this rule: "What signifies good opinions, when our practice is bad?" "What signify?" "There's two or three of us, who have seen the work?" "There are." "We may suppose there was more impostors than one." "There were more." "I have considered what have been said on both sides in this controversy?" "What has been said." "If thou would be healthy, live temperately." "If thou wouldst." "Thou sees how little has been done, thou sees?" "Though thou cannot do much for the cause, thou mayest do something." "Canst not, mayst, and shouldst." "Full many a flower are born to blush unseen." "is horn." "A conformity of inclinations and qualities prepare us for friendship." "prepares us." "A variety of blessings have been conferred upon us." "has been." "In piety and virtue consist the happiness of man." "consists." "To these precepts are subjoined a copious selection of maxims and maxims." "are subjoined." "The infinitive form, or part of a sentence, is sometimes put as the nominative case to the verb: as "To see the sun is pleasant;" "To be good is to be happy;" "A desire to excel others in learning and virtue is commendable;" "That warm climates should accelerate the growth of the human body, and shorten its duration, is very reasonable to believe;" "To be temperate in eating and drinking, to be moderate in the open air, and to preserve the mind free from tumultuous emotions, are the best preservatives of health."

The chief practical notes under each Rule, are regularly printed in italics.

3. Every verb, except the infinitive mood, or the participle, ought to have a nominative case, either expressed or implied: "Arise, Awake; rise," that is, "Awake ye; arise ye."

We shall here add some examples of impropriety in the use of the verb without its nominative case. "As it hath pleased him of his goodness to give you safe deliverance, and hath preserved you in the great danger," &c. The verb "*hath preserved*," has here no nominative case, for it cannot be properly supplied by the preceding word, "*hath*," which is in the objective case. It ought to be, "and as he hath preserved you;" or rather, "and to preserve you." "If the calm in which he was born, and lasted so long, had continued;" and which lasted, &c. "These we have extracted from an historian of undoubted credit, and are the same that were practised," &c.; "and they are the same." "A man whose inclination led him to be corrupt, and had great abilities to manage the business;" and who had, &c. "A cloud gathering in the north, which we have helped to raise, and may quickly break in a storm upon our heads;" and which may quickly." &c.

4. Every nominative case, except the case absolute, and when an address is made to a person, should belong to some verb, either expressed or implied: as, "Who wrote this book?" "James;" that is, "James wrote it." "To whom thus Adam?" that is, "spoke."

One or two instances of the improper use of the nominative case, without any verb, expressed or implied, to answer it, may be sufficient to illustrate the defects of the preceding observation.

"Which rule, if it had been observed, at neighbouring princes would have wanted a command of that nature which hath been offered up to him." The present is here the nominative case to the verb "observed," and the past is the nominative case to the verb "offered."

THE END OF THE FIRST VOLUME OF THE ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

style
verb
proper
had
variety
himself
within
man
st
express
great

2.
which
it may
be had
also to
was loc
state o
wages

3. W
verb, b
rest of
"Sham
discuss

As in
always
in makin
and I ha
any bod
much g
"he only

The
verb; b
ple ten
disciple,
let

verb following it. This sort of expression, though improper, is very common. It ought to be, "*If this rule had been observed,*" &c. "*Man,* though he has great variety of thoughts, and such from which others as well as himself might receive profit and delight, yet they are all within his own breast." In this sentence, the nominative *man* stands alone and unconnected with any verb, either expressed or implied. It should be, "*Though man has great variety,*" &c.

3. When a verb comes between two nouns, either of which may be understood as the subject of the affirmation, it may agree with either of them: but some regard must be had to that which is more naturally the subject of it, as also to that which stands next to the verb: as, "*His meat was locusts and wild honey;*" "*A great cause of the low state of industry were the restraints put upon it;*" "*The wages of sin is death.*"

4. When the nominative case has no personal tense of verb, but is put before a participle, independently on the rest of the sentence, it is called the case absolute: as, "*Shame being lost, all virtue is lost;*" "*That having been discussed long ago, there is no occasion to resume it.*"

As in the use of the case absolute, the case is, in English, always the nominative, the following example is erroneous, in making it the objective. "*Solomon was of this mind; and I have no doubt he made as wise and true proverbs, as any body has done since; him only excepted,* who was a much greater and wiser man than Solomon." It should be, "*he only excepted.*"

The nominative case is commonly placed before the verb; but sometimes it is put after the verb, if it is a simple tense; and between the auxiliary, and the verb or participle, if a compound tense: as,

1st, When a question is asked, a comma gives, or

which expressed: as, "Couldst thou in me?" "Read thou;" "Mayst thou be happy?" "Long live the King!"

2d, When a supposition is made without the conjunction *if*: as, "Were it not for this;" "Had I been there."

3d, When a verb neuter is used: as, "On a sudden appeared the king."

4th, When the verb is preceded by the adverbs, *here, there, then, thence, thence, thus, &c.*: as, "Here am I;" "There was he slain;" "Then cometh the end;" "Thence ariseth his grief;" "Hence proceeds his anger;" "Thus was the affair settled."

5th, When a sentence depends on *neither or nor*, so as to be coupled with another sentence: as, "Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die."

Some grammarians assert, that the phrases, *as follows*, *as appears*, form what are called impersonal verbs: and should, therefore, be confined to the singular number: as, "The arguments advanced were nearly *as follows*;" "The positions were *as appears* incontrovertible:" that is, "as it follows," "as it appears." If we give (say they) the sentence a different turn, and instead of *as*, say *such as*, the verb is no longer termed impersonal; but properly agrees with its nominative, in the plural number: as, "The arguments advanced were nearly *such as follow*;" "The positions were *such as appear* incontrovertible."

They who doubt the accuracy of Horne Tooke's statement, "That *as*, however and whenever used in English means the same as *that*, or *which*," and who are not satisfied whether the verbs, in the sentences first mentioned,

† These grammarians are supported by general usage, and by the authority of a eminent critic on language and composition. "When a verb is used impersonally," says Dr. Campbell in his *Philosophy of Rhetoric*, "it ought undoubtedly to be in the singular number, whether the neuter pronoun is expressed or understood. For this reason, analogy and usage favour this mode of expression: 'The conditions of the agreement were *as follows*;' and not *as follow*. A few late writers have inconsiderately adopted this last form, through a mistake of the construction. For the same reason, we ought to say, 'I shall consider his censures *as far* only *as concern* my friend's conduct,' and not 'so far as concern.'

should be in the form of sentences, arguments, &c. "The following are advanced;" "The following are which follow are incontrovertible;" "The following are apparent;" "The following are." See

Two of the combined together, or understood, agreeing with the and Plato's philosophers, the daily address, lower."

This rule annexed. The following, which are, "All the good and the evil, and the perishing, the end of the world, of our serious thought, the sense of the world," and

"Read
"King"
conjunction
ere."

sudden ap

verbs, here

ere am I;

"Thence

"Thun

r nor, so u

shall not c

as follow

verbs; and

number; as

ms;" "The

hat is, "as

ey) the sen

such as, the

perly agree

"The argu

"The poi

ooke's state

d in English

who are not

t mentioned

he activity of w

ed impersonally

tedly to be in the

erstood. For th

conditions of the

iters have inco

im. For the sam

ly as concerns th

Rule 2.)

SYNTAX.

143

should be in the singular or the plural number, may vary the form of expression. Thus, the sense of the preceding sentences, may be conveyed in the following terms. "The arguments advanced were nearly of the following nature;" "The following are nearly the arguments which were advanced;" "The arguments advanced were nearly those which follow;" "It appears that the positions were incontrovertible;" "That the positions were incontrovertible is apparent;" "The positions were apparently incontrovertible." See the Octavo Grammar; the note under Rule I.

RULE II.

Two or more nouns, &c. in the singular number, joined together by a copulative conjunction, expressed or understood, must have verbs, nouns, and pronouns, agreeing with them in the plural number: as, "Socrates and Plato were wise; they were the most eminent philosophers of Greece;" "The sun that rolls over our heads, the food that we receive, the rest that we enjoy, daily admonish us of a superior and superintending power."

This rule is often violated; some instances of which are annexed. "And so was also James and John the sons of Zebedee, who were partners with Simon;" "and so were so." "All joy, tranquillity, and peace, even for ever and ever, doth dwell;" "dwell for ever." "By whose power good and evil is distributed;" "are distributed." "Their love, and their hatred, and their envy, is now perished;" "are perished." "The thoughtless and intemperate enjoyment of pleasure, the criminal abuse of it, and the forgetfulness of our being accountable creatures, obliterates every serious thought of the proper business of life, and conceals the sense of religion and of God;" "It ought to be, "obliterate," and "efface."

† See the exceptions to this rule, at p. 48 of the Key; 12th edition.

1. When the nouns are nearly related, or scarcely distinguishable in sense, and sometimes even when they are very different, some authors have thought it allowable to put the verb, nouns, and pronouns, in the singular number: as, "Tranquillity and peace dwells there;" "Ignorance and negligence has produced the effect;" "The discomfiture and slaughter was very great." But it is evidently contrary to the first principles of grammar, to consider two distinct ideas as one, however nice may be their shade of difference: and if there be no difference, one of them must be superfluous, and ought to be rejected.

To support the above construction, it is said, that the verb may be understood as applied to each of the preceding terms; as in the following example. "Sand, and salt, and a mass of iron, is easier to bear than a man without understanding." But besides the confusion, and the latitude of application, which such a construction would introduce, it appears to be more proper and analogical, in cases where the verb is intended to be applied to any one of the terms, to make use of the disjunctive conjunction, which grammatically refers the verb to one or other of the preceding terms in a separate view. To preserve the distinctive uses of the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions, would render the rules precise, consistent, and intelligible. Dr. Blair very justly observes, that "two or more substantives, joined by a copulative, must always require the verb or pronoun to which they refer, to be placed in the plural number."

2. In many complex sentences, it is difficult for learners to determine, whether one or more of the clauses are to be considered as the nominative clause, and consequently, whether the verb should be in the singular or the plural number. We shall, therefore, set forth a number of varied examples of this nature, which may serve as some government to the scholar, with respect to sentences of a similar construction. "Prosperity, with humility, renders its pos-

was d
has a
conju
canno
the p
guard
influ
wido
nay, c
sure."
consid
govern
of nat

In a
we see
and w
long c
cumst
"The
lent fr
B and
itself t
and a v
howev
do not
constru
king,"
tives to
word a
govern
into La
that the
cannot
not be
native a

ness truly amiable." "The ship, with all her furniture, was destroyed." "Not only his estate, his reputation too has suffered by his misconduct." "The general also, in conjunction with the officers, has applied for redress." "He cannot be justified; for it is true, that the prince, as well as the people, was blameworthy." "The king, with his life-guard, has just passed thro' the village." "In the mutual influence of body and soul, there is a wisdom, a wonderful wisdom, which we cannot fathom." "Virtue, honour, nay, even self-interest, conspire to recommend the measure." "Patriotism, morality, every public and private consideration, demand our submission to just and lawful government." "Nothing *delights* me so much as the works of nature."

In support of such forms of expression as the following, we see the authority of Hume, Priestley, and other writers; and we annex them for the reader's consideration. "A long course of time, with a variety of accidents and circumstances, are requisite to produce those revolutions." "The king, with the lords and commons, *form* an excellent frame of government." "The side A, with the sides B and C, *compose* the triangle." "The fire communicated itself to the bed, which, with the furniture of the room, and a valuable library, *were* all entirely consumed." It is, however, proper to observe, that these modes of expression do not appear to be warranted by the just principles of construction. The words, "A long course of time," "The king," "The side A," and "which," are the true nominatives to the respective verbs. In the last example, the word *all* should be expunged. As the preposition *with* governs the *objective* case in English; and, if translated into Latin, would govern the *ablativæ* case, it is manifest, that the clauses following *with*, in the preceding sentences, cannot form any part of the *nominative* case. They cannot be at the same time in the objective and the nominative cases. The following sentence appears to be unex-

separable; and may serve to explain the others: "The lords and commons are essential branches of the British constitution: the king, with them, forms an excellent frame of government."

3. If the singular nouns and pronouns, which are joined together by a copulative conjunction, be of several persons, in making the plural pronoun agree with them in person, the second person takes place of the third, and the first of both: as, "James, and thou, and I, are attached to our country." "Thou and he shared it between you."

RULE III.

The conjunction disjunctive has an effect contrary to that of the conjunction copulative; for as the verb, noun, or pronoun, is referred to the preceding terms taken separately, it must be in the singular number: as, "Ignorance, or negligence has caused this mistake;" "John, James, or Joseph, intends to accompany me;" "There is, in many minds, neither knowledge nor understanding."

The following sentences are variations from this rule: "A man may see a metaphor or an allegory in a picture, as well as read them in a description;" "read it." "Neither character nor dialogue were yet understood;" "was yet." "It must indeed be confessed, that a lampoon or a satire do not carry in them robbery or murder;" "does not carry in it." "Death, or some worse misfortune, soon divide them." It ought to be "divides."

1. When singular pronouns, or a noun and pronoun, of different persons, are disjunctively connected, the verb must agree with that person which is placed nearest to it. as, "I or thou art to blame;" "Thou or I am in fault;" "I, or thou, or he, is the author of it;" "George or I am

though the construction will not admit of a plural verb, the sentence would certainly stand better thus: "The king, the lords, and the commons, form an excellent constitution."

Rule
the p
blame

2.

or pro
the p
riches
by it
it can
verb.

A

have
single
the im
of idea
ment
people
"The
good."

We o
suggest
exhibits
In the
letter, it
say, "I
makes u
"The p
use," &c
number.
following
plural; b
sufficient
were not
were of
much in

the person." But it would be better to say: "Either I am to blame, or thou art," &c.

2. When a disjunctive occurs between a singular noun, or pronoun, and a plural one, the verb is made to agree with the plural noun and pronoun: as, "Neither poverty nor riches *were* injurious to him;" "I or they *were* offended by it." But in this case, the plural noun or pronoun, when it can conveniently be done, should be placed next to the verb.

RULE IV.

A noun of multitude, or signifying many, may have a verb or pronoun agreeing with it, either of the singular or plural number; yet not without regard to the import of the word, as conveying unity or plurality of idea: as, "The meeting *was* large;" "The parliament *is* dissolved;" "The nation *is* powerful;" "My people *do* not consider: *they* have not known me;" "The multitude *eagerly pursue* pleasure, as *their* chief good;" "The council *were* divided in *their* sentiments."

We ought to consider whether the term will immediately suggest the idea of the number it represents, or whether it exhibits to the mind the idea of the whole as one thing. In the former case, the verb ought to be plural; in the latter, it ought to be singular. Thus, it seems improper to say, "The peasantry *are* barefoot, and the middle sort *makes* use of wooden shoes." It would be better to say, "The peasantry *go* barefoot, and the middle sort *make* use," &c. because the idea in both these cases, is that of a number. On the contrary, there is a harshness in the following sentences, in which nouns of number have verbs plural; because the ideas they represent seem not to be sufficiently divided in the mind. "The court of Rome *were* not without solicitude." "The house of commons *were* of small weight." "The house of lords *were* so much influenced by these reasons." "Stephen's party

were entirely broken up by the captivity of their leader." "An army of twenty-four thousand were assembled." "What reason ~~was~~ the church of Rome for proceeding in this manner?" "There is indeed no constitution so tame and careless of their own defence." "All the virtues of mankind are to be counted upon a few fingers, but his follies and vices are innumerable." Is not *marked* in this place a noun of multitude, and such as requires the pronoun referring to it to be in the plural number, *their*?

RULE V.

Pronouns must always agree with their antecedents, and the nouns for which they stand, in gender and number: as, "This is the friend *whom* I love;" "That is the vice *which* I hate;" "The king and the queen had put on *their* robes;" "The moon appears, and *she* shines, but the light is not *her* own."

The relative is of the same person as the antecedent, and the verb agrees with it accordingly: as, "Thou *who* lovest wisdom;" "I *who* speak from experience."

Of this rule there are many violations to be met with; a few of which may be sufficient to put the learner on his guard. "Each of the sexes should keep within its particular bounds, and content *themselves* with the advantages of *their* particular districts:" better thus: "The sexes should keep within *their* particular bounds," &c. "Can any one, on their entrance into the world, be fully secure that they shall not be deceived?" "on *his* entrance," and "that *he* shall." "One should not think too favourably of ourselves;" "of *one's self*." "He had one acquaintance which poisoned his principles;" "*who* poisoned."

Every relative must have an antecedent to which it refers, either expressed or implied: as, "Who is fatal to others is so to himself;" that is, "the man *who* is fatal to others."

Wh
object
also
whom
that y
Wh
to be
called
"exce

1. P

the no
as the
proper
queen;
they da
bees."
least oc
principa
the follo
of going
doing m

2. Th

well as t
degree, a
rally need
king of S
world eve
figate tha
man that
cannot co
to persons
that has a
Secondly,
dent; "T
tion were
these exam

Who, which, what, and the relative *that*, though in the objective case, are always placed before the verb; as are also their compounds, *whoever, whosoever, &c.*; as, "He whom ye seek;" "This is what, or the thing which, or that you want;" "Whomsoever you please to appoint."

What is sometimes applied, in a manner which appears to be exceptionable: as, "All fevers, except what are called nervous," &c. It would at least be better to say, "except those which are called nervous."

1. Personal pronouns being used to supply the place of the noun, are not employed in the same part of a sentence as the noun which they represent; for it would be improper to say, "The king *he* is just;" "I saw *her* the queen;" "The men *they* were there;" "Many words *they* darken speech;" "My banks *they* are furnished with bees." These personals are superfluous, as there is not the least occasion for a substitution in the same part where the principal word is present. Thus nominative case *they*, in the following sentence, is also superfluous; "Who, instead of going about doing good, *they* are perpetually intent upon doing mischief."

2. The pronoun *that* is frequently applied to persons as well as to things; but after an adjective in the superlative degree, and after the pronominal adjective *same*, it is generally used in preference to *who* or *which*: as, "Charles XII. king of Sweden, was one of the greatest madmen *that* the world ever saw;" "Catiline's followers were the most profligate *that* could be found in any city." "He is the same man *that* we saw before." There are cases wherein we cannot conveniently dispense with this relative as applied to persons: as first, after *who* the interrogative; "Who *that* has any sense of religion, would have argued thus?" Secondly, when persons make but a part of the antecedent; "The woman, and the estate, *that* became his portion were too much for his moderation." In neither of these examples could any other relative have been used.

4. The pronouns *whichever*, *whosoever*, and the like, are elegantly divided by the interposition of the corresponding substantives: thus, "On *whichever* side the king cast his eyes;" would have sounded better, if written, "On *which* side *soever*," &c.

5. Many persons are apt, in conversation, to put the objective case of the personal pronouns, in the place of *these* and *those*: as, "Give me *them* books;" instead of "*those* books." We may sometimes find this fault even in writing: as, "Observe *them* three there." We also frequently meet with *those* instead of *they*, at the beginning of a sentence, and where there is no particular reference to an antecedent; as, "*Those* that sow in tears, sometimes reap in joy." *They* that, or *they* who sow in tears.

"It is not, however, always easy to say, whether a personal pronoun or a demonstrative is preferable, in certain constructions. "We are not unacquainted with the calumny of *them* [or *those*] who openly make use of the warmest professions."

6. In some dialects, the word *what* is improperly used for *that*, and sometimes we find it in this sense in writing: "They will never believe but *what* I have been entirely to blame." "I am not satisfied but *what*," &c. instead of "*but that*." The word *somewhat*, in the following sentence, seems to be used improperly. "These punishments seem to have been exercised in somewhat an arbitrary manner." Sometimes we read, "In somewhat of." The meaning is, "in a manner which is in some respects arbitrary."

7. The pronoun relative *who* is so much appropriated to persons, that there is generally harshness in the application of it, except to the proper names of persons, or the general terms *man*, *woman*, &c. A term which only implies the idea of persons, and expresses them by some circumstance or epithet, will hardly authorize the use of it: as, "That faction in England *who* most powerfully opposed his arbitrary pretensions." That faction *which*, would have

Rule
been
lowin
den."
"The
who,"

In
is prop
tial 'in
a term
many
compa
melanc
ance m

7. V
that te
therefo
this ear
more i
by that
water."

8. W
and it d
not to b
shine at
name fo
name w
whose be
not don
use it v
however
ing fast
producti
In one
with resp
tinguish

been better; and the same remark will serve for the following examples: "France, *who* was in alliance with Sweden." "The court, *who*," &c. "The cavalry *who*," &c. "The cities *who* aspired at liberty." "That party among us *who*," &c. "The family *whom* they consider as usurpers."

In some cases it may be doubtful, whether this pronoun is properly applied or not. "The number of substantial inhabitants with *whom* some cities abound." For when a term directly and necessarily implies persons, it may in many cases claim the personal relative. "None of the company *whom* he most affected, could cure him of the melancholy under which he laboured." The word *acquaintance* may have the same construction.

7. We hardly consider little children as persons, because that term gives us the idea of reason and reflection; and therefore the application of the personal relative *who*, in this case, seems to be harsh. "A child *who*," It is still more improperly applied to animals: "A lake frequented by that fowl *whom* nature has taught to dip the wing in water."

8. When the name of a person is used merely as a name, and it does not refer to the person, the pronoun *who* ought not to be applied. "It is no wonder if such a man did not shine at the court of queen Elizabeth, *who* was but another name for prudence and economy." Better thus; "whose name was but another word for prudence, &c." The word *whose* begins likewise to be restricted to persons; yet it is not done so generally, but that good writers, even in prose, use it when speaking of things. The construction is not, however, generally pleasing, as we may see in the following instances: "Pleasure, *whose* nature, &c." "Call every production, *whose* parts and *whose* nature," &c.

In one case, however, custom authorizes us to use *which* with respect to persons; and that is when we want to distinguish one person of two, or a particular person among a

number of others. We should then say, "*Which* of the two," or "*Which* of them, is he or she?"

9. As the pronoun relative has no distinction of number, we sometimes find an ambiguity in the use of it: as when we say, "The disciples of Christ, *whom* we imitate;" we may mean the imitation either of Christ, or of his disciples. The accuracy and clearness of the sentence, depend very much upon the proper and accurate use of the relative, so that it may readily present its antecedent to the mind of the hearer or reader, without any obscurity or ambiguity.

10. *It is* and *it was*, are often, after the manner of the French, used in a plural construction, and by some of our best writers: as, "*It is* either a few great men who decide for the whole, or *it is* the rabble that follow a seditious ring-leader." "*It is* they that are the real authors, though the soldiers are the actors of the revolutions;" "*It was* the heretics that first began to rail," &c.; "*'Tis these* that early taint the female mind." This license in the construction of *it is*, (if it be proper to admit it at all,) has, however, been certainly abused in the following sentence, which is thereby made a very awkward one. "*It is* wonderful the very few accidents, which, in several years, happen from this practice."

11. The interjections *O*! *Oh*! and *Ah*! require the objective case of a pronoun in the first person after them: as, "*O me*! *Oh me*! *Ah me*!" But the nominative case in the second person: as, "*O thou* persecutor!" "*Oh ye* hypocrites!" "*O thou*, who dwellest," &c.

The neuter pronoun, by an idiom peculiar to the English language, is frequently joined in explanatory sentences, with a noun or pronoun of the masculine or feminine gender: as, "*It was* I;" "*It was* the man or woman that did it."

The neuter pronoun *it* is sometimes omitted and under-

Rule 8.
stood;
appear

The
press;

1st,
happen
me?"

2d, 7
"How

3d, 1
effect
cause:
is, it w

THE
no nor
"The

planted

When
the ver
own m

me, to
serve, i

In the
perform
the age

the prop
and in th

must be
offices.

When
tives, ea
to the fo

"True

stood; thus we say, "As appears, as follows," for "As it appears, as it follows," and "May be," for "It may be."

The neuter pronoun *it* is sometimes employed to express;

1st, The subject of any discourse or inquiry: as, "It happened on a summer's day;" "Who is it that calls on me?"

2d, The state or condition of any person or thing: as, "How is it with you?"

3d, The thing, whatever it be, that is the cause of any effect or event, or any person considered merely as a cause: as, "We heard her say it was not he;" "The truth is, it was I that helped her."

RULE VI.

THE relative is the nominative case to the verb, when no nominative comes between it and the verb: as, "The master *who* taught us;" "The trees *which* are planted."

When a nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative is governed by some word in its own member of the sentence: as, "He *who* preserves me, to *whom* I owe my being, *whose* I am, and *whom* I serve, is eternal."

In the several members of the last sentence, the relative performs a different office. In the first member, it marks the agent; in the second, it submits to the government of the preposition; in the third, it represents the possessor; and in the fourth, the object of an action: and therefore it must be in the three different cases, correspondent to those offices.

When both the antecedent and relative become nominatives, each to different verbs, the relative is the nominative to the former, and the antecedent to the latter verb: as, "True philosophy, *which* is the ornament of our nature,

exists more in the love of our duty, and the practice of virtue, than in great talents and extensive knowledge."

A few instances of erroneous construction, will illustrate both the branches of the sixth rule. The three following refer to the first part. "How can we avoid being grateful to those whom, by repeated kind offices, have proved themselves our real friends?" "These are the men whom, you might suppose, were the authors of the work;" "If you were here, you would find three or four, whom you would say passed their time agreeably," in all these places it should be *who* instead of *whom*. The two latter sentences contain a nominative between the relative and the verb; and, therefore, seem to contravene the rule: but the student will reflect, that it is not the nominative of the verb with which the relative is connected. The remaining examples refer to the second part of the rule. "Men of fine talents are not always the persons who we should esteem." "The persons who you dispute with, are precisely of your opinion." "Our tutors are our benefactors, who we owe obedience to, and who we ought to love." In these sentences, *whom* should be used instead of *who*.

1. When the relative pronoun is of the interrogative kind, the noun or pronoun containing the answer, must be in the same case as that which contains the question: as, "Whose books are these? They are John's." "Who gave them to him? We." "Of whom did you buy them? Of a bookseller; him who lives at the Bible and Crown." "Whom did you see there? Both him and the shopman." The learner will readily comprehend this rule, by supplying the words which are understood in the answers. Thus, to express the answers at large, we should say, "They are John's books." "We gave them to him." "We bought them of him who lives, &c." "We saw both him and the shopman."—As the relative pronoun, when used interrogatively, refers to the subsequent word or phrase containing

the answer
perly be

When
of differ
person
the man
common

The fo
presses t
perspicu
Perhaps
the relat
to the R
general v
who give
ders to d

When
to agree
agreement
in the fo
all things
xlv. 24,
person, in
lative in
he that m
the relativ
son: as,
forth the
spreadeth
confusion

the answer to the question, that word or phrase may properly be termed the *subsequent* to the interrogative.

RULE VII.

When the relative is preceded by two nominatives of different persons, the relative and verb may agree in person with either, according to the sense: as, "I am the man *who* command you;" or, "I am the man *who* commands you."

The form of the first of the two preceding sentences, expresses the meaning rather obscurely. It would be more perspicuous to say; "I, who command you, am the man." Perhaps the difference of meaning, produced by referring the relative to different antecedents, will be more evident to the learner, in the following sentences. "I am the general who gives the orders to-day;" "I am the general, who give the orders to-day;" that is, "I, who give the orders to-day, am the general."

When the relative and the verb have been determined to agree with either of the preceding nominatives, that agreement must be preserved throughout the sentence; as in the following instance: "I am the Lord that *maketh* all things; that *stretcheth* forth the heavens alone." *Isa. xlv. 24.* Thus far is consistent: The *Lord*, in the third person, is the antecedent, and the verb agrees with the relative in the third person: "I am the *Lord*, which *Lord*, or he that *maketh* all things." If I were made the antecedent, the relative and verb should agree with it in the first person: as, "I am the Lord, *that* *makes* all things, *that* *stretch* forth the heavens alone." But should it follow: "That *spreadeth* abroad the earth by myself;" there would arise a confusion of persons, and a manifest solecism.

RULE VIII.

Every adjective, and every adjective pronoun, belongs to a substantive, expressed or understood: as, "He is a good, as well as a wise man;" "Few are happy;" that is "persons;" "This is a pleasant walk;" that is, "This walk is," &c.

Adjective pronouns must agree, in number, with their substantives: as, "This book, these books; that sort, those sorts; another road, other roads"

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

A few instances of the breach of this rule are here exhibited. "I have not travelled this twenty years;" "these twenty;" "I am not recommending these kind of sufferings;" "this kind." "Those set of books was a valuable present;" "that set."

1. The word *means* in the singular number, and the phrases, "*By this means*," "*By that means*," are used by our best and most correct writers; namely, Bacon, Tillotson, Atterbury, Addison, Steele, Pope, &c.† They are, indeed, in so general and approved use, that it would appear awkward, if not affected, to apply the old singular form, and say, "*By this mean*;" by that *mean*;" it was by

"By this means, he had them the more atantage, being tired and harassed with a long march." Bacon.

"By this means one great restraint from doing evil, would be taken away."—"And this is an admirable means to improve men in virtue."—"By that means they have rendered their duty more difficult." Tillotson.

"It renders us careless of approving ourselves to God, and by that means secures the continuance of his goodness."—"A good character, when established should not be rested in as an end, but continued as a means of doing still further good." Atterbury.

"By this means they are happy in each other."—"By that means preserves his superiority." Addison.

"Your vanity by this means will want its food." Steele.

"By this means alone, their greatest obstacles will vanish." Pope.

"Which custom has proved the most effectual means to rule the nobles." Dean Swift.

oun, be-
ood : as,
Few are
nt walk ;"

with their
that sort,

here exhib-
re ; " these
of suffer-
a valuable

er, and the
are used by
con, Tillot-

They are,
at it would
old singular
it was by

and harvest
Bacon.

taken away."

"By that means

Tillotson.

her means were

been established

ing still further

Atterbury.

means preserved

Addison.

Steel.

Pope.

the nobles."

Dean Swift

a mean ;" although it is more agreeable to the general analogy of the language. "The word *means* (says Priestly) belongs to the class of words, which do not change their termination on account of number ; for it is used alike in both numbers."

The word *amends* is used in this manner, in the following sentences : "Though he did not succeed, he gained the approbation of his country ; and with this *amends* he was content." "Peace of mind is an honourable *amends* for the sacrifices of interest." "In return, he received the thanks of his employers, and the present of a large estate : these were ample *amends* for all his labours." "We have described the rewards of vice : the good man's *amends* are of a different nature."

It can scarcely be doubted, that the word *amends* (like the word *means*) had formerly its correspondent form in the singular number, as it is derived from the French *amende*, though now it is exclusively established in the plural form. If, therefore, it be alleged that *mean* should be applied in the singular, because it is derived from the French *moyen*, the same kind of argument may be advanced in favour of the singular *amends* ; and the general analogy of the language may also be pleaded in support of it.

Campbell, in his "Philosophy of Rhetoric," has the

"There is no *means* of escaping the persecution."—"Faith is not only a *means* of obeying, but a principal act of obedience." Dr. Young.

"He looked on money as a necessary *means* of maintaining and increasing power." Lord Lyttelton's Henry II.

"John was too much intimidated not to embrace every *means* afforded for his safety." Goldsmith.

"Let this *means* should fail."—"By *means* of ship-money, the late king," &c. — Hunt.

"The only *means* of securing a durable peace." Hunt.

"By this *means* there was nothing left in the Parliament of Ireland." Hunt.

"By this *means* many slaves were put out of the hands of their masters." Hunt.

"By this *means* they bear witness to each other." Dr. Robertson.

"By this *means* they bear witness to each other." Burke.

"By this *means* the wrath of man was made to turn against itself." Dr. Blair.

"A magazine, which has, by this *means*, contained, &c." — Blair, in general.

"We are their foot by *means* of their feet." Dr. Palsy.

following remark on the subject before us: "No persons of taste will, I presume, venture so far to violate the present usage, and consequently to shock the ears of the generality of readers, as to say, "By this mean, by that mean."

Lowth and Johnson seem to be against the use of *means* in the singular number. They do not, however, speak decisively on the point; but rather dubiously, and as if they knew that they were questioning eminent authorities, as well as general practice. That they were not decidedly against the application of this word to the singular number, appears from their own language: "Whole sentences, whether simple or compound, may become members of other sentences by *means* of some additional connexion."—*Dr. Lowth's Introduction to English Grammar.*

"There is no other method of teaching that of which any one is ignorant, but by *means* of something already known."—*Dr. Johnson. Idler.*

It is remarkable that our present version of the Scriptures makes no use, as far as the Compiler can discover, of the word *mean*; though there are several instances to be found in it of the use of *means*, in the sense and connexion contended for. "By *this means* thou shalt have no portion on this side the river." *Ezra* iv. 16. "That by *means* of death," &c. *Heb.* ix. 15. It will scarcely be pretended, that the translators of the sacred volumes did not accurately understand the English language; or that they would have admitted one form of this word, and rejected the other, had not their determination been conformable to the best usage. An attempt therefore to recover an old word, so long since disused by the most correct writers, seems not likely to be successful; especially as the rejection of it is not attended with any inconvenience.

The practice of the best and most correct writers, or a great majority of them, corroborated by general usage, forms, during its continuance, the standard of language;

It is
speci
after
and ap
theref
tionabl

On
deviat
those
proper
"None
none or
work
tive, is
have be
yet is p
ety; th
and ye e

With
thus esta
not to r
sion of p
of expre
sagacity
ciently c
either to
covering
language

Cases
the gram
monstrate
priety; a
guage:
point, it
of cavil

especially, if, in particular instances, this practice continues, after objection and due consideration. Every convention and application of words and phrases, thus supported, must therefore be proper, and entitled to respect, if not exceptional in a moral point of view.

"Si violet unus
"Quoniam potest scribere ut, et jam, et solum legendi."

NON

On this principle, many forms of expression, not less deviating from the general analogy of the language, than those before mentioned, are to be considered as strictly proper and justifiable. Of this kind are the following: "None of them are varied to express the gender," and yet none originally signified no one. "He himself" shall do the work: here, what was at first appropriated to the objective, is now properly used as the nominative case. "You have behaved yourselves well:" in this example, the word you is put in the nominative case plural, with strict propriety; though formerly it was confined to the objective case, and so exclusively used for the nominative.

With respect to anomalies and variations of language thus established, it is the grammarian's business to submit, not to remonstrate. In pertinaciously opposing the decision of proper authority, and contending for obsolete modes of expression, he may, indeed, display learning and critical sagacity; and, in some degree, obscure points that are sufficiently clear and decided; but he cannot reasonably hope either to succeed in his aims, or to assist the learner, in discovering and respecting the true standard and principles of language.

Cases which custom has left dubious, are certainly within the grammarian's province. Here, he may reason and remonstrate on the ground of derivation, analogy, and propriety; and his reasonings may refine and improve the language: but when authority speaks out and decides the point, it were perpetually to unsettle the language, to admit of cavil and debate. Anomalies then, under the limitation

mentioned, become the law, as clearly as the plainest analogies.

The reader will perceive that, in the following sentences, the use of the word *mean* in the old form has a very uncouth appearance: "By the *mean* of adversity we are often instructed." "He preserved his health by *mean* of exercise." "Frugality is one *mean* of acquiring a competency." "They should be, "By *means* of adversity," &c. "By *means* of exercise," &c. "Frugality is one *means*," &c.

Good writers do indeed make use of the substantive *mean* in the singular number, and in that number only, to signify mediocrity, middle rate, &c. as, "This is a *mean* between the two extremes." But in the sense of instrumentality, it has been long disused by the best authors, and by almost every writer.

This means and *that means* should be used only when they refer to what is singular; *these means* and *those means*, when they respect plurals: as, "He lived temperately, and by *this means* preserved his health;" "The scholars were attentive, industrious, and obedient to their tutors; and by *these means* acquired knowledge."

We have enlarged on this article, that the young student may be led to reflect on a point so important, as that of ascertaining the standard of propriety in the use of language.

2. When two persons or things are spoken of in a sentence, and there is occasion to mention them again for the sake of distinction, *that* is used in reference to the former, and *this*, in reference to the latter: as, "Self-love, which is the spring of action in the soul, is ruled by reason: but for *that*, man would be inactive; and but for *this*, he would be active to no end."

3. The distributive adjective pronouns, *each*, *every*, *either*, agree with the nouns, pronouns, and verbs, of the singular number only: as, "The king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, sat *each* on *his* throne;" "Every tree is known by *its* fruit:" unless the plural noun convey

a coll

dred y

"Let

to be

cuons

qualiti

be, "i

dates, s

date, an

ed; eve

burned,

OCTAVO

Either

"The k

sat eithe

the sons

signifies l

properly

disjunctiv

In the c

erroneous

spect to g

remark, th

ble, for the

sition that

of several

of this asse

that of Dr.

"e Bible,

4. Adjec

verbs: as,

poor;" inst

miserably

hat great

ve hereaft

a collective idea: as, "Every six months;" "Every hundred years."—The following phrases are exceptionable. "Let *each* esteem others better than themselves:" It ought to be "*himself*." "The language should be both perspicuous and correct: in proportion as *either* of these two qualities are wanting, the language is imperfect:" It should be, "*is wanting*." "*Every* one of the letters bear regular dates, and contain proofs of attachment:" "*bears a regular date, and contains*." "*Every* town and village were burned; *every* grove and *every* tree were cut down:" "*was burned, and was cut down*."—See the Key, p. 16; and the OCTAVO Grammar, SECOND edition, volume 2. page 322.

Either is often used improperly, instead of *each*: as, "The king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah, sat *either* of them on his throne;" "Nadab and Abihu, the sons of Aaron, took *either* of them his censer." *Each* signifies both of them taken distinctly or separately; *either* properly signifies only the one or the other of them taken disjunctively.

In the course of this work, some examples will appear of erroneous translations from the Holy Scriptures, with respect to grammatical construction: but it may be proper to remark, that notwithstanding these verbal mistakes, the Bible, for the size of it, is the most accurate grammatical composition that we have in the English language. The authority of several eminent grammarians might be adduced in support of this assertion; but it may be sufficient to mention only that of Dr. Lowth, who says, "The present translation of the Bible, is the best standard of the English language."

H. ADJECTIVES.

4. Adjectives are sometimes improperly applied as adverbs: as, "indifferent honest; excellent well; miserable poor;" instead of "Indifferently honest; excellently well; miserably poor." "He behaved himself conformable to that great example;" "*conformably*." "Endeavour to be hereafter suitable to a person in thy station;" "*and*

ably." "I can never think so very mean of him;" "meanly." "He describes this river agreeable to the common reading;" "agreeably." "Agreeable to my promise, I now write;" "agreeably." "Thy exceeding great reward:" When united to an adjective, or adverb not ending in *ly*, the word *exceeding* has *ly* added to it: as, "exceedingly dreadful, exceedingly great;" "exceedingly well, exceedingly more active:" but when it is joined to an adverb or adjective, having that termination, the *ly* is omitted: as, "Some men think exceeding clearly, and reason exceeding forcibly;" "She appeared, on this occasion, exceeding lovely." "He acted, in this business bolder than was expected:" "They behaved the noblest, because they were disinterested." They should have been, "more boldly; most nobly."—The adjective pronoun *such* is often misapplied: as, "He was such an extravagant young man, that he spent his whole patrimony in a few years:" it should be, "so extravagant a young man." "I never before saw such large trees:" "sure trees so large." When we refer to the species or nature of a thing, the word *such* is properly applied: as, "Such a temper is seldom found:" but when degree is signified, we use the word *so*: as, "So bad a temper is seldom found."

Adverbs are likewise improperly used as adjectives: as, "The tutor addressed him in terms rather warm, but suitably to his offence;" "*suitable*." "They were seen wandering about solitarily and distressed;" "*solitary*." "He lived in a manner agreeably to the dictates of reason and religion;" "*agreeable*." "The study of syntax should be previously to that of punctuation;" "*previous*."

5 Double comparatives and superlatives should be avoided: such as, "A worse conduct;" "On lesser hopes;" "A more serener temper;" "The most straitest sect;" "A more superior work." They should be, "worse conduct;"

1 For the rule to determine whether an adjective or an adverb is to be used, see English Exercises, Sixth year, or any subsequent edition

"less
sect;"

6. A

nificati

parati

perfect

times i

rightest

ing exp

claims

became

ing the

perfect,

because

treme, &

7. Ina

degrees

following

spect: "

fewer co

precisely

noble na

other."

two;" or

the regula

things con

deepest i

church of

these mod

"The best

for "the t

by substitu

tive "Th

than any o

than any o

tive, and re

"less hopes;" "a more serene tempe." "the straitest sect;" "a superior work."

6. Adjectives that have in themselves a superlative signification, do not properly admit of the superlative or comparative form superadded: such as, "Chief, extreme, perfect, right, universal, supreme," &c.; which are sometimes improperly written, "Chiefest, extremest, perfectest, rightest, most universal, most supreme," &c. The following expressions are therefore improper: "He sometimes claims admission to the *chiefest* offices." "The quarrel became *so universal* and national;" "A method of attaining the *rightest* and greatest happiness." The phrases, *so perfect, so right, so extreme, so universal, &c.* are incorrect; because they imply that one thing is less perfect, less extreme, &c. than another, which is not possible.

7. Inaccuracies are often found in the way in which the degrees of comparison are applied and construed. The following are examples of wrong construction in this respect: "This noble nation hath, of all others, admitted fewer corruptions." The word *fewer* is here construed precisely as if it were the superlative. It should be, "This noble nation hath admitted fewer corruptions than any other." We commonly say, "This is the weaker of the two;" or, "The weakest of the two:" but the former is the regular mode of expression, because there are only two things compared. "The vice of covetousness is what enters deepest into the soul of any other." "He celebrates the church of England as the most perfect of all others." Both these modes of expression are faulty: we should not say, "The best of any man," or, "The best of any other man," for "the best of men." The sentences may be corrected by substituting the comparative in the room of the superlative. "The vice, &c. is what enters deeper into the soul than any other." "He celebrates, &c. as more perfect than any other." It is also possible to retain the superlative, and render the expression grammatical. "Covetous-

ness, of all vices, enters the deepest into the soul." "He celebrates, &c. as the most perfect of all churches." These sentences contain other errors, against which it is proper to caution the learner. The words *deeper* and *deepest*, being intended for adverbs, should have been *more deeply*, *most deeply*. The phrases *more perfect*, and *most perfect*, are improper; because perfection admits of no degrees of comparison. We may say *nearer* or *nearer* to perfection, or *more* or *less* imperfect.

8. In some cases, adjectives should not be separated from their substantives, even by words which modify their meaning, and make but one sense with them: as, "A large enough number surely." It should be, "A number large enough." "The lower sort of people are good enough judges of one not very distant from them."

The adjective is usually placed before its substantive: as, "A generous man;" "How amiable a woman!" The instances in which it comes after the substantive, are the following.

1st, When something depends upon the adjective; and when it gives a better sound, especially in poetry: as, "A man generous to his enemies;" "Feed me with food convenient for me;" "A tree three feet thick." "A body of troops fifty thousand strong." "The torrent tumbling through rocks abrupt."

2d, When the adjective is emphatical: as, "Alexander the Great;" "Lewis the Bold;" "Goodness infinite," "Wisdom unsearchable."

3d, When several adjectives belong to one substantive: as, "A man just, wise, and charitable;" "A woman modest, sensible, and virtuous."

4th, When the adjective is preceded by an adverb: as, "A boy regularly studious;" "A girl unaffectedly modest."

5th, When the verb *to be*, in any of its variations, comes

between a substantive and an adjective, the adjective may frequently either precede or follow it: as, "The man is happy;" or, "happy is the man who makes virtue his choice:" "The interview was delightful;" or, "delightful was the interview."

6th, When the adjective expresses some circumstance of a substantive placed after an active verb: as, "Vanity often renders its possessor *despicable*." In an exclamatory sentence, the adjective generally precedes the substantive; as, "How *despicable* does vanity often render its possessor!"

There is sometimes great beauty, as well as force, in placing the adjective before the verb, and the substantive immediately after it: as, "Great is the Lord! just and true are thy ways, thou King of kings!"

Sometimes the word *all* is emphatically put after a number of particulars comprehended under it. "Ambition, interest, honour, *all* concurred." Sometimes a substantive, which likewise comprehends the preceding particulars, is used in conjunction with this adjective: as, "Royallists, republicans, churchmen, sectaries, courtiers, patriots, *all* parties, concurred in the illusion."

An adjective pronoun, in the plural number, will sometimes properly associate with a singular noun: as, "Our desire, your intention, their resignation." This association applies rather to things of an intellectual nature, than to those which are corporeal. It forms an exception to the general rule.

A substantive with its adjective is reckoned as one compounded word, whence they often take another adjective, and sometimes a third, and so on: as, "An old man; a good old man; very learned, judicious, good old man."

Though the adjective always relates to a substantive, it is, in many instances, put as if it were absolute; especially where the noun has been mentioned before, or is easily understood, though not expressed: as, "I often survey

the green fields, as I am very fond of *green*;" "The wise, the virtuous, the honoured, famed, and great," that is, "persons;" "The twelve," that is, "apostles;" "Have compassion on the poor; be feet to the lame, and eyes to the blind."

Substantives are often used as adjectives: In this case, the word so used is sometimes unconnected with the substantive to which it relates; sometimes connected with it by a hyphen; and sometimes joined to it, so as to make the two words coalesce. The total separation is proper, when either of the two words is long, or when they cannot be fluently pronounced as one word: as, an adjective pronoun, a silver watch, a stone cistern: the hyphen is used, when both the words are short, and are readily pronounced as a single word: as, coal-mine, corn-mill, fruit-tree: the words coalesce, when they are readily pronounced together; have a long established association; and are in frequent use: as, honeycomb, gingerbread, inkhorn, Yorkshire.

Sometimes the adjective becomes a substantive, and has another adjective joined to it: as, "The chief good;" "The vast immense of space."

When an adjective has a preposition before it, the substantive being understood, it takes the nature of an adverb, and is considered as an adverb: as, "In general, in particular, in haste," &c.; that is, "Generally, particularly, hastily."

Enow was formerly used as the plural of *enough*: but it is now obsolete.

RULE IX.

The article *a* or *an* agrees with nouns in the singular number only, individually or collectively: as, "A christian, an infidel, a score, a thousand." The definite article *the* may agree with nouns in the singular and plural number: as, "The garden, the houses, the stars."

The articles are often properly omitted: when used, they should be justly applied, according to their distinc-

nature : as, "Gold is corrupting, the sea is green; a lion is bold."

It is of the nature of both the articles to determine or limit the thing spoken of. *A* determines it to be one single thing of the kind, leaving it still uncertain which : *the* determines which it is, or of many, which they are.

The following passage will serve as an example of the different uses of *a* and *the*, and of the force of the substantive without any article. "Man was made for society, and ought to extend his good will to all men : but a man will naturally entertain a more particular kindness for the men, with whom he has the most frequent intercourse ; and enter into a still closer union with the man whose temper and disposition suit best with his own."

As the articles are sometimes misapplied, it may be of some use to exhibit a few instances : "And I persecuted this way unto the death." The apostle does not mean any particular sort of death, but death in general : the definite article therefore is improperly used : it ought to be "unto death," without any article.

"When he, the Spirit of Truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth ;" that is, according to this translation, "into all truth whatsoever, into truth of all kinds ;" very different from the meaning of the evangelist, and from the original, "into all the truth ;" that is, "into all evangelical truth, all truth necessary for you to know."

"Who breaks a butterfly upon a wheel ?" it ought to be "the wheel," used as an instrument for the particular purpose of torturing criminals. "The Almighty hath given reason to a man to be a light unto him : " it should rather be, "to man," in general. "This day is salvation come to this house, forasmuch as he also is the son of Abraham : " it ought to be, "a son of Abraham."

These remarks may serve to show the great importance of the proper use of the articles, and the excellence of the

English language in this respect; which, by means of its two articles, does most precisely determine the extent of signification of common names.

1. A nice distinction of the sense is sometimes made by the use or omission of the article *a*. If I say, "He behaved with a little reverence;" my meaning is positive. If I say, "He behaved with little reverence;" my meaning is negative. And these two are by no means the same, or to be used in the same cases. By the former, I rather praise a person; by the latter, I dispraise him. For the sake of this distinction, which is a very useful one, we may better bear the seeming impropriety of the article *a* before nouns of number. When I say, "There were few men with him;" I speak diminutively, and mean to represent them as inconsiderable: whereas, when I say, "There were a few men with him;" I evidently intend to make the most of them.

2. In general, it may be sufficient to prefix the article to the former of two words in the same construction; though the French never fail to repeat it in this case. "There were many hours, both of the night and day, which he could spend, without suspicion, in solitary thought." It might have been "of the night and of the day." And, for the sake of emphasis, we often repeat the article in a series of epithets. "He hoped that this title would secure him an ample and an independent authority."

3. In common conversation, and in familiar style, we frequently omit the articles, which might be inserted with propriety in writing, especially in a grave style. "At worst, time might be gained by this expedient." "At the worst," would have been better in this place. "Give me here John Baptist's head." There would have been more dignity in saying, "John the Baptist's head:" or, "The head of John the Baptist."

The article *the* has sometimes a good effect in distinguish-

ing a
fourth

the gro

have

This

the Fr

him fu

presen

that is,

We

the sar

clause

all the

monwe

poverty

as that

the stron

are not

placed

One

ent thin

father's

ward."

When

the first

of Great

contende

"Religio

Nouns th

each othe

sometime

tended w

time." H

governed

ing a person by an epithet. "In the history of Henry the fourth, by Father Daniel, we are surprised at not finding him *the great man*." "I own I am often surprised that he should have treated so coldly, a man so much *the gentleman*."

This article is often elegantly put, after the manner of the French, for the pronoun possessive: as, "He looks him full in *the face*;" that is, "in *his face*." "In his presence they were to strike *the forehead* on the ground;" that is, "*their foreheads*."

We sometimes, according to the French manner, repeat the same article, when the adjective, on account of any clause depending upon it, is put after the substantive. "Of all the considerable governments among the Alps, a commonwealth is a constitution *the* most adapted of any to the poverty of those countries." "With such a specious title as that of blood, which with the multitude is always a claim, *the* strongest, and *the* most easily comprehended." "They are not the men in the nation *the* most difficult to be replaced."

RULE X.

One substantive governs another, signifying a different thing, in the possessive or genitive case: as, "My father's house," "Man's happiness;" "Virtue's reward."

When the annexed substantive signifies the same thing as the first, there is no variation of case: as, "George, king of Great Britain, elector of Hanover," &c.; "Pompey contended with Cæsar, the greatest general of his time;" "Religion, the support of adversity, adorns prosperity." Nouns thus circumstanced are said to be in *apposition* to each other. The interposition of a relative and verb will sometimes break the construction: as, "Pompey contended with Cæsar, *who was* the greatest general of his time." Here the word *general* is in the nominative case, governed by note 4, under RULE XI.

The preposition *of*, joined to a substantive, is not always equivalent to the possessive case. It is only so, when the expression can be converted into the regular form of the possessive case. We can say, "The reward of virtue," and "Virtue's reward;" but though it is proper to say, "A crown of gold," we cannot convert the expression into the possessive case, and say, "Gold's crown."

Substantives govern pronouns as well as nouns, in the possessive case: as, "Every tree is known by *its* fruit," "Goodness brings *its* reward;" "That desk is *mine*."

The genitive *its* is often improperly used for *his* or *it is*: as, "It's my book;" instead of "It is my book."

The pronoun *his*, when detached from the noun to which it relates, is to be considered, not as a possessive pronoun, but as the genitive case of the personal pronoun: as, "This composition' is *his*." "Whose book is that?" "*His*." If we used the noun itself, we should say, "This composition is John's." "Whose book is that?" "Eliza's." The position will be still more evident, when we consider that both the pronouns in the following sentences must have a similar construction: "Is it *her* or *his* honour that is tarnished?" "It is not *here*, but *his*."

Sometimes a substantive in the genitive or possessive case stands alone, the latter one by which it is governed being understood: as, "I called at the bookseller's," that is, "at the bookseller's *shop*."

1. If several nouns come together in the genitive case, the apostrophe with *s* is annexed to the last, and understood to the rest: as, "John and Eliza's books." "This was my father, mother, and uncle's advice." But when any words intervene, perhaps on account of the increased pause, the sign of the possessive should be annexed to each: as, "They are John's as well as Eliza's books;" "I had the physician's, the surgeon's, and the apothecary's assistance."

2. In poetry, the additional *s* is frequently omitted, but

the ap
standi
wrath
prose
monst
came
the wi
too mu
pronun

"For

3. L

ward b

follows

led him

excellen

4. W

and an c

scriptive

doubt to

he annex

Thus, s

booksell

haps oth

forms is

addition

be less d

seller an

further e

shall add

A phra

dent, as t

sarily rec

phrase: a

Britain's;

bishop of

London's

the apostrophe retained, in the same manner as in substantives of the plural number ending in *s*: as, "The wrath of Peleus' son." This seems not so allowable in prose; which the following erroneous examples will demonstrate: "Moses' minister;" "Phinehas' wife;" "Festus came into Felix' room." "These answers were made to the witness' questions." But in cases which would give too much of the hissing sound, or increase the difficulty of pronunciation, the omission takes place even in prose: as, "For righteousness' sake;" "For conscience' sake."

3. Little explanatory circumstances are particularly awkward between a genitive case, and the word which usually follows it; as, "She began to extol the farmer's, as she called him, excellent understanding." It ought to be, "the excellent understanding of the farmer, as she called him."

4. When a sentence consists of terms signifying a name and an office, or of any expressions by which one part is descriptive or explanatory of the other, it may occasion some doubt to which of them the sign of the genitive case should be annexed; or whether it should be subjoined to them both. Thus, some would say; "I left the parcel at Smith's the bookseller;" others, "at Smith the bookseller's;" and perhaps others, "at Smith's the bookseller's." The first of these forms is most agreeable to the English idiom; and if the addition consists of two or more words, the case seems to be less dubious; as, "I left the parcel at Smith's, the bookseller and stationer." But as this subject requires a little further explanation to make it intelligible to the learners, we shall add a few observations tending to unfold its principles.

A phrase in which the words are so connected and dependent, as to admit of no pause before the conclusion, necessarily requires the genitive sign at or near the end of the phrase: as, "Whose prerogative is it? It is the king of Great Britain's;" "That is the duke of Bridgewater's canal;" "The bishop of Landaff's excellent book;" "The Lord mayor of London's authority;" "The captain of the guard's house."

When words in apposition follow each other in quick succession, it seems also most agreeable to our idiom, to give the sign of the genitive a similar situation; especially if the noun which governs the genitive be expressed: as, "The emperor Leopold's;" "Dionysius the tyrant's;" "For David my servant's sake;" "Give me John the Baptist's head;" "Paul the apostle's advice." But when a pause is proper, and the governing noun not expressed; and when the latter part of the sentence is extended; it appears to be requisite that the sign should be applied to the first genitive, and understood to the other: as, "I reside at lord Stormont's, my old patron and benefactor;" "Whose glory did he emulate? He emulated Caesar's, the greatest general of antiquity." In the following sentences, it would be very awkward to place the sign, either at the end of each of the clauses, or at the end of the latter one alone: "These psalms are David's, the king, priest, and prophet of the Jewish people;" "We staid a month at lord Lyttelton's, the ornament of his country, and the friend of every virtue." The sign of the genitive case may very properly be understood at the end of these members, an ellipsis at the latter part of sentences being a common construction in our language; as the learner will see by one or two examples: "They wished to submit, but he did not;" that is, "he did not wish to submit;" "He said it was their concern, but not his;" that is, "not his concern."

If we annex the sign of the genitive to the end of the last clause only, we shall perceive that a resting place is wanted, and that the connecting circumstance is placed too remotely, to be either perspicuous or agreeable: as, "Whose glory did he emulate?" "He emulated Caesar, the greatest general of antiquity's;" "These psalms are David, the king, priest, and prophet of the Jewish people's." It is much better to say, "This is Paul's advice, the christian hero, and great apostle of the gentiles," than, "This is Paul the christian hero, and great apostle of the gentiles"

nitive
tive
be ge
case
Georg
Smith
we ha
venien
pear to
of the

5. T

that we
same r
ing sen
"The g
"The
is very
tainly b
votes of
dition o
English
acquain
pleasure

We so
one ano
each of
the king
is not to
severe d
have a s
sion, in t
each of t
at the en
6. In s
and the p
Newton

in quick
idiom, to
especially
used: as,
tyrant's;"
John the
But when
expressed;
tended; it
applied to

as, "I re-
mefaster;"
Caesar's, the
sentences,
either at the
latter one
priest, and
month at
ry, and the
re case may
members,
a common
will see by
mit, but he
"He said's
concern."

ed of the last
e is wanted,
too remote-
s, "Whose
the greatest
David, the
ple's." It is
the christian
s, "This is
the gentiles'

atives." On the other hand, the application of the genitive sign to both or all of the nouns in apposition, would be generally harsh and displeasing, and perhaps in some cases incorrect: as, "The emperor's Leopold's;" "King's George's;" "Charles the second's;" "The parcel was left at Smith's the bookseller's and stationer's." The rules which we have endeavoured to elucidate, will prevent the inconvenience of both these modes of expression; and they appear to be simple, perspicuous, and consistent with the idiom of the language.

5. The English genitive has often an unpleasant sound; so that we daily make more use of the particle *of* to express the same relation. There is something awkward in the following sentences, in which this method has not been taken. "The general, in the army's name, published a declaration." "The commons' vote." "The Lords' house." "Unless he is very ignorant of the kingdom's condition." It were certainly better to say, "In the name of the army;" "The votes of the commons;" "The house of lords;" "The condition of the kingdom." It is also rather harsh to use two English genitives with the same substantive; as, "Whom he acquainted with the pope's and the king's pleasure." "The pleasure of the pope and the king," would have been better.

We sometimes meet with three substantives dependent on one another, and connected by the preposition *of* applied to each of them: as, "The severity of the distress of the son of the king, touched the nation;" but this mode of expression is not to be recommended: It would be better to say, "The severe distress of the king's son, touched the nation." We have a striking instance of this laborious mode of expression, in the following sentence: "Of some of the books of each of these classes of literature, a catalogue will be given at the end of the work."

6. In some cases, we use both the genitive termination and the preposition *of*; as, "It is a discovery of Sir Isaac Newton's." Sometimes indeed, unless we throw the sen-

tence into another form, this method is absolutely necessary, in order to distinguish the sense, and to give the idea of property, strictly so called, which is the most important of the relations expressed by the genitive case: for the expressions, "This picture of my friend," and "This picture of my friend's," suggest very different ideas. The latter only is that of property in the strictest sense. The idea would, doubtless, be conveyed in a better manner, by saying, "This picture belonging to my friend."

When this double genitive, as some grammarians term it, is not necessary to distinguish the sense, and especially in a grave style, it is generally omitted. Except to prevent ambiguity, it seems to be allowable only in cases which suppose the existence of a plurality of subjects of the same kind. In the expressions, "A subject of the emperor's;" "A sentiment of my brother's;" more than one subject, and one sentiment, are supposed to belong to the possessor. But when this plurality is neither intimated, nor necessarily supposed, the double genitive, except as before mentioned, should not be used: as, "This house of the governor is very commodious;" "The crown of the king was stolen;" "That privilege of the scholar was never abused." (See page 56.) But after all that can be said for this double genitive, as it is termed, some grammarians think that it would be better to avoid the use of it altogether, and to give the sentiment another form of expression.

7. When an entire clause of a sentence, beginning with a participle of the present tense, is used as one name, or to express one idea or circumstance, the noun on which it depends may be put in the genitive case; thus, instead of saying, "What is the reason of this person dismissing his servant so hastily?" that is, "What is the reason of this person in dismissing his servant so hastily?" we may say, and perhaps ought to say, "What is the reason of this person's dismissing of his servant so hastily?" Just as we say, "What is the reason of this person's hasty dismissal of his

Rule

servant
ed a g
ing rec
proper
more
to say,
We als
compos
ing fre

Acti
ennobl
us;"

In En
usually
noting t
der that
quered
form for
objective
the nom
Whom

This p
per case
ing instan
and good
for your f
are the p
"Who sh
"Whosoe
to be whos
by the ver
under all
truth, choo
Verbs n

necessa-
the idea of
portant of
e expres-
picture of
atter only
a would,
y saying,

ns term it,
cially in a
event am-
which sup-
same kind.

"A sen-
and one
essor. But
necessarily
mentioned,
governor is
as stolen;"

eu. (See
his double
think that it
and to give

ing with a
ame, or to
n which it
instead of
missing his
on of this
e may say,
of this per-
as we say,
sion of his

servant?" So also, we say, "I remember it being reckon-
ed a great exploit;" or more properly, "I remember its be-
ing reckoned," &c. The following sentence is correct and
proper: "Much will depend on the *pupil's composing*, but
more on *his reading* frequently." It would not be accurate
to say, "Much will depend on the *pupil composing*," &c.
We also properly say; "This will be the effect of the *pupil's*
composing frequently;" instead of, "*Of the pupil compos-*
ing frequently."

RULE XI.

Active verbs govern the objective case: as, "Truth
ennobles *her*;" "She comforts *me*;" "They support
us;" "Virtue rewards *her followers*."

In English, the nominative case, denoting the subject,
usually goes before the verb; and the objective case, de-
noting the object, follows the verb active; and it is the or-
der that determines the case in *nouns*; as, "Alexander con-
quered the Persians." But the *pronoun* having a proper
form for each of those cases, is sometimes, when it is in the
objective case, placed before the verb; and, when it is in
the nominative case, follows the object and verb; as,
"*Whom* ye ignorantly worship, *him* declare I unto you."

This position of the pronoun sometimes occasions its pro-
per case and government to be neglected: as in the follow-
ing instances: "Who should I esteem more than the wise
and good?" "By *his* character of those who you choose
for your friends, your own is likely to be formed." "Those
are the persons who he thought true to *his* interests."
"Who should I see the other day but my old friend?"
"Whosoever the court favours." In all these places it ought
to be *whom*, the relative being governed in the objective case
by the verbs "esteem, choose, thought," &c. "He, who
under all proper circumstances, has the boldness to speak
truth, choose for thy friend;" It should be "*him* who," &c.

Verbs neuter do not act upon, or govern, nouns and pro-

nouns. "He *sleeps*; they *muse*," &c. are not transitive. They are, therefore, not followed by an objective case, specifying the object of an action. But when this case, or an object of action, comes after such verbs, though it may carry the appearance of being governed by them, it is affected by a preposition or some other word understood: as, "He resided many years [that is, *for* or *during* many years] in that street;" "He rode several miles [that is, *for* or *through* the space of several miles] on that day;" "He lay an hour [that is, *during* an hour] in great torture." In the phrases, "To dream a dream," "To live a virtuous life," "To run a race," "To walk the horse," "To dance the child," the verbs certainly assume a transitive form, and may not, in these cases, be improperly denominated transitive verbs.

1. Some writers, however, use certain neuter verbs as if they were transitive, putting after them the objective case, agreeably to the French construction of reciprocal verbs; but this custom is so foreign to the idiom of the English tongue, that it ought not to be adopted or imitated. The following are some instances of this practice. "*Repenting* him of his design." "The king soon found reason *to repent* him of his provoking such dangerous enemies." "The popular lords did not fail *to enlarge* themselves on the subject." "The nearer his successes *approached* him to the throne." "Go *flee* thee away into the land of Judah." "I think it by no means a fit and decent thing *to vie* charities," &c. "They have spent their whole time and pains *to agree* the sacred with the profane chronology."

2. Active verbs are sometimes as improperly made neuter; as, "I must *promise* with three circumstances." "Those that think *to ingratiate* with him by calumniating me."

3. The neuter verb is varied like the active; but, having in some degree the nature of the passive, it admits, in many instances, of the passive form, retaining still the neuter signification, chiefly in such verbs as signify some sort of motion, or change of place or condition; as, "I *was*

Rule
come
ing ex
the ne
"The
over
was al
three h
was en
end of
ed." I
4. T
case af
they in
cannot
to be th
himself
the busi
it to hav
were af
not the
person x
man wh
do you
that this
serves, i
the two
are the
haps this
observing
ing the v
other. T
the word
fer to the
The f
rule, and
have bee

come; I was gone; I am grown; I was fallen." The following examples, however, appear to be erroneous, in giving the neuter verbs a passive form, instead of an active one. "The rule of our holy religion, from which we are infinitely *swerved*." "The whole obligation of that law and covenant *was also ceased*." "Whose number *was now amounted* to three hundred." "This marshal, upon some discontent, *was entered* into a conspiracy against his master." "At the end of a campaign, when half the men *are deserted* or killed." It should be, "*have swerved, had ceased,*" &c.

4. The verb *to be*, through all its variations, has the same case after it, as that which next precedes it: *I am he* whom they invited;" "*It may be* (or might have been) *he*, but it cannot be (or could not have been) *I*;" "*It is impossible to be they*;" "*It seems to have been he*, who conducted himself so wisely;" "*It appeared to be she* that transacted the business;" "*I understood it to be him*;" "*I believe it to have been them*;" "*We at first took it to be her*; but were afterwards convinced that *it was not she*." "*He is not the person who it seemed he was*." "*He is really the person who he appeared to be*." "*She is not now the woman whom they represented her to have been*." "*Whom do you fancy him to be*?" By these examples, it appears that this substantive verb has no government of case, but serves, in all its forms, as a conductor to the cases; so that the two cases which, in the construction of the sentence, are the *next* before and after it, must always be alike. Perhaps this subject will be more intelligible to the learner, by observing, that the words in the cases preceding and following the verb *to be*, may be said to be in *apposition* to each other. Thus, in the sentence, "*I understood it to be him*," the words *it* and *him* are in apposition; that is, "they refer to the same thing, and are in the same case."

The following sentences contain deviations from the rule, and exhibit the pronoun in a wrong case: "*It might have been him*, but there is no proof of it;" "*Though I*

was blamed, it could not have been *me*;" "I saw one whom I took to be *she*;" "She is the person *who* I understood it to have been;" "Who do you think me to be?" "Whom do men say that I am?" "And whom think ye that I am?"—See the *Octavo Grammar*.

Passive verbs which signify naming, &c. have the same case before and after them: as, "He was called *Cæsar*;" "She was named *Penelope*;" "Homer is styled the prince of poets;" "James was created a duke;" "The general was saluted emperor;" "The professor was appointed tutor to the prince."

5. The auxiliary *let* governs the objective case: as, "Let him beware;" "Let us judge candidly;" "Let them not presume;" "Let George study his lesson."

RULE XII.

One verb governs another that follows it, or depends upon it, in the infinitive mood: as, "Cease *to do evil*;" "learn *to do well*;" "We should be prepared *to render* an account of our actions."

The preposition *to*, though generally used before the latter verb, is sometimes properly omitted: as, "I heard him say it;" instead of "*to* say it."

The verbs which have commonly other verbs following them in the infinitive mood, without the sign *to*, are Bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel; and also, let, not used as an auxiliary; and perhaps a few others: as, "I bade him do it;" "Ye dare not do it;" "I saw him do it;" "I heard him say it;" "Thou lettest him go."

1. In the following passages, the word *to*, the sign of the infinitive mood, where it is distinguished by Italic characters, is superfluous and improper. "I have observed some satirists *to use*, &c." "To see so many *to make* so little conscience of so great a sin." "It cannot but be a delightful spectacle to God and angels, *to see* a young person, besieged by powerful temptations on every side, *to ac-*

† See English Exercises, 13th edit.

The Note.

Rule 1

quit his

the mo

flower

by the

to reject

This

ing plac

cannot

doubted

he order

ous in th

The in

stantive

is worthy

"Endeav

The in

tive, exp

the partic

finitive m

cases: in

the objec

sent with

The in

dependen

of the cor

confess th

"To proc

fees," &c.

In the

time, rela

should be

hath given

say,

Instead of

I saw one
 to I under-
 to be
 think ye
 the same
 ed Caesar;
 prince of
 was saluted
 the prince.
 as, "Let
 et them not

or depends
 to do evil;
 to render

before the
 s, "I heard

s following
 to, are Bid,
 not used as
 I bade him
 do it;" "I

sign of the
 Italic cha-
 e observed
 to make so
 ot but be a
 young per-
 side, to ac-

quit himself gloriously, and resolutely *to* hold out against the most violent assaults; to behold one in the prime and flower of his age, that is courted by pleasures and honours, by the devil, and all the bewitching vanities of the world, to reject all these, and *to* cleave steadfastly unto God."

This mood has also been improperly used in the following places: "I am not like other men, *to* envy the talents I cannot reach." "Grammarians have denied, or at least doubted, them *to be* genuine." "That all our doings may be ordered by thy governance, *to do* always what is righteous in thy sight."

The infinitive is frequently governed by adjectives, substantives, and participles; as, "He is eager *to* learn;" "She is worthy *to be* loved;" "They have a desire *to* improve;" "Endeavouring *to* persuade."

The infinitive mood has much of the nature of a substantive, expressing the action itself which the verb signifies, as the participle has the nature of an adjective. Thus the infinitive mood does the office of a substantive in different cases: in the nominative; as, "*To play* is pleasant;" in the objective; as, "Boys love *to play*;" "For *to will* is present with me; but *to perform* that which is good, I find not."

The infinitive mood is often made absolute, or used independently on the rest of the sentence, supplying the place of the conjunction *that* with the potential mood: as, "To confess the truth, I was in fault;" "To begin with the first;" "To proceed;" "To conclude;" that is, "That I may confess," &c.

RULE XIII.

In the use of words and phrases which, in point of time, relate to each other, a due regard to that relation should be observed. Instead of saying, "The Lord *hath* given, and the Lord *hath* taken away;" we should say, "The Lord *gave*," and the Lord *hath* taken away." Instead of, "I remember the family more than twenty

years;" it should be, "I *have remembered* the family more than twenty years."

It is not easy to give particular rules for the management of the moods and tenses of verbs with respect to one another, so that they may be proper and consistent. The best rule that can be given, is this very general one: "To observe what the sense necessarily requires." It may, however, be of use to give a few examples of irregular construction. "The last week I intended *to have written*," is a very common phrase; the infinitive being in the past time, as well as the verb which it follows. But it is certainly wrong; for how long soever it now is since I thought of writing, "to write" was then present to me, and must still be considered as present, when I bring back that time, and the thoughts of it. It ought, therefore, to be, "The last week I intended *to write*." The following sentences are also erroneous: "I cannot excuse the remissness of those whose business it should have been, as it certainly was their interest, to *have interposed* their good offices." "There were two circumstances which made it necessary for them to *have lost* no time." "History painters would have found it difficult to *have invented* such a species of beings." They ought to be, "*to interpose, to lose, to invent*." "On the morrow, because he should have known the certainty, wherefore he was accused of the Jews, he loosed him." It ought to be, "because he *would know*," or rather, "*being willing to know*." "The blind man said unto him, Lord, that I *might* receive my sight." "If by any means I *might* attain unto the resurrection of the dead;" "*may*," in both places, would have been better. "From his biblical knowledge, he appears to study the Scriptures with great attention;" "*to have studied*," &c. "I feared that I should have lost it, before I arrived at the city;" "*should lose it*." "I had rather walk;" It should be, "I *would* rather walk." "It would have afforded me no satisfaction, if I could perform it:" it should be, "if I *could*

have p
tion, if

To
recolle
imperio
and tha
times,
the past

1. It i
tive mo
and ' to
with the
when ve
have bee
written,
time of t
of import
be suffici
tenses.

The fo
pressed :
" Expec
grammar
hope, des
followed
tive. Ev
sion; " It
Yet " exp
that the fi
the obedie
In the s
put in the
have affor
upon it, to
As the me
sure, and

have performed it;" or, "It would afford me no satisfaction, if I could perform it."

To preserve consistency in the time of verbs, we must recollect that, in the subjunctive mood, the present and imperfect tenses often carry with them a future sense; and that the auxiliaries *should* and *would*, in the imperfect times, are used to express the present and future as well as the past: for which see page 88.

1. It is proper further to observe, that verbs of the infinitive mood in the following form; 'to write,' 'to be writing,' and 'to be written,' always denote something *contemporary* with the time of the governing verb, or *subsequent* to it: but when verbs of that mood are expressed as follows; "To have been writing," "to have written," and "to have been written," they always denote something *antecedent* to the time of the governing verb. This remark is thought to be of importance; for if duly attended to, it will, in most cases, be sufficient to direct us in the relative application of these tenses.

The following sentence is properly and analogically expressed: "I found him better than I expected to find him." "Expected to have found him," is irreconcilable alike to grammar and to sense. Indeed, all verbs expressive of hope, desire, intention, or command, must invariably be followed by the present, and not the perfect of the infinitive. Every person would perceive an error in this expression; "It is long since I commanded him to have done it:" Yet "expected to have found," is no better. It is as clear that the *finding* must be posterior to the expectation, as that the *obedience* must be posterior to the command.

In the sentence which follows, the verb is with propriety put in the perfect tense of the infinitive mood; "It would have afforded me great pleasure, as often as I reflected upon it, to have been the messenger of such intelligence." As the message, in this instance, was antecedent to the pleasure, and not contemporary with it, the verb expressive of

the message must denote that antecedence, by being in the perfect of the infinitive. If the message and the pleasure had been referred to as contemporary, the subsequent verb would, with equal propriety, have been put in the present of the infinitive : as, "It would have afforded me great pleasure, *to be* the messenger of such intelligence." In the former instance, the phrase in question is equivalent to these words ; " *If I had been* the messenger ;" in the latter instance, to this expression ; " *Being* the messenger."—For a further discussion of this subject, see the *Eleventh* edition of the *Key to the Exercises*, p. 60, and the *Octavo Grammar*, RULE XIII.

It is proper to inform the learner, that, in order to express the past time with the defective verb *ought*, the perfect of the infinitive must always be used : as, "He *ought to have done* it." When we use this verb, this is the only possible way to distinguish the past from the present.

In support of the positions advanced under this rule, we can produce the sentiments of eminent grammarians ; amongst whom are Lowth and Campbell. But there are some writers on grammar, who strenuously maintain, that the governed verb in the infinitive ought to be in the past tense, when the verb which governs it, is in the past time. Though this cannot be admitted, in the instances which are controverted under this rule, or in any instances of a similar nature, yet there can be no doubt that, in many cases, in which the thing referred to preceded the governing verb, it would be proper and allowable. We may say ; "From a conversation I once had with him, he *appeared to have studied* Homer with great care and judgment." It would be proper also to say, "From his conversation, he *appears to have studied* Homer with great care and judgment ;" "That unhappy man *is supposed to have died* by violence." These examples are not only consistent with our rule, but they confirm and illustrate it. It is the tense of the governing verb only, that marks what is called the absolute time ;

Rule 1
the ten
time wh

To a
mood
past, an
of the s
the ten
their ow
whether
infinitive
culated
before,
verb, ac
supposed
noted by
propriety
mood. T
is of no c
complete

We sh
remarkin
of the inf
ticular ca
pression
wish to
have writ
have writ
forcible,
writers, to
"I then v
will one c
justness of
numerous
may perce
wards hav
wise and

the tense of the verb governed, marks solely its relative time with respect to the other.

To assert, as some writers do, that verbs in the infinitive mood have no tenses, no relative distinctions of present, past, and future, is inconsistent with just grammatical views of the subject. That these verbs associate with verbs in all the tenses, is no proof of their having no peculiar time of their own. Whatever period the governing verb assumes, whether present, past, or future, the governed verb in the infinitive always respects that period, and its time is calculated from it. Thus, the time of the infinitive may be before, after, or the same as, the time of the governing verb, according as the thing signified by the infinitive is supposed to be before, after, or present with, the thing denoted by the governing verb. It is, therefore, with great propriety, that tenses are assigned to verbs of the infinitive mood. The point of time from which they are computed is of no consequence; since present, past, and future, are completely applicable to them.

We shall conclude our observations under this rule, by remarking, that though it is often proper to use the perfect of the infinitive after the governing verb, yet there are particular cases, in which it would be better to give the expression a different form. Thus, instead of saying, "I wish to have written to him sooner," "I then wished to have written to him sooner," "He will one day wish to have written sooner;" it would be more periphrastic and forcible, as well as more agreeable to the practice of good writers, to say; "I wish that I had written to him sooner," "I then wished that I had written to him sooner," "He will one day wish that he had written sooner." Should the justness of these strictures be admitted, there would still be numerous occasions for the use of the past infinitive; as we may perceive by a few examples. "It would ever afterwards have been a source of pleasure, to have found him wise and virtuous." "To have deferred his repentance

longer, would have disqualified him for repenting at all," "They will then see, that to have faithfully performed their duty, would have been their greatest consolation." †

RULE XIV.

Participles have the same government as the verbs have from which they are derived: as, "I am weary with *hearing him*;" "She is *instructing us*;" "The tutor is *admonishing Charles*."

1. Participles are sometimes governed by the article; for the present participle, with the definite article *the* before it, becomes a substantive, and must have the preposition *of* after it: as, "These are the rules of grammar, by the observing of which, you may avoid mistakes." It would not be proper to say, "by the observing which," nor, "by observing of which," but the phrase, without either article or preposition, would be right: as, "by observing which." The article *a* or *an*, has the same effect: as, "This was a betraying of the trust reposed in him."

This rule arises from the nature and idiom of our language, and from as plain a principle as any on which it is founded; namely, that a word which has the article before it, and the possessive preposition *of* after it, must be a noun: and, if a noun, it ought to follow the construction of a noun, and not to have the regimen of a verb. It is the participial termination of this sort of words that is apt to deceive us, and make us treat them as if they were of an amphibious species, partly nouns and partly verbs.

The following are a few examples of the violation of this rule. "He was sent to prepare the way by preaching of repentance;" it ought to be, "by *the* preaching of repentance;" or, "by preaching repentance." "By the continual mortifying our corrupt affections;" it should be, "by the continual mortifying *of*," or, "by continually mortifying our corrupt affections." "They laid out themselves towards the

† See Key to the English Exercises, Eleventh Edit. Rule xiii. The Note.

advanc
ing an
rives,

capacit

hling of

ought to

A ph

tiple a

in every

conveye

sition.

of the pl

"He ex

sopher."

mony or

for the ot

are perfec

2. The

specting t

applicable

similarly a

of the rule

lecting of

their neglec

we substitu

upon Tyro

struction so

better to ex

other form

and error w

"on ob

mark may

on to be fo

ended for a

ble, on ac

3, 77, 171-

g at all"
performed
ation." †

the verbs
am weary
The tu-

the article;
cle the be-
ne preposi-
mmar, by
takes." It
g which,"
e, without
a, " by ob-
ame effect;
in him."

of our lan-
which it is
article be-
must be a
construction
th. It is the
that is apt to
were of an
verbs.

ation of this
reaching of
of repent-
e continual
by the con-
fusing our
towards the

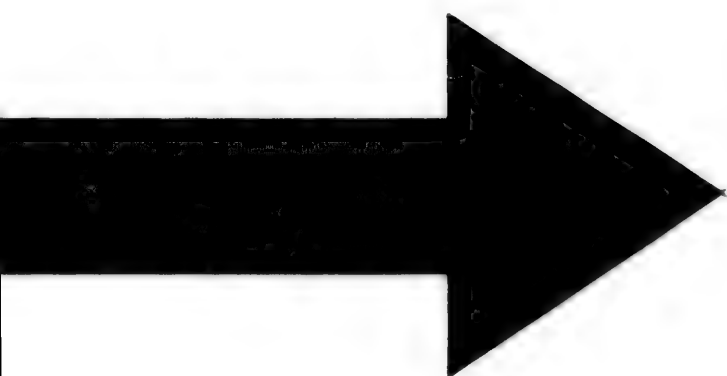
The Note.

advancing and promoting the good of it;" "towards advancing and promoting the good." "It is an overvaluing ourselves, to reduce every thing to the narrow measure of our capacities;" "It is overvaluing ourselves," or, "an overvaluing of ourselves." "Keeping of one day in seven," &c. It ought to be, '*the keeping of one day*;' or, '*keeping one day*.'

A phrase in which the article precedes the present participle and the possessive preposition follows it, will not in every instance, convey the same meaning, as would be conveyed by the participle without the article and preposition. "He expressed the pleasure he had in the hearing of the philosopher," is capable of a different sense from, "He expressed the pleasure he had in hearing the philosopher." When, therefore, we wish, for the sake of harmony or variety, to substitute one of these phraseologies for the other, we should previously consider whether they are perfectly similar in the sentiments they convey.

2. The same observations which have been made respecting the effect of the article and participle, appear to be applicable to the pronoun and participle, when they are similarly associated: as, "Much depends on *their observing* of the rule, and error will be the consequence of *their neglecting* of it," instead of "*their observing* the rule, and *their neglecting* it." We shall perceive this more clearly, if we substitute a noun for the pronoun: as, "Much depends upon Tyro's *observing* of the rule," &c. But, as this construction sounds rather harshly, it would, in general, be better to express the sentiment in the following, or some other form: "Much depends on the *rule's being observed*; and error will be the consequence *in its being neglected*:" or—"on *observing* the rule; and—of *neglecting* it." This remark may be applied to several other modes of expression to be found in this work; which, though they are contended for as strictly correct, are not always the most eligible, on account of their unpleasant sound. See pages 6, 77, 171—175.





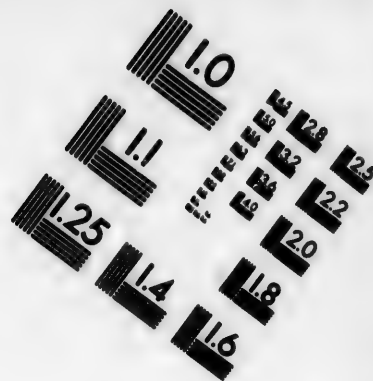
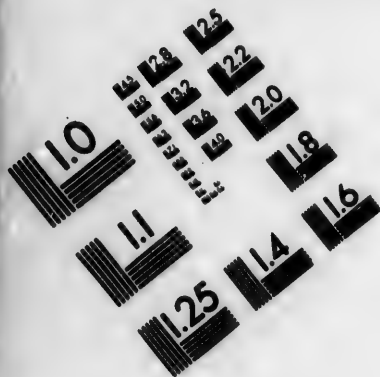
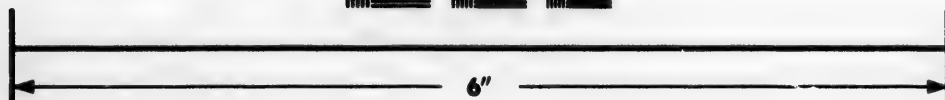
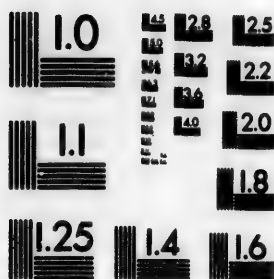


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 672-4503

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

We sometimes meet with expressions like the following: "In forming of his sentence, the young student." "From collecting of names, he composed the poem." But this is incorrect language: for prepositions do not, like articles and pronouns, convert the participle itself into the nature of a substantive: as we have shown above in the phrase, "By observing which." And yet the participle with its adjuncts may be considered as a substantive phrase in the objective case, governed by the preposition or verb, as proposed or understood: as "By promising much, and performing but little, we become derisible." "He studied to avoid exposing himself too severely."

3. As the perfect participle and the imperfect tense are sometimes different in their form, care must be taken that they be not indiscriminately used. It is frequently said, "He begun," for "he began;" "he run," for "he ran;" "He drunk," for "he drank," the participle being here used instead of the imperfect tense: and much more frequently the imperfect tense instead of the participle: as "I had wrote," for "I had written;" "I was chose," for "I was chosen;" "I have eat," for "I have eaten;" "His words were interweave with sighs;" "were interwoven;" "He would have spoke;" "spoken;" "He hath been witness to his faithful servants;" "borne;" "By," he means he over-run his guide;" "over-ran;" "The sun has rose;" "risen;" "His constitution has been greatly shock, but his mind is too strong to be shock by such causes;" "shaken;" in both places. "They were verses wrote on glass;" "written;" "Philosophers have often mistook the source of true happiness;" it ought to be "mistaken."

The participle ending in *ed* is often improperly contracted by changing *ed* into *t*: as, "In good behaviour, he is not surpass by any pupil of the school;" "She was much distress;" They ought to be "surpassed;" "distressed."

RULE XV.

Adverbs, though they have no government of case,

to be, &c. require an appropriate situation in the sentence, viz. for the most part, before adjectives, after verbs active or neuter, and frequently between the auxiliary and the verb &c.; "He made a *very* notable discovery; he spoke *unaffectedly* and *forcibly*, and was *universally* heard by the whole assembly."

A few instances of erroneous positions of adverbs may serve to illustrate the rule. "He must not expect to find study agreeable *always*;" "always agreeable." "We always find them ready when we want them;" "we find them *always* ready;" &c. "Disertations on the prophecies which have remarkably been fulfilled;" "which have been *remarkably*." "Instead of looking contemptuously down on the crooked in mind or in body, we should look up thankfully to God, who hath made us better;" "instead of looking down *contemptuously*, &c. we should *thankfully* look up;" &c. "If thou art blessed naturally with a good memory, continually exercise it;" "*naturally* blessed," &c. "exercise it *continually*."

Sometimes the adverb is placed with propriety before the verb, or at some distance after it; sometimes between the two auxiliaries; and sometimes after them both; as in the following examples. "Vice *always* creeps by degrees, and insensibly twines around us those concealed fetters, by which we are at last *completely* bound." "He encouraged the English Bishops to carry their opposition *farther*." "They compelled him to declare that he would abjure the realm *for ever*;" instead of, "to carry farther their opposition;" and "to abjure for ever the realm." "He has *generally* been reckoned an honest man." "The book may *always* be had at such a place;" in preference to "has been generally;" and "may be always." "These rules will be *clearly* understood, after they have been *diligently* studied;" are preferable to, "These rules will *clearly* be understood, after they have *diligently* been studied."

From the preceding remarks and examples, it appears that no exact and determinate rule can be given for the placing of adverbs, on all occasions. The general rule may be of considerable use; but the only law and propriety of the phrase, are the things which ought to be chiefly regarded.

The adverb *there* is often used as an expletive, or as a word that adds nothing to the sense; in which case it precedes the verb and the nominative noun: as, "There is a person at the door;" "There were many thieves in the house;" which would be as well, or better, expressed by saying, "A person is at the door;" "Some thieves are in the house." Sometimes, it is made use of to give a small degree of emphasis to the sentence: as, "There was a man sent from God, whose name was John." When it is applied in its strict sense, it principally follows the verb and the nominative case: as, "The man stands *there*."

1. The adverb *never* generally precedes the verb; as, "I never was *there*;" "He never comes at a proper time." When an auxiliary is used, it is placed indifferently, either before or after this adverb: as, "He was never seen (or never was seen) to laugh *from* that time." *Never* seems to be improperly used in the following passages: "Ask me never so much dowry and gift;" "If I make my hands never so clean;" "Charm be never so wisely." The word "*ever*" would be more suitable in the sense.

2. In imitation of the French idiom, the adverb of place *where* is often used instead of the pronoun relative and a preposition. "They framed a protestation *where* they repeated all their former claims;" i. e. "in which they repeated." "The king was still determind to run forwards, in the same course *where* he was already, by his precipitate career, too fatally advanced;" i. e. "in which he was." But it would be better to avoid this mode of expression.

The adverbs *hence*, *thence*, and *whence*, imply a preposition; for they signify, "from this place, from that place, from what place." It seems, therefore, strictly speaking, to

Ru
be
sup
with
cler
the
so o
of it
T
plied
ther
rode
ther
subst
regul
trist
the w
is wor
But d
The
word
some
they a

Tw
are eq
perci
langu
is, "it

It is
tive, th
tence:
word,
pleasing
Some

be improper to join a preposition with them, being superfluous: as, "This is the leviathan, from whence the wits of our age are said to borrow their weapons;" "An ancient author prophesies from hence." But the origin of these words is little attended to, and the preposition *from* so often used in construction with them, that the omission of it, in many cases, would seem stiff, and be disagreeable.

The adverbs *here, there, where*, are often improperly applied to verbs signifying motion, instead of the adverbs *hither, thither, whither*: as, "He came *here* hastily;" "They rode *there* with speed." They should be, "He came *hither*;" "They rode *thither*;" &c.

We have some examples of adverbs being used for substantives: "In 1687, he erected it into a community of regulars, since *when*, it has begun to increase in those countries as a religious order;" i. e. "since *which time*;" "A little while and I shall not see you;" i. e. "a *short time*;" "It is worth their while;" i. e. "it deserves their time and pains." But this use of the word rather suits familiar than more staid style. The same may be said of the phrase, "To do a thing *anyhow*;" i. e. "in any manner," or "*somehow*;" i. e. "in some manner." "Somehow, worthy as these people are, they are under the influence of prejudice."

RULE XVI.

Two negatives, in English, destroy one another, or are equivalent to an affirmative: as, "Nor did they not perceive him;" that is, "they did perceive him." "His language, though elegant, is not ungrammatical;" that is, "it is grammatical."

It is better to express an affirmation, by a regular affirmative, than by two separate negatives, as in the former sentence: but when one of the negatives is joined to another word, as in the latter sentence, the two negatives form a pleasing and delicate variety of expression.

Some writers have improperly employed two negatives

of one, as in the following instances: "I never did
speak of being good, for that was new;" "nor shall I new."
"Never an imitator grew up to his author;" "never a mimic,"
etc. "I cannot be so much as allow that what his argument
must prove;" "I cannot by any means," &c. or, "I can by
no means." "Nor let no comforter approach me;" "nor let
any comforter," &c. "Not is danger ever apprehended in
such a government, as now that we commonly apprehend
danger from thunder, or earthquakes." It should be, "any
dare." "Ariosto, Tasso, Galileo, no more than Raphael,
were not born in republica." "Neither Ariosto, Tasso, nor
Galileo, any more than Raphael, was born in a republic."

RULE XVII.

Prepositions govern the objective case: "I have
heard a good character of her;" "From her that is needy
turn not away;" "A word to the wise is sufficient for
them;" "We may be good and happy without riches."

The following are examples of the nominative case being
used instead of the objective. "Who servest thou under?"
"Who do you speak to?" "We are still much at a loss
who civil power belongs to?" "Who dost thou ask for?"
"Associate not with those who none can speak well of."
In all these places it ought to be "whom." See Note 1.

The prepositions *to* and *for* are often understood, chiefly
before the pronouns: as, "Give me the book;" "Get me some
paper;" that is, *to* me; *for* me. "Write me;" &c. *to* me.
"He was banished England;" &c. "from England."

1. The preposition is often separated from the relative
which it governs: as, "Whom wilt thou give it to?" in-
stead of, "To whom wilt thou give it?" "He is an author
whom I am much delighted with;" "The world is too po-
lite to shock authors with a truth, which generally their
booksellers are the first that inform them of." This is an
idiom to which our language is strongly inclined; it pre-
vails in common conversation, and suits very well with the

BRITISH ARCHIVES OF NEWSPAPERS
HALIFAX N. B.

familiar style in writing: but the placing of the preposition before the relative, is more graceful, as well as more perspicuous, and agrees much better with the solemn and elevated style.

2. Some writers separate the preposition from its noun, in order to connect different prepositions with the same noun: as, "We suppose the souls and planets to be effluvia of the etherial matter themselves." This manner in the familiar or the solemn style, is always inelegant, and should generally be avoided. In forms of law, and the like, where fulness and exactness of expression must take place of every other consideration, it may be admitted.

3. Different relations, and different senses, must be expressed by different prepositions, though in conjunction with the same verb or adjective. Thus we say, "to converse *with* a person, *upon* a subject, *in* a house, &c." We also say, "We are disappointed *of* a thing" when we cannot get it, and "disappointed *in* it," when we have it, and find it does not answer our expectations. But two different prepositions must be improper in the same construction, and in the same sentence: as, "The combat *between* thirty French *against* twenty English."

In some cases, it is difficult to say, to which of two prepositions the preference is to be given, as both are used promiscuously, and custom has not decided in favour of either of them. We say, "Expert *of*," and "Expert *in* a thing." "Expert *at* finding a remedy for his mistakes," "Expert *in* deception."

When prepositions are subjoined to nouns, they are generally the same that are subjoined to the verbs from which the nouns are derived: as, "A compliance *with*," "to comply *with*," "A die, *cast* *in* tyranny," "disposed *to* tyrannize."

4. As an accurate and appropriate use of the preposition is of great importance, we shall select a considerable number of examples of impropriety, in the application of this part of speech.

any diminution to their greatness, or derogation to their sufficiency, to rely upon counsel;" "diminution of," and "derogation from."

3d, With respect to the prepositions *with* and *upon*.—"Reconciling himself with the king." "Those things which have the greatest resemblance with each other, frequently differ the most." "That such rejection should be consonant with our common nature." "Conformable with," &c. "The history of Peter is agreeable with the sacred texts." In all the above instances, it should be, "*to*," instead of "*with*." "It is a use that perhaps I should not have thought on;" "thought of." "A greater quantity may be taken from the heap, without making any sensible alteration upon it;" "in it." "Intrusted to persons on whom the parliament could confide;" "in whom." "He was made much on at Argos;" "much of." "If policy can prevail upon force;" "over force." "I do likewise dissent with the examiner;" "from."

4th, With respect to the prepositions *in*, *from*, &c.—"They should be informed in some parts of his character;" "about;" or "concerning." Upon such occasions as fell into their cognizance;" "under." "That variety of factions into which we are still engaged;" "in which." "To restore myself into the favour;" "to the favour." Could he have profited from repeated experiences;" "by." From seems to be superfluous after *forbear*: as, "He could not forbear from appointing the pope;" &c. "A strict observance after times and fashions;" "of times." "The character which we may now value ourselves by drawing;" "upon drawing." "Neither of them shall make me swerve out of the path;" "from the path." "Ye blind guides, which strain at a gnat, and swallow a camel;" it ought to be, "which strain out a gnat, or, take a gnat out of the liquor by straining it." The impropriety of the preposition has wholly destroyed the meaning of the phrase.

The preposition *among* generally implies a number of

things. It cannot be properly used in conjunction with the word *every*, which is in the singular number : as, "Which is found among every species of liberty ;" "The opinion seems to gain ground among every body."

1. The preposition *to* is made use of before nouns of place, when they follow verbs and participles of motion : as, "I went *to* London ;" "I am going *to* town." But the preposition *at* is generally used after the neuter verb *to be* : as, "I have been *at* London ;" "I was *at* the place appointed ;" "I shall be *at* Paris." We likewise say : "He touched, arrived *at* any place." The preposition *in* is set before countries, cities, and large towns : as, "He lives *in* France, *in* London, or *in* Birmingham." But before villages, single houses, and cities which are in distant countries, *at* is used ; as, "He lives *at* Hackney ;" "He resides *at* Montpellier."

It is a matter of indifference with respect to the pronoun one another, whether the preposition *of* be placed between the two parts of it, or before them both. We may say, "They were jealous *of* one another ;" or, "They were jealous one of another ;" but perhaps the former is better.

Participles are frequently used as prepositions : as, *excepting*, *respecting*, *touching*, *concerning*, *according*. "They were all in fault *except* or *excepting* him."

RULE XVIII.

Conjunctions connect the same moods and tenses of verbs, and cases of nouns and pronouns : as, "Candour *to be approved and practised*." "If thou sincerely *desire*, and earnestly *pursue* virtue, she *will* assuredly be *found* by thee, and *prove* a rich reward ;" "The master *appointed her and me* to write ;" "He *and she* were school-fellows."

A few examples of inaccuracy respecting this rule may further display its utility. "If he *prefer* a virtuous life, and

† This rule refers only to nouns and pronouns, which have the same bearing or relation, when joined to other parts of the sentence.

insincere in his professions, he will succeed;" "If he pre-
fers." "To deride the miseries of the unhappy, is inhu-
man; and wanting compassion towards them, is unchris-
tian;" "and to want compassion." "The parliament ad-
dressed the king, and has been prorogued the same day;"
and was prorogued." "His wealth and him bid adieu to
each other;" "and he." He entreated us, my comrade
and I, to live harmoniously;" "comrade and me." "My
sister and her were on good terms;" "and she." We often
overlook the blessings which are in our possession, and are
reaching after those which are out of our reach." It ought
to be, "and should after."

1. Conjunctions are, indeed, frequently made to connect
different moods and tenses of verbs: but in these instances
the nominative must generally, if not always, be repeated,
which is not necessary, though it may be done, under the
construction to which the rule refers. We may say, "He
lives temperately, and he should live temperately;" "He
may reform, but he will not continue;" "She was proud,
though she is now humble;" but it is obvious, that in such
cases, the nominative ought to be repeated; and that, by
this means, the latter members of these sentences are ren-
dered not so strictly dependent on the preceding, as those
are which come under the rule. When, in the progress of
a sentence, we pass from the affirmative to the negative
form, or from the negative to the affirmative, the subject or
nominative is always repeated; as, 'He is rich, but he is not
respectable.' 'He is not rich, but he is respectable.' There
appears to be, in general, equal reason for repeating the no-
minative, and returning the subject, when the course of the
sentence is diverted by a change of the mood or tense. The
following sentences may therefore be improved. 'Anger
glances into the breast of a wise man, but will rest only in the
bosom of fools;' 'but rests only;' or, 'but it will rest only.'
'Virtue is praised by many, and would be desired also, if
her worth were really known;' 'and she would.' 'The

world begins to recede, and will soon disappear; and it will.' See the Octavo Grammar, RULE XVIII.

RULE XIX.

Some conjunctions require the indicative, some the subjunctive mood, after them. It is a general rule, that when something contingent or doubtful is implied, the subjunctive ought to be used: as, "*If I were to write, he would not regard it;*" "*He will not be pardoned, unless he repent.*"

Conjunctions that are of a positive and absolute nature require the indicative mood. "*As virtue advances, so vice recedes.*" "*He is healthy, because he is temperate.*"

The conjunctions, *if, though, unless, except, whether, &c.* generally require the subjunctive mood after them: as, "*If thou be afflicted, repine not;*" "*Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him;*" "*He cannot be clean, unless he wash himself;*" "*No power, except it were given from above;*" "*Whether it were I or they, so we preach.*" But even these conjunctions, when the sentence does not imply doubt, admit of the indicative: as, "*Though he is poor, he is contented.*"—See subj. mood, p. 75, and pages 202, 203.

The following example may, in some measure, serve to illustrate the distinction between the subjunctive and the indicative moods. "*Though he were divinely inspired, and spoke therefore as the oracles of God, with supreme authority; though he were endued with supernatural powers, and could, therefore, have confirmed the truth of what he uttered, by miracles; yet, in compliance with the way in which human nature and reasonable creatures are usually wrought upon, he reasoned.*" That our Saviour was divinely inspired, and endued with supernatural powers, are positions that are here taken for granted, as not admitting the least doubt; they would therefore have been better expressed in the indicative mood: "*Though he was di-*

vinely inspired; though he was endued with supernatural powers." The subjunctive is used in the like improper manner in the following example: "Though he were a son, yet learned he obedience, by the things which he suffered." But, in a similar passage, the indicative, with great propriety, is employed to the same purpose; "Though he was rich, yet for your sakes he became poor."

1. *Let*, and *that*, annexed to a command proceeding, necessarily require the subjunctive mood: as, "Have not sleep, *lest* thou come to poverty;" "Reprove not a scorner, *lest* he hate thee;" "Take heed *that* thou speak not to Jacob."

If with *but* following it, when futurity is denoted, requires the subjunctive mood: as, "*If* he *do but* touch the hills, they shall smoke;" "*If* he *be but* discreet," he will succeed." But the indicative ought to be used, on this occasion, when future time is not signified: as, "*If*, in this expression, he *does but* jest, no offence should be taken;" "*If* she *is but* sincere, I am happy." The same distinction applies to the following forms of expression: "If he *do* submit, it will be from necessity;" "Though he *does* submit, he is not convinced;" "If thou *do* not reward this service, he will be discouraged;" "If thou *doest* heartily forgive him, endeavour to forget the offence."

2. In the following instances, the conjunction *that*, expressed or understood, seems to be improperly accompanied with the subjunctive mood. "So much she dreaded his tyranny, *that* the fate of her friend she *dare* not lament." "He reasoned so artfully that his friends would listen, and think [*that*] he *were* not wrong."

3. The same conjunction governing both the indicative and the subjunctive mood, in the same sentence, and in the same circumstances, seems to be a great impropriety: as in these instances. "*If* there *be but* one body of legislators, it is no better than a tyranny; *if* there *are* only two, there will want a casting voice." "*If* a man *have* a hundred sheep, and one of them *is* gone astray," &c.

4. Almost all the irregularities, in the construction of any language, have arisen from the ellipsis of some words, which were originally inserted in the sentence, and made it regular; and it is probable, that this has generally been the case with respect to the conjunctive form of words, now in use; which will appear from the following examples: "We shall overtake him though he run;" that is, "though he *should* run;" "Unless he act prudently, he will not accomplish his purpose;" that is, "unless he *shall* act prudently." "If he succeed and obtain his end, he will not be the happier for it;" that is, "If he *should* succeed and *should* obtain his end." These remarks and examples are designed to show the original of many of our present conjunctive forms of expression; and to enable the student to examine the propriety of using them, by tracing the words in question to their proper origin and ancient connexions. But it is necessary to be more particular on this subject, and therefore we shall add a few observations respecting it.

That part of the verb which grammarians call the present tense of the subjunctive mood, has a future signification. This is effected by varying the terminations of the second and third persons singular of the indicative; as will be evident from the following examples: "If thou *prosper*, thou shouldst be thankful;" "Unless he *study* more closely, he will never be learned." Some writers however would express these sentiments without those variations; "If thou *prosperest*," &c. "Unless he *studies*," &c.; and as there is great diversity of practice in this point, it is proper to offer the learners a few remarks, to assist them in distinguishing the right application of these different forms of expression. It may be considered as a rule, that the changes of termination are necessary, when these two circumstances concur: 1st, When the subject is of a dubious and contingent nature; and 2d, When the verb has a reference to future time. In the following sentences, both these circumstances will be found to unite: "If thou *injure* another, thou wilt hurt thy-

Rule 19.
of any
la, which
e regu-
the case
w in use ;
We shall
ne should
compish
tly." " If
applier for
obtain his
I to show
forms of
the pro-
cession to
it is ne-
therefore
the pre-
mication.
he second
ill be evi-
per; thou
lovely. he
would ex-
" If thou
as there is
r to offer
nguishlag
expression.
of termi-
s concur:
gent na-
ture time.
es will be
hurt thy

Rule 19.)

SYNTAX.

109

self;" "He has a hard heart; and if he *continue* impenitent, he must suffer;" "He will maintain his principles, though he lose his estate;" "Whether he *succeed* or not, his intention is laudable;" "If he *be* not prosperous, he will not repine;" "If a man *smile* his servant, and he *die*," &c. *Exod. xxi. 20.* In all these examples, the things signified by the verbs are uncertain, and refer to future time. But in the instances which follow, future time is not referred to; and therefore a different construction takes place: "If thou *livest* virtuously, thou art happy;" "Unless he *means* what he says, he is doubly faithless;" "If he *allows* the excellence of virtue, he does not regard her precepts;" "Though he *seems* to be simple and artless, he has deceived us;" "Whether virtue is better than rank or wealth, admits not of any dispute;" "If thou *believest* with all thy heart, thou mayst," &c. *Acts viii. 37.*—There are many sentences, introduced by conjunctions, in which neither contingency nor futurity is denoted: as, "Though he *excels* her in knowledge, she far exceeds him in virtue." "I have no doubt of his principles: but if he *believes* the truths of religion, he does not act according to them."

That both the circumstances of contingency and futurity are necessary, as tests of the propriety of altering the terminations, will be evident, by inspecting the following examples; which show that there are instances in which neither of the circumstances alone implies the other. In the three examples following, contingency is denoted, but not futurity. "If he *thinks* as he speaks, he may safely be trusted." "If he *is* now disposed to it, I will perform the operation." "He acts uprightly, unless he *deceives* me." In the following sentences, futurity is signified, but not contingency. "As soon as the sun *sets*, it will be cooler." "As the autumn *advances*, these birds will gradually emigrate."

It appears, from the tenor of the examples adduced, that the rules above mentioned may be extended to assert, that in cases wherein contingency and futurity do not concur, it

is not proper to turn the verb from its signification of present time, nor to vary its form or termination. The verb would then be in the indicative mood, whatever conjunctions might attend it.—If these rules, which seem to form the true distinction between the subjunctive and the indicative moods in this tense, were adopted and established in practice, we should have, on this point, a principle of decision simple and precise, and readily applicable to every case that might occur.—It will, doubtless, sometimes happen, that, on this occasion, as well as on many other occasions, a strict adherence to grammatical rules, would render the language stiff and formal: but when cases of this sort occur, it is better to give the expression a different turn, than to violate grammar for the sake of ease, or even of elegance. See *Rule 14. Note 2.*

5. On the form of the auxiliaries in the compound tenses of the subjunctive mood, it seems proper to make a few observations. Some writers express themselves in the perfect tense as follows: "If thou *have* determined, we must submit:" "Unless he *have* consented, the writing will be void:" but we believe that few authors of critical sagacity write in this manner. The proper form seems to be, "If thou *hast* determined; unless he *has* consented;" &c. conformably to what we generally meet with in the Bible: "I have surnamed thee, and thou *hast* not known me." *Isaiah xlv. 4, 5.* "What is the hope of the hypocrite, though he *hath* gained," &c. *Job xl. v. 3.* See also *Note XVIII. 4.*

6. In the pluperfect and future tenses, we sometimes meet with such expressions as these; "If thou *had* applied thyself diligently, thou wouldst have reaped the advantage;" "Unless thou *shall* speak the whole truth, we cannot determine;" "If thou *will* undertake the business, there is little doubt of success." This mode of expressing the auxiliaries does not appear to be warranted by the general practice of correct writers. They should be *hadst*, *shall*, and *wilt*: and we find them used in this form, in the sacred Scriptures.

"If thou *hadst* known," &c. *Mat. xix. 47.* "If thou *hadst* been here," &c. *Joh. xi. 21.* "If thou *wilt*, thou canst make me clean," *Mat. viii. 2.* See also, *2 Sam. ii. 27. Mat. xvii. 3.*

7. The second person singular of the imperfect tense in the subjunctive mood, is also very frequently varied in its termination: as, "If thou *lovest* him truly, thou *wouldst* obey him;" "Though thou *didst* conform, thou *hast* gained nothing by it." This variation, however, appears to be improper. Our present version of the Scriptures, which we again refer to, as a good grammatical authority in points of this nature, decides against it. "If thou *knewest* the gift," &c. *John iv. 10.* "If thou *didst* receive it, why dost thou *glory*?" &c. *1 Cor. iv. 7.* See also *Dan. v. 22.* But it is proper to remark, that the form of the verb *to be*, when used subjunctively in the imperfect tense, is indeed very considerably and properly varied from that which it has in the imperfect of the indicative mood: as the learner will perceive by turning to the conjugation of that verb.

8. It may not be superfluous, also to observe, that the auxiliaries of the potential mood, when applied to the subjunctive, do not change the termination of the second person singular. We properly say, "If thou *mayest* or *canst* go;" "Though thou *mightest* live;" "Unless thou *couldst* read;" "If thou *wouldst* learn; and not "If thou *may* or *can* go," &c. It is sufficient, on this point, to adduce the authorities of Johnson and Lowth; "If thou *shouldst* go," *Johnson.* "If thou *mayest, mightest, or couldst* love," *Lowth.* Some authors think, that when *that* expresses the motive or end, the termination of these auxiliaries should be varied: as, "I advise thee, *that* thou *may* beware;" "He checked thee, *that* thou *should* not presume;" but there does not appear to be any ground for this exception. If the expression of "condition, doubt, contingency," &c. does not warrant a change in the form of these auxiliaries, why should they have it, when a motive or end is expressed? The translators of the Scriptures do not appear to have made

the distinction contended for. 'Thou buildest the wall, that thou mayst be their king,' *Neh.* vi. 8. 'There is forgiveness with thee, that thou mayst be feared,' *Psa.* cxxx. 4.

From the preceding observations under this rule, it appears, that with respect to what is termed the present tense of any verb, when the circumstances of contingency and futurity concur, it is proper to vary the terminations of the second and third persons singular; that without the concurrence of those circumstances, the terminations should not be altered; and that the verb and the auxiliaries of the three past tenses, and the auxiliaries of the first future, undergo no alterations whatever: except the *imperfect* of the verb *to be*, which, in cases denoting contingency, is varied in all the persons of the singular number. See p. 90. The Note.

After perceiving what has been advanced on this subject, it will be natural for the student to inquire, what is the extent of the subjunctive mood? Some grammarians think it extends only to what is called the present tense of verbs generally, under the circumstances of contingency and futurity, and to the imperfect tense of the verb *to be*, when it denotes contingency, &c: because in these tenses only, the form of the verb admits of variation; and they suppose that it is variation merely which constitutes the distinction of moods. It is the opinion of other grammarians, (in which opinion we concur,) that, besides the two cases just mentioned, all verbs in the three past, and the two future tenses, are in the subjunctive mood, when they denote contingency or uncertainty, though they have not any change of termination; and that, when contingency is not signified, the verb, through all these five tenses, belongs to the indicative mood, whatever conjunction may attend it. They think, that the definition and nature of the subjunctive mood, have no reference to change of termination, but that they refer merely to the manner of the being, action, or passion, signified by the verb; and that the subjunctive mood may as properly exist

Rule

witho

has n

The d

be th

certain

nation

These

sentim

mood.

—80. 8

9. S

belong

1st, 2

yet for

was me

2d, W

not tell.

3d, E

myself.

4th, A

compass

5th, A

She is a

6th, A

As the s

† We have

lans, respect

no such mo

variations of t

large, and

riters on Er

ness, at lea

ven, with on

ve, two form

will perform

notes both c

tion," that is

ve mood, elai

gular; of bel

re; and of not

to its simplic

without a variation of the verb, as the infinitive mood, which has no terminations different from those of the indicative. The decision of this point may not, by some grammarians, be thought of much consequence. But the rules which ascertain the propriety of varying, or not varying, the terminations of the verb, will certainly be deemed important. These rules may be well observed, without a uniformity of sentiment respecting the nature and limits of the subjunctive mood. For further remarks on the subject, see pages 78—80. 84—86. 102—104. 108—111†.

9. Some conjunctions have correspondent conjunctions belonging to them, either expressed or understood: as,

1st, *Though*,—*yet*, *nevertheless*: as, ‘*Though* he was rich, *yet* for our sakes he became poor.’ *Though* powerful, he was meek.

2d, *Whether*—*or*: as, ‘*Whether* he will go or not, I cannot tell.’

3d, *Either*—*or*: as, ‘I will *either* send it, or bring it myself.’

4th, *Neither*—*nor*: as, ‘*Neither* he nor I am able to compass it.’

5th, *As*—*as*: expressing a comparison of equality: as, ‘She is *as* amiable *as* her sister; and *as* much respected.’

6th, *As*—*so*: expressing a comparison of equality: as, ‘*As* the stars, *so* shall thy seed be.’

† We have stated, for the student's information, the different opinions of grammarians, respecting the English Subjunctive Mood: First, that which supposes there is no such mood in our language: Secondly, that which extends it no farther than the variations of the verb extend: Thirdly, that which we have adopted, and explained at large, and which, in general, corresponds with the views of the most approved writers on English Grammar. We may add a Fourth opinion, which appears to possess, at least, much plausibility. This opinion admits the arrangement we have given, with one variation, namely, that of assigning to the first tense of the subjunctive mood, two forms: 1st, that which simply denotes contingency: as, “If he *desires* it, *will* perform the operation” that is, “If he *now* desires it.” Secondly, that which denotes both contingency and futurity: as, “If he *desires* it, *I will* perform the operation” that is, “If he *should* *desire* it.” This last theory of the subjunctive mood, claims the merit of rendering the whole system of the moods consistent and regular; of being more conformable than any other, to the definition of the subjunctive; and of not referring to the indicative mood forms of expression, which ill accord with its simplicity and nature. Perhaps this theory will bear a strict examination.

7th, *As—so* : expressing a comparison of quality : as, '*As the one dieth, so dieth the other.*' '*As he reads, they read.*'

8th, *So—as* : with a verb expressing a comparison of quality : as, '*To see thy glory, so as I have seen thee in the sanctuary.*'

9th, *So—as* : with a negative and an adjective expressing a comparison of quantity : as, '*Pompey was not so great a general as Caesar, nor so great a man.*'

10th, *So—that* : expressing a consequence : as, '*He was so fatigued, that he could scarcely move.*'

The conjunctions *or* and *nor* may often be used, with nearly equal propriety. 'The king, whose character was not sufficiently vigorous, *nor* decisive, assented to the measure.' In this sentence, *or* would perhaps have been better: but, in general, *nor* seems to repeat the negation in the former part of the sentence, and therefore gives more emphasis to the expression.

10. Conjunctions are often improperly used, both singly and in pairs. The following are examples of this impropriety. 'The relations are so uncertain, as that they require a great deal of examination : it should be, '*that* they require,' &c. 'There was no man so sanguine, who did not apprehend some ill consequences : it ought to be, '*So* sanguine as not to apprehend,' &c.; or, '*no* man, how sanguine soever, who did not,' &c. 'To trust in him is no more but to acknowledge his power.' 'This is no other but the gate of paradise.' In both these instances, *but* should be *than*. 'We should sufficiently weigh the objects of our hope; whether they are such as we may reasonably expect from them what they propose,' &c. It ought to be, '*that* we may reasonably,' &c. 'The duke had not behaved with that loyalty as he ought to have done ;' '*with which* he ought.' 'In the order as they lie in his preface.' it should be, '*in* order as they lie ;' or, '*in the order in which* they lie.' 'Such sharp replies that cost him his life ;' '*as* cost him,' &c. 'If he were truly that scarecrow, as he is now commonly

y: as, 'for
they read.'
parison of
en then in

expressing
ot so great

a, 'He was

used, with
racter was
to the mea-
een better:
in the fore-
re emphasis

both singly
this impro-
hat they re-
, 'that they
who did not
be, 'So san-
ow sanguine
no more but
but the gate
uld be *than*.
our hope;
expect from
that we may
ed with that
he ought'
ould be, 'in
lie.' 'Such
am,' &c. 'If
commonly

pointed,' 'such a scarecrow,' &c. 'I wish I could do that
justice to his memory, to oblige the painters,' &c.; 'do such
justice as to oblige,' &c.

There is a peculiar neatness in a sentence beginning with
the conjunctive form of a verb. 'Were there no difference,
there would be no choice.'

A double conjunctive, in two correspondent clauses of a
sentence, is sometimes made use of: as, 'had he done this,
he *had* escaped'; 'Had the limitations on the prerogative
been, in his time, quite fixed and certain, his integrity *had*
made him regard as sacred, the boundaries of the consti-
tution.' The sentence in the common form would have read
thus: 'If the limitations on the prerogative had been, &c.,
his integrity would have made him regard, &c.'

The particle *as*, when it is connected with the pronoun
such, has the force of a relative pronoun: as, 'Let *such* as
presume to advise others, look well to their own conduct,'
which is equivalent to, 'Let *them who* presume,' &c. But
when used by itself, this particle is to be considered a
conjunction, or perhaps as an adverb. See the Key.

Our language wants a conjunction adapted to familiar
style, equivalent to *notwithstanding*. The word *but* often
seems to be too low. 'The wind was in the mouth of every
one, but, *notwithstanding*, the wildest may still be seduced.'
In regard to a foreign and antiquated conjunction, I should
do much better in the following sentence. It cannot be
otherwise, in regard to the French prosody differs from
that of every other language.'

The word *except* is far preferable to *other than*. 'Ad-
mission of no effectual cure other than amputation.' *Except*
is also to be preferred to *but*. 'They were happy all
but the stranger.'

In the two following phrases, the conjunction *as* is im-
properly omitted; 'Which nobody presumes, or is so dan-
gerous, to hope.' 'I must, however, be so just, to own'

The conjunction *that* is often properly omitted, and understood; as, 'I beg you would come to me;' 'See that do it not;' instead of 'that you would,' 'that thou do.' But in the following and many similar phrases, this conjunction were much better inserted: 'Yet it is reason the memory of their virtues remain to posterity.' It should be, 'yet it is *just that* the memory,' &c.

RULE XX.

When the qualities of different things are compared, the latter noun or pronoun is not governed by the conjunction *than* or *as*, but agrees with the verb, or is governed by the verb or the preposition, expressed or understood: as, "Thou art wiser *than* I;" that is, "than I am." "They love him more *than* me;" i. e. "more than they loved me." "The sentiment is well expressed by Plato, but much better by Solomon *than* him;" that is, "than by him".

The propriety or impropriety of many phrases, in the preceding as well as in some other forms, may be discovered, by supplying the words that are not expressed, which will be evident from the following instances of common constructions. "He can read better *than* me." He is as good as her. "Whether I be present or no, I *did* this for me." By supplying the words understood in each of these phrases, their impropriety and governing rule will appear: as, 'Better than I can read.' 'As good as she is.' 'Present or not present.' 'I did it.'

By not attending to this rule, many errors have been committed; a number of which is subjoined, as a further caution and direction to the learner. 'Thou art a much greater loser *than* me by his death.' She suffers hourly more *than* me. 'We contributed a third more *than* the Dutch, who were obliged to the same proportion more *than*

King Charles, and more than him, the duke and the popish faction, were at liberty to form new schemes.' 'The drift of all his sermons was, to prepare the Jews for the reception of a prophet mightier than him, and whose shoes he was not worthy to bear.' 'It was not the work of so eminent an author, as him to whom it was first imputed.' 'A stone is heavy, and the sand weighty; but a fool's wrath is heavier than them both.' 'If the king give us leave, we may perform the office as well as them that do.' In these passages it ought to be, *I, we, he, they*, respectively.

When the relative *who* immediately follows *than*, it seems to form an exception to the 20th rule; for in that connexion, the relative must be in the objective case; as, 'Alfred, *than whom*, a greater king never reigned,' &c. 'Beelzebub, *than whom*, Satan excepted, none higher sat,' &c. It is remarkable that in such instances, if the personal pronoun were used, it would be in the nominative case; as, 'A greater king never reigned *than he*,' that is, '*than he was*.' 'Beelzebub, *than he*,' &c.; that is, '*than he sat*.' The phrase *than whom*, is, however, avoided by the best modern writers.

RULE XXI.

To avoid disagreeable repetitions, and to express our ideas in few words, an ellipsis, or omission of some words, is frequently admitted. Instead of saying, 'He was a learned man, he was a wise man, and he was a good man,' we make use of the ellipsis, and say, 'He was a learned, wise, and good man.'

When the omission of words would obscure the sentence, weaken its force, or be attended with an impropriety, they must be expressed. In the sentence, 'We are apt to love who love us,' the word *them* should be supplied. 'A beautiful field and trees,' is not proper language. It should be, 'Beautiful fields and trees; or, 'A beautiful field and fine trees.'

Almost all compounded sentences are more or less elliptical; some examples of which may be seen under the different parts of speech.

1. The ellipsis of the *article* is thus used; 'A man, woman, and child;' that is, 'a man, a woman, and a child.' 'A house and garden;' that is, 'a house and a garden.' 'The sun and moon;' that is, 'the sun and the moon.' 'The day and hour;' that is, 'the day and the hour.' In all these instances, the article being once expressed, the repetition of it becomes unnecessary. There is, however, an exception to this observation, when some peculiar emphasis requires a repetition; as in the following sentence. 'Not only the year, but the day and the hour.' In this case, the ellipsis of the last article would be improper. When a different form of the article is requisite, the article is also properly repeated: as, 'a house and an orchard;' instead of, 'a house and orchard.'

2. The *noun* is frequently omitted in the following manner. 'The laws of God and man;' that is, 'the laws of God and the laws of man.' In some very emphatical expressions, the ellipsis should not be used: as, 'Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God;' which is more emphatical than, 'Christ the power and wisdom of God.'

3. The ellipsis of the *adjective* is used in the following manner. 'A delightful garden and orchard;' that is, 'a delightful garden and a delightful orchard;' 'A little man and woman;' that is, 'A little man and a little woman.' In such elliptical expressions as these, the adjective ought to have exactly the same signification, and to be quite as proper, when joined to the latter substantive as to the former; otherwise the ellipsis should not be admitted.

Sometimes the ellipsis is improperly applied to nouns of different numbers: as, 'A magnificent house and gardens.' In this case it is better to use another adjective; as, 'A magnificent house and fine gardens.'

4. The following is the ellipsis of the *pronoun*. 'I love

and fear him;” that is, “I love him, and I fear him.” “My house and lands;” that is, “my house and my lands.” In these instances the ellipsis may take place with propriety; but if we would be more express and emphatical, it might not be used: as, “His friends and his foes;” “My sons and my daughters.”

In some of the common forms of speech, the relative pronoun is usually omitted: as, “This is the man they love;” instead of, “This is the man *whom* they love.” “These are the goods they bought;” for, “These are the goods *which* they bought.”

In complex sentences, it is much better to have the relative pronoun expressed: as it is more proper to say, “The posture in which I lay,” than, “In the posture I lay:” “The horse on which I rode, fell down;” than “The horse I rode, fell down.”

The antecedent and the relative connect the parts of a sentence together, and, to prevent obscurity and confusion, should answer to each other with great exactness. “We speak that we do know, and testify that we have seen.” Here the ellipsis is manifestly improper, and ought to be supplied: as, “We speak that *which* we do know, and testify that *which* we have seen.”

5. The ellipsis of the *verb* is used in the following instances. “The man was old and crafty;” that is, “the man was old, and the man was crafty.” “She was young, and beautiful, and good;” that is, “She was young, she was beautiful, and she was good.” “Thou art poor, and wretched, and miserable, and blind, and naked.” If we would fill up the ellipsis in the last sentence, *thou art* ought to be repeated before each of the adjectives.

If, in such enumeration, we choose to point out one property above the rest, that property must be placed last, and the ellipsis supplied: as, “She is young and beautiful, and she is good.”

“I went to see and hear him;” that is, “I went to see

and I went to hear him.' In this instance there is not only an ellipsis of the governing verb *I went*, but likewise of the sign of the infinitive mood, which is governed by it.

Do, did, have, had, shall, will, may, might, and the rest of the auxiliaries of the compound tenses, are frequently used alone, to spare the repetition of the verb: as, 'He regards his word, but thou dost not;' i. e. 'dost not regard it.' 'We succeeded, but they did not;' 'did not succeed.' 'I have learned my task, but thou hast not;' 'hast not learned.' 'They must, and they shall be punished;' that is, 'they must be punished.' See the KEY.

6. The ellipsis of the *adverb* is used in the following manner. 'He spoke and acted wisely;' that is, 'He spoke wisely, and he acted wisely.' 'Thrice I went and offered my service;' that is, 'Thrice I went, and thrice I offered my service.'

7. The ellipsis of the *preposition*, as well as of the verb, is seen in the following instances: 'He went into the abbey, halls, and public buildings;' that is, 'he went into the abbey, he went into the halls, and he went into the public buildings.' 'He also went through all the streets and lanes of the city;' that is, 'Through all the streets, and through all the lanes,' &c. 'He spoke to every man and woman there;' that is, 'to every man and to every woman.' 'This day, next month, last year;' that is, 'on this day, in the next month, in the last year;' 'The Lord do that which seemeth him good;' that is, 'which seemeth to him.'

8. The ellipsis of the *conjunction* is as follows: 'They confess the power, wisdom, goodness, and love, of their creator;' i. e. 'the power, and wisdom, and goodness, and love of,' &c. 'Though I love him, I do not flatter him;' that is, 'Though I love him, yet I do not flatter him.'

9. The ellipsis of the *interjection* is not very common; it, however, is sometimes used: as, 'Oh! pity and shame!' that is, 'Oh pity! Oh shame!'

As the ellipsis occurs in almost every sentence in the Ba-

is not only
wise of the
it.

the rest of
iently used
He regards
rd it." "We
"I have
t learned."

it is, "they

owing man-
He spoke
and offered
ce I offered

the verb, is
the abbey,
into the ab-
the public
ts and lanes
through all
man there."
"This day,
in the next
ch seemeth

wa: "They
ve, of their
odness, and
er him, that
common: it,
nd shame!"

e in the Ha

language, numerous examples of it might be given, but only a few more can be admitted here.

In the following instance there is a very considerable one: "He will often argue, that if this part of our trade were well cultivated, we should gain from one nation; and if another, from another;" that is, "He will often argue, that if this part of our trade were well cultivated, we should gain from one nation, and if another part of our trade were well cultivated, we should gain from another nation."

The following instances, though short, contain much of the ellipsis: "Wo is me;" i. e. "wo, it to me." "To let blood;" i. e. "to let out blood." "To let down;" i. e. "to let it fall or slide down." "To walk a mile;" i. e. "to walk through the space of a mile." "To sleep all night;" i. e. "To sleep through all the night." "To go a fishing;" "To go a hunting;" i. e. "to go on a fishing voyage or business;" "to go on a hunting party." "I dine at two o'clock;" i. e. "at two of the clock." "By sea, by land, on shore;" i. e. "By the sea, by the land, on the shore."

10. The examples that follow are produced to show the impropriety of ellipsis in some particular cases. "The land was always possessed, during pleasure, by those intrusted with the command;" it should be, "those persons intrusted;" or, "those *who were* intrusted." "If he had read further, he would have found several of his objections might have been spared:" that is, "he would have found *that* several of his objections," &c. "There is nothing men are more deficient in, than knowing their own characters." It ought to be, "nothing *in which* men;" and, "than *in* knowing." "I scarcely know any part of natural philosophy would yield more variety and use;" it should be, "*which* would yield," &c. "In the temper of mind he was then;" i. e. *in which* he then was." "The little satisfaction and consistency, to be found in most of the systems of divinity I have met with, made me betake myself to the sole reading

of the Scriptures:" It ought to be, "*which are to be found,*" and, "*which I have met with.*" "He desired they might go to the altar together, and jointly return their thanks to whom only they were due;" i. e. "*to him to whom,*" &c.

RULE XXII.

All the parts of a sentence should correspond to each other: a regular and dependent construction, throughout, should be carefully preserved. The following sentence is therefore inaccurate: "He was more beloved, but not so much admired, as Cinthio." It should be, "He was more beloved than Cinthio, but not so much admired."

The first example under this rule, presents a most irregular construction, namely, "He was more beloved *as* Cinthio." The words *more* and *so much*, are very improperly stated as having the same regimen. In correcting such sentences, it is not necessary to supply the latter ellipsis; because it cannot lead to any discordant or improper construction, and the supply would often be harsh or inelegant.—See p. 203.

As the 22d Rule comprehends all the preceding rules, it may, at the first view, appear to be too general to be useful. But by ranging under it a number of sentences peculiarly constructed, we shall perceive, that it is calculated to ascertain the true grammatical construction of many modes of expression, which none of the particular rules can sufficiently explain.

"This dedication may serve for almost any book, that has, is, or shall be published." It ought to be, "that has been, or shall be published." "He was guided by interests always different, sometimes contrary to, those of the community;" different *from*;" or, "always different from those of the community, and sometimes contrary to them." "Will it be urged that these books are as old, or even older than tradition?" The words, "as old," and "older," cannot have

(Rule 22.
be found,"
they might
thanks to
hom," &c.

and to each
n, through-
following sen-
re beloved,
should be,
not so much

a most irre-
oved as Cin-
r improperly
ng such sen-
ellipses; be-
proper com-
or inelegant.

eding rules,
al to be use-
ences pecu-
calculated to
many modes
es can suffi-

book, that
e, "that has
by interests
of the com-
t from those
em." "Will
older than
cannot have

Rule 22.)

FATAL.

213

a common regimen; it should be "as old as tradition, or even older." It requires few talents to which most men are not born, or at least may not acquire; "or which, at least they may not acquire." "The court of chancery frequently mitigates and breaks the teeth of the common law." In this construction, the first verb is said, "to mitigate the teeth of the common law," which is an evident solecism. "Mitigates the common law, and breaks the teeth of it," would have been grammatical.

"They presently grow into good humour, and good language towards the crown;" grow into good language, is very improper. "There is never wanting a set of evil instruments, who either out of mad zeal, private hatred, or filthy lucre, are always ready," &c. We say properly, "A man acts out of mad zeal," or, "out of private hatred;" but we cannot say, if we would speak English, "he acts out of filthy lucre." "To double her kindness and caprices of me;" the word "kindness" requires to be followed by either *to* or *for*, and cannot be connected with the preposition *of*. "Never was man so teased, or suffered half the uneasiness, as I have done this evening;" the first and third clauses, viz. "Never was man so teased, as I have done this evening," cannot be joined together in an impropriety; and to connect the second and third, the word *that* must be substituted for *as*; "Or suffered half the uneasiness that I have done;" or else, "half so much uneasiness as I have suffered."

The first part of the following sentence abounds with adverbs, and those such as are hardly consistent with one another: "How much soever the reformation of this degenerate age is almost utterly to be despaired of, we may yet have a more comfortable prospect of future times." The sentence would be more correct in the following form: "Though the reformation of this degenerate age is nearly to be despaired of," &c.

"Oh! shut not up my soul with the sinners, nor my life with the blood-thirsty; in whose hands is wickedness, and

their right-hand is full of gifts. As the passage introduced by the copulative conjunction *and* was not intended as a continuation of the principal and independent part of the sentence, but of the dependant part, the relative *whose* should have been used instead of the possessive *their*: viz. *'and whose right-hand is full of gifts.'*

'Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him.' There seems to be an impropriety in this instance, in which the same noun serves in a double capacity, performing at the same time the offices both of the nominative and objective cases. *'Neither hath it entered into the heart of man, to conceive the things,'* &c. would have been regular.

'We have the power of retaining, altering, and compounding, those images which we have once received, into all the varieties of picture and vision.' It is very proper to say, *'altering and compounding those images which we have once received, into all the varieties of picture and vision;'* but we can with no propriety say, *'retaining them into all the varieties;'* and yet, according to the manner in which the words are ranged, this construction is unavoidable: for *'retaining, altering, and compounding,'* are participles, each of which equally refers to, and governs the subsequent noun, *those images*; and that noun again is necessarily connected with the following preposition, *into*. The construction might easily have been rectified, by disjoining the participle *retaining* from the other two participles, in this way: "We have the power of retaining those images which we have once received, and of altering, and compounding them into all the varieties of picture and vision;" or, perhaps, better thus: "We have the power of retaining; altering, and compounding those images which we have once received, and of forming them into all the varieties of picture and vision."

INTERJECTION.

For the Syntax of the Interjection, See Rule v. Note II. page 152, and Note 9 of Rule xxi.

DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING.

As we have finished the explanation of the different parts of speech, and the rules for forming them into sentences, it is now proper to give some examples of the manner in which the learners should be exercised, in order to prove their knowledge, and to render it familiar to them. This is called parsing. The nature of the subject, as well as the adaptation of it to learners, requires that it should be divided into two parts; viz. parsing, as it respects etymology alone; and parsing, as it respects both etymology and syntax.

SECTION 1. Specimens of etymological parsing.

Virtus ennobles us.

Virtue is a common substantive, of the neuter gender, the third person, the singular number, and in the nominative case. (*Decline the noun.*) *Ennobles* is a regular verb active, indicative mood, present tense, and the third person singular. (*Repeat the present tense, the imperfect tense, and the perfect participle.*) *Us* is a personal pronoun, of the first person plural, and in the objective case. (*Decline it.*)

Goodness will be rewarded.

Goodness is a common substantive, of the neuter gender, the third person, the singular number, and in the nominative case. (*Decline it.*) *Will be rewarded* is a regular verb, in the passive voice, the indicative mood, the first future tense, and the third person singular. (*Repeat the present tense, the imperfect tense, and the perfect participle.*)

Strive to improve.

Strive is an irregular verb neuter, in the imperative mood, and of the second person singular. (*Repeat the present*

* See the "General Directions for using the English Exercises," prefixed to the first and every subsequent edition of this book.

† The learner should occasionally repeat all the moods and tenses of the verb.

tense, &c.) To improve is a regular verb neuter, and in the infinitive mood. (*Repeat the present tense, &c.*)

"Time flies, O! how swiftly,"

Time is a common substantive, of the neuter gender, the third person, the singular number, and in the nominative case. (*Decline the noun.*) Flies is an irregular verb neuter, the indicative mood, present tense, and the third person singular. (*Repeat the present tense, &c.*) O! is an interjection. How and swiftly are adverbs.

"Gratitude is a delightful emotion."

Gratitude is a common substantive, of the neuter gender, the third person, the singular number, and in the nominative case. (*Decline it.*) Is is an irregular verb neuter, indicative mood, present tense, and the third person singular. (*Repeat the present tense, &c.*) A is the indefinite article. Delightful is an adjective in the positive state. (*Repeat the degrees of comparison.*) Emotion is a common substantive of the neuter gender, the third person, the singular number, and in the nominative case. (*Decline it.*)

"They who forgive, act nobly."

They is a personal pronoun, of the third person, the plural number, and in the nominative case. (*Decline it.*) Who is a relative pronoun, and in the nominative case. (*Decline it.*) Forgive is an irregular verb active, indicative mood, present tense, and the third person plural. (*Repeat the present tense, &c.*) Act is a regular verb active, indicative mood, present tense, and the third person plural. (*Repeat, &c.*) Nobly is an adverb of quality. (*Repeat the degrees of comparison.*)

"By living temperately, our health is promoted."

By is a preposition. Living is the present participle of the regular neuter verb "to live." (*Repeat the participles.*) Temperately is an adverb of quality. Our is an adjective pronoun of the possessive kind. (*Decline it.*) Health is a common substantive, of the third person, the singular number, and in the nominative case. (*Decline it.*) Is promoted

is a
and
"
W
num
be is
impe
presen
(Repe
is a p
ber, a
lative
Are is
tense,
is an
compa
noun,
jective

Vice
third p
case.
presen
nomin
repeat
neuter
the obj
accord

Peac
son, nu
Joy is
and cas
present

is a regular verb passive, indicative mood, present tense, and the third person singular. (*Repeat, &c.*)

"We should be kind to them, who are unkind to us."

We is a personal pronoun, of the first person, the plural number, and in the nominative case. (*Decline it.*) *Should* is an irregular verb neuter, in the potential mood, the imperfect tense, and the first person plural. (*Repeat the present tense, &c.*) *Kind* is an adjective, in the positive state. (*Repeat the degrees of comparison.*) *To* is a preposition. *Them* is a personal pronoun, of the third person, the plural number, and in the objective case. (*Decline it.*) *Who* is a relative pronoun, and in the nominative case. (*Decline it.*) *Are* is an irregular verb neuter, indicative mood, present tense, and the third person plural. (*Repeat, &c.*) *Unkind* is an adjective in the positive state. (*Repeat the degrees of comparison.*) *To* is a preposition. *Us* is a personal pronoun, of the first person, the plural number, and in the objective case. (*Decline it.*)

SECTION 2. *Specimens of syntactical parsing.*

"Vice produces misery."

Vice is a common substantive, of the neuter gender, the third person, the singular number, and in the nominative case. *Produces* is a regular verb active, indicative mood, present tense, the third person singular, agreeing with its nominative "*vice*," according to RULE I. which says; (*here repeat the rule.*) *Misery* is a common substantive, of the neuter gender, the third person, the singular number, and the objective case, governed by the active verb "*produces*," according to Rule XI. which says, &c.

"Peace and joy are virtues's crown."

Peace is a common substantive. (*Repeat the gender, person, number, and case.*) *And* is a copulative conjunction. *Joy* is a common substantive. (*Repeat the person, number, and case.*) *Are* is an irregular verb neuter, indicative mood, present tense, and the third person plural, agreeing with the

nominative case "peace and joy," according to RULE II. which says; (*here repeat the rule.*) *Virtue's* is a common substantive, of the third person, the singular number, and in the possessive case, governed by the substantive "crown," agreeably to RULE X. which says, &c. *Crown* is a common substantive, of the neuter gender, the third person, the singular number, and in the nominative case, agreeably to the fourth note of RULE XI.

"Wisdom or folly governs us."

Wisdom is a common substantive. (*Repeat the gender, person, number, and case.*) *Or* is a disjunctive conjunction. *Folly* is a common substantive. (*Repeat the person, number, and case.*) *Governs* is a regular verb active, indicative mood, present tense, and the third person singular, agreeing with its nominative case "wisdom" or "folly," according to RULE III. which says, &c. *Us* is a personal pronoun, of the first person, plural number, and in the objective case, governed by the active verb "governs," agreeably to RULE XI. which says, &c.

"Every heart knows its sorrows."

Every is an adjective pronoun of the distributive kind, agreeing with its substantive "heart," according to Note 2 under RULE VIII. which says, &c. *Heart* is a common substantive. (*Repeat the gender, person, number, and case.*) *Knows* is an irregular verb active, indicative mood, present tense, third person singular, agreeing with its nominative case "heart," according to RULE I. which says, &c. *Its* is a personal pronoun, of the third person singular, and of the neuter gender, to agree with its substantive "heart," according to RULE V. which says, &c. It is in the possessive case, governed by the noun "sorrows," according to RULE X. which says, &c. *Sorrows* is a common substantive, of the third person, the plural number, and the objective case governed by the active verb "knows," according to Rule XI, which says, &c.

"The man is happy who lives wisely."

The *is* the definite article. *Man* is a common substantive. (*Repeat the person, number, and case.*) *'Is* is an irregular verb neuter, indicative mood, present tense, and the third person singular, agreeing with the nominative case "*man*," according to RULE I. which says, &c. *Happy* is an adjective in the positive state. *Who* is a relative pronoun, which has for its antecedent, "*man*," with which it agrees in gender and number, according to RULE V. which says, &c. *Lives* is a regular verb neuter, indicative mood, present tense, third person singular, agreeing with its nominative "*who*," according to RULE VI. which says, &c. *Wise*ly is an adverb of quality, placed after the verb, according to RULE XV.

"Who preserves us?"

Who is a relative pronoun of the interrogative kind, and in the nominative case singular. The word to which it relates, (its subsequent,) is the noun or pronoun containing the answer to the question; agreeably to a note under RULE VI. *Preserves* is a regular verb active, indicative mood, present tense, third person singular, agreeing with its nominative "*who*," according to RULE VI. which says, &c. *Us* is a personal pronoun. (*Repeat the person, number, case, and rule.*)

"Whose house is that? My brother's and mine."

Who inhabit it? *We*."

Whose is a relative pronoun of the interrogative kind, and relates to the following words, "*brother's*" and "*mine*," agreeably to a note under RULE VI. It is in the possessive case, governed by "*house*," according to RULE I. which says, &c. *House* is a common substantive. (*Repeat the gender, person, number, and case.*) *Is* is an irregular verb neuter, indicative mood, present tense, and the third person singular, agreeing with its nominative case "*house*," according to RULE I. which says, &c. *That* is an adjective pronoun of the demonstrative kind. *My* is an adjective pronoun of the possessive kind. *Brother's* is a common sub-

stantive, of the third person, the singular number, and in the possessive case, governed by "house" understood, according to RULE X. and a note under RULE VI. *And* is a copulative conjunction. *Mine* is a personal pronoun, of the first person, the singular number, and in the possessive case, according to a note under RULE X. and another under RULE VI. *Who* is a relative pronoun of the interrogative kind, of the plural number, in the nominative case, and relates to "we" following, according to a note under RULE VI. *Inhabit* is a regular verb active. (*Repeat the mood, tense, person, &c.*) *It* is a personal pronoun, of the third person, the singular number, and in the objective case, governed by the active verb "inhabit," according to RULE XI. which says, &c. *We* is a personal pronoun, of the first person, the plural number, and in the nominative case to the verb "inhabit" understood. The words "inhabit it" are implied after "we," agreeably to a note under RULE VI.

"Remember to assist the distressed."

Remember is a regular verb active, imperative mood, the second person singular, and agrees with its nominative case "thou" understood. *To assist* is a regular verb active, in the infinitive mood, governed by the preceding verb "remember," according to RULE XII. which says, &c. *The* is the definite article. *Distressed* is an adjective put substantively.

"We are not unemployed."

We is a personal pronoun. (*Repeat the person, number, and case.*) *Are* is an irregular verb neuter. (*Repeat the mood, tense, person, &c.*) *Not* is an adverb of negation. *Unemployed* is an adjective in the positive state. The two negatives *not* and *un*, form an affirmative, agreeably to RULE XVI. which says, &c.

"This bounty has relieved you and us; and has gratified the donor."

This is an adjective pronoun of the demonstrative kind. *Bounty* is a common substantive. (*Repeat the person, num-*

ber,
dic
ing v
while
perso
term
is a p
are p
says,
is a re
third p
under
the sa
says, &
subst
the ob
ified,"
two G

He is
number
Will be
first futu
its nom
of the a
doned."
conjunct
son, num
neuter, in
person sh
according
tive mood
uncertain
to Rule 1
Go
Good

ber, and case.) *Has relieved* is a regular verb active, indicative mood, perfect tense, third person singular, agreeing with its nominative "bounty," according to Rule 1. which says, &c. *You* is a personal pronoun, of the second person plural, and in the objective case. (*Repeat the government and rule.*) *And* is a copulative conjunction. *Us* is a personal pronoun, in the objective case. *You* and *us* are put in the same case, according to RULE XVIII. which says, &c. *And* is a copulative conjunction. *Has gratified* is a regular verb active, indicative mood, perfect tense, and third person singular, agreeing with its nominative "bounty," understood. "*Has relieved*" and "*has gratified*," are in the same mood and tense, according to RULE XVIII. which says, &c. *The* is the definite article. *Deutor* is a common substantive, of the third person, the singular number, and the objective case governed by the active verb "*has gratified*," according to Rule XI. which says, &c. See the *Octavo Grammar*, on gender.

"He will not be pardoned, unless he repent."

He is a personal pronoun, of the third person, singular number, masculine gender, and in the nominative case. *Will be pardoned* is a regular passive verb, indicative mood, first future tense, and the third person singular, agreeing with its nominative "he," according to RULE I. and composed of the auxiliaries "*will be*," and the perfect participle "*pardoned*." *Not* is a negative adverb. *Unless* is a disjunctive conjunction. *He* is a personal pronoun. (*Repeat the person, number, gender, and case.*) *Repent* is a regular verb neuter, in the subjunctive mood, the present tense, the third person singular, and agrees with its nominative case "he," according to Rule 1. which says, &c. It is in the subjunctive mood, because it implies a future sense, and denotes uncertainty signified by the conjunction "*unless*," agreeably to Rule 19. and the notes.

"Good works being neglected, devotion is false."

Good works being neglected, being independent on the

rest of the sentence, is the case absolute, according to the fifth note of Rule 1. *Devotion* is a common substantive, (*Repeat number, person, and case.*) *Is* is an irregular verb neuter. (*Repeat mood, tense, person, &c.*) *False* is an adjective in the positive state, and belongs to its substantive 'devotion' understood, agreeably to Rule VIII. which says, &c.

"The emperor, Marcus Aurelius, was a wise and virtuous prince."

The is the definite article. *Emperor* is a common substantive, of the masculine gender, the third person, the singular number, and in the nominative case. *Marcus Aurelius* is a proper name or substantive, and in the nominative case, because it is put in apposition with the substantive "emperor," agreeably to the first note of Rule x. *Was* is an irregular verb neuter, indicative mood, imperfect tense, and the third person singular, agreeing with its nominative case "emperor." *A* is the indefinite article. *Wise* is an adjective, and belongs to its substantive "prince." *And* is a copulative conjunction. *Virtuous* is an adjective, and belongs, &c. *Prince* is a common substantive, and in the nominative case, agreeably to the fourth note of Rule XI.

"To err is human."

To err, is the infinitive mood, and the nominative case to the verb "is." *Is* is an irregular verb neuter, indicative mood, present tense, and the third person singular, agreeing with its nominative case "to err," agreeably to Note 1, under Rule the first. *Human* is an adjective, and belongs to its substantive "nature" understood, according to Rule 8. which says, &c.

"To countenance persons who are guilty of bad actions, is scarcely one remove from actually committing them."

To countenance persons who are guilty of bad actions, is part of a sentence, which is the nominative case to the verb "is." *Is* is an irregular verb neuter, &c. agreeing with the aforementioned part of a sentence, as its nominative case, agreeably to Note 1, under Rule the first. *Scarcely* is an

adver
stanti
the ne
in the
Rule
sent
Them
numb
ciple

This
rians
son, a
ever,
irregu
person
case
sonal p
in the
agreeab
verb n
ceding

"Liv
By livi
Living
to the v
Living
the obj
ccordi

The
by the
him to
suffici
to point
and sub

adverb. *One* is a numeral adjective, agreeing with its substantive "remove." *Remove* is a common substantive, of the neuter gender, the third person, the singular number, and in the nominative case, agreeably to the fourth note of Rule xi. *From* is a preposition. *Committing* is the present participle of the regular active verb "to commit." *Them* is a personal pronoun, of the third person, the plural number, and in the objective case, governed by the participle "committing," agreeably to Rule xiv. which says, &c.

"Let me proceed."

This sentence, according to the statement of grammarians in general, is in the Imperative mood, of the first person, and the singular number. The sentence may, however, be analysed in the following manner. *Let* is an irregular verb active, in the imperative mood, of the second person, the plural number, and agrees with its nominative case "you" understood: as, "do you let." *Me* is a personal pronoun, of the first person, the singular number, and in the objective case, governed by the active verb "let," agreeably to Rule xi. which says, &c. *Proceed* is a regular verb neuter, in the infinitive mood, governed by the preceding verb "let," according to Rule xii. which says, &c.

"Living expensively and luxuriously destroys health."

By living frugally and temperately, health is preserved."

Living expensively and luxuriously, is the nominative case to the verb "destroys," agreeably to Note 1, under Rule i. *Living frugally and temperately*, is a substantive phrase in the objective case, governed by the preposition "by," according to Note 2, under Rule xiv.

The preceding specimens of parsing, if carefully studied by the learner, seem to be sufficiently explicit, to enable him to comprehend the nature of this employment; and sufficiently diversified, to qualify him, in other exercises, to point out and apply the remaining rules, both principal and subordinate.

PART IV.

PROSODY.

PROSODY consists of two parts: the former teaches the true PRONUNCIATION of words, comprising ACCENT, QUANTITY, EMPHASIS, PAUSE, and TONE; and the latter, the laws of VERSIFICATION.

CHAPTER I.

OF PRONUNCIATION.

SECTION I. *Of Accent.*

ACCENT is the laying of a peculiar stress of the voice, on a certain letter or syllable in a word, that it may be better heard than the rest, or distinguished from them: as, in the word *presume*, the stress of the voice must be on the letter *u*, and second syllable, *sume*, which take the accent.

As words may be formed of a different number of syllables, from one to eight or nine, it was necessary to have some peculiar mark to distinguish words from mere syllables; otherwise speech would be only a continued succession of syllables, without conveying ideas: for, as words are the marks of ideas, any confusion in the marks, must cause the same in the ideas for which they stand. It was therefore necessary, that the mind should at once perceive what number of syllables belongs to each word, in utterance. This might be done by a perceptible pause at the end of each word in speaking, as we form a certain distance between them in writing and printing. But this would make discourse extremely tedious; and though it might render words distinct, would make the meaning of sentences confused. Syllables might also be sufficiently

Accu-
elating
upon
some
pose,
which
the ene-
Ever
has one
and son-
more le-
Acco-
accent
in a wo-
stress w-
lable, be-
to pron-
eibly, an-
and "vic-
as on the
The sam-
teer, dom-
an accen-
it is by n-
with one
least devi-
As em-
word in a
bid, the a-
part of the
always the
sarily the
termination
the branch
of accents
than any of
perfect uni-

distinguished by a certain elevation or depression of voice upon one syllable of each word, which was the practice of some nations. But the English tongue has, for this purpose, adopted a mark of the easiest and simplest kind, which is called accent, and which effectually answers the end.

Every word in our language, of more than one syllable, has one of them distinguished from the rest in this manner; and some writers assert, that every monosyllable of two or more letters, has one of its letters thus distinguished.

Accent is either principal or secondary. The principal accent is that which necessarily distinguishes one syllable in a word from the rest. The secondary accent is that stress which we may occasionally place upon another syllable, besides that which has the principal accent; in order to pronounce every part of the word more distinctly, forcibly, and harmoniously: thus, "Complaisant, caravan," and "violin," have frequently an accent on the first as well as on the last syllable, though a somewhat less forcible one. The same may be observed of "Repartee, referee, privateer, domineer," &c. But it must be observed, that though an accent is allowed on the first syllable of these words, it is by no means necessary; they may all be pronounced with one accent, and that on the last syllable, without the least deviation from propriety.

As emphasis evidently points out the most significant word in a sentence; so, where other reasons do not forbid, the accent always dwells with greatest force on that part of the word which, from its importance, the hearer has always the greatest occasion to observe: and this is necessarily the root or body of the word. But as harmony of termination frequently attracts the accent from the root to the branches of words, so the first and most natural law of accentuation seems to operate less in fixing the stress than any other. Our own Saxon terminations, indeed, with perfect uniformity, leave the principal part of the word in

quiet possession of what seems its lawful property ; but Latin and Greek terminations, of which our language is full, assume a right of preserving their original accent, and subject almost every word they bestow upon us to their own classical laws.

Accent, therefore, seems to be regulated in a great measure by etymology. In words from the Saxon, the accent is generally on the root ; in words from the learned languages, it is generally on the termination ; and if to these we add the different accent we lay on some words, to distinguish them from others, we seem to have the three great principles of accentuation ; namely, the *radical*, the *terminational*, and the *distinctive*. The radical : as, " Lóve, íóvely, lóveliness ;" the terminational : as, " Hármony, harmónious ;" the distinctive : as, " Cónvert, to convért."

ACCENT ON DISSYLLABLES.

Words of two syllables have necessarily one of them accented, and but one. It is true, for the sake of emphasis, we sometimes lay an equal stress upon two successive syllables ; as, " Dí-réct, sóme-tímes ;" but when these words are pronounced alone, they have never more than one accent. The word " á-méi " is the only word which is pronounced with two accents when alone.

Of dissyllables, formed by affixing a termination, the former syllable is commonly accented : as, " Childish, kíngdom, áctest, ácted, téilsome, lóver, acóffer, fairer, fóremost, zéalous, sólness, meekly, ártist."

Dissyllables formed by prefixing a syllable to the radical word, have commonly the accent on the latter ; as, " Tó beneém, to bestów, to retórn."

Of dissyllables, which are at once nouns and verbs, the verb has commonly the accent on the latter, and the noun on the former syllable : as, " Tó cemént, a cément ; to cóntract, a cóntract ; to présage, a présage."

This rule has many exceptions. Though verbs seldom have their accent on the former, yet nouns often have

Acc
on
noun
prec
they
have
respó
and "
may
seldom
a sup
All
m, et :
avów,
bátter,
Diss
accent
Diss
as, " Co
syllable
ants ; a
lable.
Diss
ble, have
" Applá
certain,
Dissyl
in the p
syllable ;
Trissyll
ing a syll
" Lóvell
respátter,
Trissyll
al, méndic

erty ; but
uage is full,
at, and sub-
o their own

great mas-
the accent
learned lan-
d if to these
ords, to dis-
e three great
al, the termi-
as, "Lóve,
"Hármony,
to convert."

ne of them ac-
of emphasis,
successive syl-
in these words
e than one ac-
which is pro-

nation, the for-
Childish, king
airer, foremost

e to the radical
tter : as, "Té-

and verbs, the
and the noun
ément ; to con-

a verbs seldom
s often have

on the latter syllable : as, "Delight, perfume." Those nouns which, in the common order of language, must have preceded the verbs, often transmit their accent to the verbs they form, and inversely. Thus, the noun "wáter" must have preceded the verb "to wáter," as the verb "to cor-respond," must have preceded the noun "correspondént ;" and "to pursúe" claims priority to "pursúit." So that we may conclude, wherever verbs deviate from the rule, it is seldom by chance, and generally in those words only where a superior law of accent takes place.

All dissyllables ending in *y*, *our*, *ow*, *le*, *ish*, *ck*, *ter*, *age*, *en*, *et* : as, "Gránny, lábour, willow, wállow ;" except "allów, avów, endów, belów, bestów ;" "báttle, báníah, cámbrio, báttér, cóurage, fásten, quiet ;" accent the former syllable.

Dissyllable nouns in *er*, as, "Cánker, búttér," have the accent on the former syllable.

Dissyllable verbs, terminating in a consonant and *e* final, as, "Comprise, escápe ;" or having a diphthong in the last syllable, as, "Appéase, revéal ;" or ending in two consonants ; as, "Atténd ;" have the accents on the latter syllable.

Dissyllable nouns, having a diphthong in the latter syllable, have commonly their accent on the latter syllable ; as, "Appláuse ;" except some words in *ain* ; as, "Villain, cúrtain, móuntain."

Dissyllables that have two vowels, which are separated in the pronunciation, have always the accent on the first syllable ; as, "Líon, ríot, quiet, líar, rúin ;" except "créate."

ACCENT ON TRISYLLABLES.

Trisyllables formed by adding a termination, or prefixing a syllable, retain the accent of the radical word : as, "Lóvellness, ténderness, contémner, wágoner, physical, despátter, cómmending, comménding, assúrance."

Trisyllables ending in *ous*, *al*, *ion* : as, "Árduous, cápítal, méntion," accent the first.

Trisyllables ending in *er*, *ent*, and *ate*, accent the first syllable : as, "Courtenance, continence, armament, imminent, elegant, propagate;" unless they are derived from words having the accent on the last : as, "Connivance, acquaintance;" and unless the middle syllable has a vowel before two consonants : as, "Promúgate."

Trisyllables ending in *y*, as, "Entity, specify, liberty, victory, subsidy," commonly accent the first syllable.

Trisyllables in *re* or *le*, accent the first syllable : as, "Légible, théâtre;" except "Disciple," and some words which have a preposition : as, "Exámple, indéture."

Trisyllables ending in *ude*, commonly accent the first syllable : as, "Plénitude, hábitude, xétitude."

Trisyllables ending in *ator*, have the accent on the middle syllable ; as, "Spectátor, créátor," &c ; except "órátor, sénator, bárrator, légator."

Trisyllables which have in the middle syllable a diphthong, as, "Endéavour;" or a vowel before two consonants ; as, "Doméstic;" accent the middle syllable.

Trisyllables that have their accent on the last syllable, are commonly French : as, "Acquiesce, répartée, magazine;" or they are words formed by prefixing one or two syllables to a long syllable ; as, "Immature, overcharge."

ACCENT ON POLYSYLLABLES.

Polysyllables, or words of more than three syllables, generally follow the accent of the words from which they are derived : as, "Arrogating, continency, incontinently, commendable, communicableness."

Words ending in *ator* have the accent generally on the penultimate, or last syllable but one ; as, "Emendátor, gladiátor, equivocátor, pervariátor."

Words ending in *le* commonly have the accent on the first syllable : as, "Amicáble, déspicáble;" unless the second syllable has a vowel before two consonants : as, "Combústible, condémnable."

Words ending in *ion*, *ous*, and *ty*, have their accent on

the antepenultimate, or last syllable but two : as, "Salvation, victorious, activity."

Words which end in *ia*, *is*, and *cal*, have the accent on the antepenult : as, "Cyclopædia, punctilio, despótical."

The rules respecting accent, are not advanced as complete or infallible : they are merely proposed as useful. Almost every rule of every language has its exceptions ; and, in English, as in other tongues, much must be learned by example and authority.

It may be further observed, that though the syllable on which the principal accent is placed, is fixed and certain, yet we may, and do, frequently make the secondary principal, and the principal secondary : thus, "Caravan, complaisant, violin, repartee, referee, privateer, domineer," may all have the greater stress on the first, and the less on the last syllable, without any violent offence to the ear : nay, it may be asserted, that the principal accent on the first syllable of these words, and none at all on the last, though certainly improper, has nothing in it grating or discordant ; but placing an accent on the second syllable of these words would entirely derange them, and produce great harshness and dissonance. The same observations may be applied to "demonstration, lamentation, provocation, navigator, propagator, alligator," and every similar word in the language.

SECTION 2. Of Quantity.

THE quantity of a syllable is that time which is occupied in pronouncing it. It is considered as LONG or SHORT.

A vowel or syllable is long, when the accent is on the vowel ; which occasions it to be slowly joined in pronunciation with the following letters : as, "Fall, bale, madd, house, feature."

A syllable is short, when the accent is on the conson-

ant; which occasions the vowel to be quickly joined to the succeeding letter; as, Änt, bönnēt, hüngēr."

A long syllable generally requires double the time of a short one in pronouncing it; thus, "Mäte" and "Nöte" should be pronounced as slowly again as "Mät" and "Nöt."

Unaccepted syllables are generally short: as, "Ädmire, höldnēss, sännēr." But to this rule there are many exceptions: as, "Älsö, éalle, gängrēne, ümpire, företäste," &c.

When the accent is on a consonant, the syllable is often more or less short, as it ends with a single consonant, or with more than one: as, Sädly, röbber; persist, mätchless.

When the accent is on a semi-vowel, the time of the syllable may be protracted, by dwelling upon the semi-vowel: as, 'Cur, cap, fulfil': but when the accent falls on a mute, the syllable cannot be lengthened in the same manner: as, "Bübble, cáptain, tóttēr."

The quantity of vowels has, in some measure, been considered under the first part of grammar, which treats of the different sounds of the letters; and therefore we shall dismiss this subject with a few general rules and observations.

1st, All vowels under the principal accent, before the terminations *ia*, *io*, and *ion*, preceded by a single consonant, are pronounced long: as, "Regalia, folio, adhesion, explosion, confusion:" except the vowel *i*, which in that situation is short: as, "Militia, punctilio, decision, contrition." The only exceptions to this rule seem to be "Discretion, battalion, gladiator, national, and rational."

2d, All vowels that immediately precede the terminations *ity*, and *'ty*, are pronounced long: as, "Deity, piety, spontaneity." But if one consonant precedes these terminations, every preceding accented vowel is short; except *u*, and the *a* in "scarcity," and "rarity;" as, "Polarity, severity, divinity, curiosity;—impunity." Even *u* before two consonants contracts itself: as, "Curry, taciturnity," &c.

Em
So
natio
nour
nic,
have
leviti
musi
Ath
with
short
lo
sh
m
ga
vo
fer
flu
flu
As
agreea
in utte
cent;
attain
point.
By
voice,
which
how th
the em
lar ton
On t
life of
words,

Emphasis.)

PHOSOPH.

231

3d, Vowels under the principal accent, before the terminations *ic* and *ical*, preceded by a single consonant, are pronounced short; thus, "Satanic, pathetic, elliptic, harmonic," have the vowel short; while "Tunic, runic, cubic," have the accented vowel long: and "Fanatical, poetical, levitical, canonical," have the vowel short; but "Cubical, musical," &c. have the *u* long.

4th, The vowel in the antepenultimate syllable of words, with the following terminations, is always pronounced short.

loquy; as, obloquy.

strophe; as, apostrophe.

meter; as, barometer.

gonal; as, diagonal.

vorous; as, carnivorous.

ferous; as, somniferous.

fluous; as, superfluous.

fluent; as, mellifluent.

parous; as, oviparous.

cracy; as, aristocracy.

gony; as, cosmogony.

phony; as, symphony.

nomy; as, astronomy.

tomy; as, anatomy.

pathy; as, antipathy.

As no utterance which is void of proportion, can be agreeable to the ear; and as quantity, or proportion of time in utterance, greatly depends on a due attention to the accent; it is absolutely necessary for every person who would attain a just and pleasing delivery, to be master of that point. See this section in the *Octavo Grammar*.

SECTION 3. Of Emphasis.

By emphasis is meant a stronger and fuller sound of voice, by which we distinguish some word or words on which we design to lay particular stress, and to show how they affect the rest of the sentence. Sometimes the emphatic words must be distinguished by a particular tone of voice, as well as by a greater stress.

On the right management of the emphasis depends the life of pronunciation. If no emphasis be placed on any words, not only will discourse be rendered heavy and life-

less, but the meaning often left ambiguous. If the emphasis be placed wrong, we shall pervert and confound the meaning wholly. To give a common instance : such a simple question as this, "Do you ride to town to-day ?" is capable of no fewer than four different acceptations, according as the emphasis is differently placed on the words. If it be pronounced thus : "Do *you* ride to town to-day ?" the answer may naturally be, "No, we send a servant in our stead." If thus : "Do you *ride* to town to-day ?" answer, "No, we intend to walk." "Do you ride *to town* to-day ?" "No, we ride into the country." "Do you ride to town *to-day* ?" "No, but we shall to-morrow." In like manner, in solemn discourse, the whole force and beauty of an expression often depend on the emphatic word ; and we may present to the hearers quite different views of the same sentiment, by placing the emphasis differently. In the following words of our Saviour, observe in what different lights the thought is placed, according as the words are pronounced. "Judas, betrayest thou the son of man with a kiss ?" "*Betrayest thou,*" makes the reproach turn on the infamy of treachery. "*Betrayest thou,*" makes it rest upon Judas's connexion with his master. "*Betrayest thou the son of man,*" rests it upon our Saviour's personal character and eminence. "*Betrayest thou the son of man with a kiss ?*" turns it upon his prostituting the signal of peace and friendship to the purpose of destruction.

The emphasis often lies on the word that asks a question : as, "*Who* said so ?" "*When* will he come ?" "*What* shall I do ?" "*Whither* shall I go ?" "*Why* dost thou weep ?" And when two words are set in contrast, or in opposition to one another, they are both emphatic ; as, "He is the *tyrant*, not the *father*, of his people ;" "His subjects *fear* him, but they do not *love* him."

Some sentences are so full and comprehensive, that almost every word is emphatical : as, "Ye hills and dales, ye rivers, woods, and plains," or, as that pathetic exposu-

Emph
lation
In the
on wh
first, a
and of
As
makes
empha
sents it
no acc
syllable
solved
would
the wor
Emph
when it
propositi
also son
meaning
acceptati
than a str
when it
added a
• The fol
emphasis
man." T
meaning
lows, we p
the simple
As the
the same
tinued, with
words toget
the parts of
study not to
Emphasis n
and the stro

lation in the prophecy of Ezekiel, "Why will you die?" In the latter short sentences, every word is emphatical; and on which ever word we lay the emphasis, whether on the first, second, third, or fourth, it strikes out a different sense, and opens a new subject of moving expostulation.

As accent dignifies the syllable on which it is laid, and makes it more distinguished by the ear than the rest; so emphasis ennobles the word to which it belongs, and presents it in a stronger light to the understanding. Were there no accents, words would be resolved into their original syllables: were there no emphasis, sentences would be resolved into their original words; and, in this case, the hearer would be under the painful necessity, first, of making out the words, and afterwards, their meaning.

Emphasis is of two kinds, simple and complex. Simple, when it serves to point out only the plain meaning of any proposition; complex, when, besides the meaning, it marks also some affection or emotion of the mind; or gives a meaning to words, which they would not have in their usual acceptance. In the former case, emphasis is scarcely more than a stronger accent, with little or no change of tone; when it is complex, besides force, there is always superadded a manifest change of tone.

The following sentence contains an example of simple emphasis: "And Nathan said to David, *Thou* art the man." The emphasis on *thou*, serves only to point out the meaning of the speaker. But in the sentence which follows, we perceive an emotion of the speaker superadded to the simple meaning: "Why will ye die?"

As the emphasis often falls on words in different parts of the same sentence, so it is frequently required to be continued, with a little variation, on two, and sometimes three words together. The following sentence exemplifies both the parts of this position: "If you seek to make one rich, study not to *increase his stores*, but to *diminish his desires*." Emphasis may be further distinguished, into the weaker and the stronger emphasis. In the sentence, "Exercise

and temperance strengthen the constitution;" we perceive more force on the word *strengthen*, than on any other; though it is not equal to the stress which we apply to the word *indifferent*, in the following sentence: "Exercise and temperance strengthen even an *indifferent* constitution." It is also proper to remark, that the words *exercise*, *temperance*, *constitution*, in the last example but one, are pronounced with greater force, than the particles *and* and *the*; and yet those words cannot properly be called emphatical: for the stress that is laid on them, is no more than sufficient to convey distinctly the meaning of each word.—From these observations it appears, that the smaller parts of speech, namely, the articles, conjunctions, prepositions, &c. are, in general, obscurely and feebly expressed; that the substantives, verbs, and more significant words, are firmly and distinctly pronounced; and that the emphatical words, those which mark the meaning of a phrase, are pronounced with peculiar stress and energy, though varied according to the degree of their importance.

Emphasis, besides its other offices, is the great regulator of quantity. Though the quantity of our syllables is fixed, in words separately pronounced, yet it is mutable, when these words are ranged in sentences; the long being changed into short, the short into long, according to the importance of the words with regard to meaning: and as it is by emphasis only, that the meaning can be pointed out, emphasis must be the regulator of the quantity. A few examples will make this point very evident.

Pleas'd thou shalt hear—and learn the secret power, &c.

Pleas'd thou shalt hear—and thou alone shalt hear—

Pleas'd thou shalt hear—in spite of them shalt hear—

Pleas'd thou shalt hear—though not behold the fair—

In the first of these instances, the words *pleas'd* and *hear*, being equally emphatical, are both long; whilst the two intermediate words, *thou* and *shalt*, being rapidly passed over, as the sense demands, are reduced to a short quantity.

Emph

In
impor
and th
but ob
than v
degree
quantit
shorter
still co
though
short v
forcible
lows it

In th
obtains
prolong
yet in
tity is
to the i
also ob
part of t

In the
tion to
tains fro
length.
short qu
time wh

From
our sylla
observe
doubtles
practice,

Empha
syllables,
cent. T
" He s
difference

In the second instance, the word *thou* by being the most important, obtains the chief, or rather the sole emphasis; and thus, it is not only restored to its natural long quantity, but obtains from emphasis a still greater degree of length, than when pronounced in its separate state. This greater degree of length, is compensated by the diminution of quantity in the words *pleas'd* and *hear*, which are sounded shorter than in the preceding instance. The word *shall* still continues short. Here we may also observe, that though *thou* is long in the first part of the verse, it becomes short when repeated in the second, on account of the more forcible emphasis belonging to the word *alone*, which follows it.

In the third instance, the word *shall* having the emphasis, obtains a long quantity. And though it is impossible to prolong the sound of this word, as it ends in a pure mute, yet in this, as in all similar instances, the additional quantity is to be made out by a rest of the voice, proportioned to the importance of the word. In this instance, we may also observe, that the word *shall*, repeated in the second part of the line, is reduced again to a short quantity.

In the fourth instance, the word *hear* placed in opposition to the word *behold*, in the latter part of the line, obtains from the sense the chief emphasis, and a proportionate length. The words *thou* and *shall*, are again reduced to short quantities; and the word *pleas'd* lends some of the time which it possessed, to the more important word *hear*.

From these instances, it is evident, that the quantity of our syllables is not fixed; but governed by emphasis.—To observe a due measurement of time, on all occasions, is doubtless very difficult; but by instruction, attention, and practice, the difficulty may be overcome.

Emphasis changes, not only the quantity of words and syllables, but also, in particular cases, the seat of the accent. This is demonstrable from the following examples.

"He shall increase, but I shall decrease." "There is a difference between giving and forgiving." "In this species

of composition, *plausibility* is much more essential than *probability*." In these examples, the emphasis requires the accent to be placed on syllables, to which it does not commonly belong.

In order to acquire the proper management of the emphasis, the great rule, and indeed the only rule possible to be given, is, that the speaker or reader study to attain a just conception of the force and spirit of the sentiments which he is to pronounce. For to lay the emphasis with exact propriety, is a constant exercise of good sense and attention. It is far from being an inconsiderable attainment. It is one of the greatest trials of a true and just taste; and must arise from feeling delicately ourselves, and from judging accurately, of what is fittest to strike the feelings of others.

There is one error, against which it is particularly proper to caution the learner; namely, that of multiplying emphatical words too much. It is only by a prudent reserve in the use of them, that we can give them any weight. If they recur too often; if a speaker or reader attempts to render every thing which he expresses of high importance, by a multitude of strong emphases, we soon learn to pay little regard to them. To crowd every sentence with emphatical words, is like crowding all the pages of a book with *italic* characters, which, as to the effect, is just the same as to use no such distinctions at all.

SECTION 4. *Of Pauses.*

PAUSES or rests, in speaking and reading, are a total cessation of the voice, during a perceptible, and, in many cases, a measurable space of time.

Pauses are equally necessary to the speaker, and the hearer. To the speaker, that he may take breath, without which he cannot proceed far in delivery; and that he may, by these temporary rests, relieve the organs of speech, which otherwise would be soon tired by continued action: to the hearer, that the ear also may be relieved from the

PAUSE
fatigue
of so
time
mem

The
and n
empha
of pec
hearer
we us
have t
to the
of not
uncom
importa
expecta

But t

is, to m
to allow
and deli
nice and
public s
good de
from one
that they
and with
miserabl
lost, by
avoid th
should b
for what
that the
when the
thered at
suspended
may alwa
longest so

fatigue, which it would otherwise endure from a continuity of sound; and that the understanding may have sufficient time to mark the distinction of sentences, and their several members.

There are two kinds of pauses: first, emphatical pauses; and next, such as mark the distinctions of the sense. An emphatical pause is made, after something has been said of peculiar moment, and on which we desire to fix the hearer's attention. Sometimes, before such a thing is said, we usher it in with a pause of this nature. Such pauses have the same effect as a strong emphasis; and are subject to the same rules; especially to the caution just now given, of not repeating them too frequently. For as they excite uncommon attention, and of course raise expectation, if the importance of the matter is not fully answerable to such expectation, they occasion disappointment and disgust.

But the most frequent and the principal use of pauses, is, to mark the divisions of the sense, and at the same time to allow the speaker to draw his breath; and the proper and delicate adjustment of such pauses, is one of the most nice and difficult articles of delivery. In all reading, and public speaking, the management of the breath requires a good deal of care, so as not to oblige us to divide words from one another, which have so intimate a connexion, that they ought to be pronounced with the same breath, and without the least separation. Many sentences are miserably mangled, and the force of the emphasis totally lost, by the divisions being made in the wrong place. To avoid this, every one, while he is speaking or reading, should be very careful to provide a full supply of breath for what he is to utter. It is a great mistake to imagine, that the breath must be drawn only at the end of a period, when the voice is allowed to fall. It may easily be gathered at the intervals of the period, when the voice is only suspended for a moment; and, by this management, one may always have a sufficient stock for carrying on the longest sentence, without improper interruptions.

Pauses in reading, and public discourse, must be formed upon the manner in which we utter ourselves in ordinary, sensible conversation; and not upon the stiff artificial manner which we acquire, from reading books according to the common punctuation. It will by no means be sufficient to attend to the points used in printing; for these are far from marking *all* the pauses which ought to be made in speaking. A mechanical attention to these resting-places, has perhaps been one cause of monotony, by leading the reader to a similar tone at every stop, and a uniform cadence at every period. The primary use of points is, to assist the reader in discerning the grammatical construction; and it is only as a secondary object, that they regulate his pronunciation.

To render pauses pleasing and expressive, they must not only be made in the right place, but also accompanied with a proper tone of voice, by which the nature of these pauses is intimated; much more than by the length of them; which can seldom be exactly measured. Sometimes it is only a slight and simple suspension of voice that is proper; sometimes a degree of cadence in the voice is required; and sometimes that peculiar tone and cadence which denote the sentence to be finished. In all these cases, we are to regulate ourselves, by attending to the manner in which nature teaches us to speak, when engaged in real and earnest discourse with others.

It is a general rule, that the suspending pause should be used when the sense is incomplete; and the closing pause, when it is finished. But there are phrases, in which, though the sense is not completed, the voice takes the closing, rather than the suspending pause; and others, in which the sentence finishes by the pause of suspension.

The closing pause must not be confounded with that fall of the voice, or *cadence*, with which many readers uniformly finish a sentence. Nothing is more destructive of propriety and energy than this habit. The tones and inflections of the voice at the close of a sentence, ought to be

Tones
diversified
and the
pauses.
a small
or main
it is free
it fall, a
structured
than an
closed
nothing
elevated
the sense
pieces, a
kind, the
greater
recting a
tences, in
theses are
or such
mation.

TONES
consisting
variations
of our sen

Emphasi
gree of tone
so called, a
the whole of

To show
observe, the
continual at
different effe
Now the end

diversified, according to the general nature of the discourse, and the particular construction and meaning of the sentence. In plain narrative, and especially in argumentation, a small attention to the manner in which we relate a fact, or maintain an argument, in conversation, will show, that it is frequently more proper to raise the voice, than to let it fall, at the end of a sentence. Some sentences are so constructed, that the last words require a stronger emphasis than any of the preceding; while others admit of being closed with a soft and gentle sound. Where there is nothing in the sense which requires the last sound to be elevated or emphatical, an easy fall, sufficient to show that the sense is finished, will be proper. And in pathetic pieces, especially those of the plaintive, tender, or solemn kind, the tone of the passion will often require a still greater cadence of the voice. The best method of correcting a uniform cadence, is frequently to read *select sentences*, in which the style is pointed, and in which *antitheses* are frequently introduced; and argumentative pieces, or such as abound with interrogatives, or earnest exclamation.

SECTION 5. Of Tones.

TONES are different both from emphasis and pauses; consisting in the modulation of the voice, the notes or variations of sound which we employ in the expression of our sentiments.

Emphasis affects particular words and phrases with a degree of tone or inflection of the voice; but tones, peculiarly so called, affect sentences, paragraphs, and sometimes even the whole of a discourse.

To show the use and necessity of tones, we need only observe, that the mind, in communicating its ideas, is in a continual state of activity, emotion, or agitation, from the different effects which those ideas produce in the speaker. Now the end of such communication being, not merely to

lay open the ideas, but also the different feelings which they excite in him who utters them, there must be other signs than words, to manifest those feelings; as words uttered in a monotonous manner, can represent only a similar state of mind, perfectly free from all activity or emotion. As the communication of these internal feelings, was of much more consequence in our social intercourse, than the mere conveyance of ideas, the Author of our being did not, as in that conveyance, leave the invention of the language of emotion, to man; but impressed it himself upon our nature in the same manner as he has done with regard to the rest of the animal world; all of which express their various feelings, by various tones. Ours indeed, from the superior rank that we hold, are in a high degree more comprehensive; as there is not an act of the mind, an exertion of the fancy, or an emotion of the heart, which has not its peculiar tone, or note of the voice, by which it is to be expressed; and which is suited exactly to the degree of internal feeling. It is chiefly in the proper use of these tones, that the life, spirit, beauty, and harmony of delivery consist.

An extract from the beautiful lamentation of David over Saul and Jonathan, may serve as an example of what has been said on this subject. "The beauty of Israel is slain upon thy high places. How are the mighty fallen! Tell it not in Gath; publish it not in the streets of Askelon: lest the daughters of the Philistines rejoice; lest the daughters of the uncircumcised triumph. Ye mountains of Gilboa, let there be no dew, nor rain upon you, nor fields of offerings; for there the shield of the mighty was vilely cast away; the shield of Saul, as though he had not been anointed with oil!" The first of these divisions expresses sorrow and lamentation; therefore the note is low. The next contains a spirited command, and should be pronounced much higher. The other sentence, in which he makes a pathetic address to the mountains where his friends were

Veru
slain, a
two for
second,

This

not so
imagine
ments,
not fail
there are
cial tone
and tone
course:
them, in
traced to
which the
natural, e
artificial,

But wh
tone and
do it with
this point
comes str
and must
hearsers;
modesty,

As there
cal compo
some idea
ciples of v
the better
beauties.
sentiment,
interesting

Sect. 5.
which
other
words
a simi-
or emo-
feelings,
recourse,
our be-
ention of
it him-
has done
of which
Ours in-
a high de-
ct of the
the heart,
voice, by
exactly to
he proper
harmony
David over
what has
ael is slain
en! Tell it
kelon: lest
daughters
of Gilboa,
elds of of-
vilely cast
been an-
resses ser-
The next
ronounced
he makes
heads were

Verseification.

PROSE.

241

slain, must be expressed in a note quite different from the two former; not so low as the first, nor so high as the second, in a manly, firm, and yet plaintive tone.*

This correct and natural language of the emotions, is not so difficult to be attained, as most readers seem to imagine. If we enter into the spirit of the author's sentiments, as well as into the meaning of his words, we shall not fail to deliver the words in properly varied tones. For there are few people, who speak English without a provincial tone, that have not an accurate use of emphasis, pauses, and tones, when they utter their sentiments in earnest discourse: and the reason that they have not the same use of them, in reading aloud the sentiments of others, may be traced to the very defective and erroneous method, in which the art of reading is taught; whereby all the various, natural, expressive tones of speech, are suppressed, and a few artificial, unmeaning, reading notes, are substituted for them.

But when we recommend to readers, an attention to the tone and language of emotions, we must be understood to do it with proper limitation. Moderation is necessary in this point, as it is in other things. For when reading becomes strictly imitative, it assumes a theatrical manner, and must be highly improper, as well as give offence to the hearers; because it is inconsistent with the delicacy and modesty, which, on all occasions, are indispensable.

CHAPTER II.

OF VERSEIFICATION.

As there are few persons who do not sometimes read poetical composition, it seems necessary to give the student some idea of that part of grammar, which explains the principles of verseification; that, in reading poetry, he may be the better able to judge of its correctness, and relish its beauties. When this lively mode of exhibiting nature and sentiment, is perfectly chaste, it is often found to be highly interesting and instructive.

VERSIFICATION is the arrangement of a certain number and variety of syllables, according to certain laws.

Rhyme is the correspondence of the last sound of one verse, to the last sound or syllable of another.

Feet and pauses are the constituent parts of verse. We shall consider these separately.

OF POETICAL FEET.

A certain number of syllables connected, form a foot. They are called *feet*, because it is for their aid that the voice, as it were, steps along through the verse, in a measured pace; and it is necessary that the syllables which mark this regular movement of the voice, should, in some manner, be distinguished from the others. This distinction was made among the ancient Romans, by dividing their syllables into long and short, and ascertaining their quantity by an exact proportion of time in sounding them; the long being to the short, as two to one; and the long syllables, being thus the more important, marked the movement. In English, syllables are divided into accented and unaccented; and the accented syllables being as strongly distinguished from the unaccented, by the peculiar stress of the voice upon them, are equally capable of marking the movement, and pointing out the regular paces of the voice, as the long syllables were by their quantity, among the Romans.

When the feet are formed by an accent on vowels, they are exactly of the same nature as the ancient feet, and have the same just quantity in their syllables. So that, in this respect, we have all that the ancients had, and something which they had not. We have in fact duplicates of each foot, yet with such a difference, as to fit them for different purposes, to be applied at our pleasure.

Every foot has, from nature, powers peculiar to itself; and it is upon the knowledge and right application of these

Vers
power
taper
All
syllab
syllab

A T
unacce
An I
accent
A Sp
"The
A Py
as, "O
A D
latter u
An A
and the
An A
the last
A Tri
mérable
Some
as piece
any of t
Anapæst
cause th
improve
We sh
IAMB
according
are comp

powers, that the pleasure and effect of numbers chiefly depend.

All feet used in poetry consist either of two, or of three syllables; and are reducible to eight kinds; four of two syllables, and four of three, as follows:

DISYLLABLE.

A Trochee - ˘ ˆ

An Iambus - ˆ ˘

A Spondee - ˆ ˆ

A Pyrrhic ˘ ˘

TRISYLLABLE.

A Dactyl - ˆ ˘ ˘

An Amphibrach ˘ ˆ ˘

An Anapæst ˘ ˘ ˆ

A Tribrach ˘ ˘ ˘

A Trochee has the first syllable accented, and the last unaccented: as, "Hätefûl, pétlish."

An Iambus has the first syllable unaccented, and the last accented: as, "Béttér consist."

A Spondee has both the words or syllables accented: as, "The päle móön."

A Pyrrhic has both the words or syllables unaccented: as, "Ön thě tall tree."

A Dactyl has the first syllable accented, and the two latter unaccented: as, "Läböurer, pösible."

An Amphibrach has the first and last syllables unaccented; and the middle one accented: as, "Dèlìghful, doméstic."

An Anapæst has the two first syllables unaccented, and the last accented: as, "Cónträvène, acquiesce."

A Tribrach has all its syllables unaccented: as, "Nù-méräblē, cónquerable."

Some of these feet may be denominated *principal* feet; as pieces of poetry may be wholly, or chiefly formed of any of them. Such are the Iambus, Trochee, Dactyl, and Anapæst. The others may be termed *secondary* feet; because their chief use is to diversify the numbers, and to improve the verse.

We shall first explain the nature of the principal feet.

IAMBIC verses may be divided into several species, according to the number of feet or syllables of which they are composed.

1. The shortest form of the English Iambic consists of an Iambus, with an additional short syllable: as,

Dreadning,

Complaining,

Consenting,

Repenting.

We have no poem of this measure, but it may be met with in stanzas. The Iambus, with this addition, coincides with the Amphibrach.

2. The second form of our Iambic is also too short to be continued through any great number of lines. It consists of two Iambuses.

What place is here?

What scenes appear?

To me the rose

No longer glows.

It sometimes takes, or may take, an additional short syllable: as,

Upon a mountain

Beside a fountain.

3. The third form consists of three Iambuses.

In places far or near,

Or famous or obscure,

What wholesome is the air,

Or where the most impure.

It sometimes admits of an additional short syllable: as,

Our hearts no longer languish.

4. The fourth form is made up of four Iambuses.

And may at last my weary age,

Find out the peaceful hermitage.

5. The fifth species of English Iambic, consists of five Iambuses.

How lov'd, how valu'd once, avails thee not,

To whom related, or by whom begot:

A heap of dust alone remains of thee;

'Tis all thou art, and all the proud shall be

Ver

Th

it con

fect, a

many

measu

differe

6. T

Alexand

Fo

The Al

rhyme;

occasion

Th

Ros

But

Thy

7. The

made up o

The Lord o

This wa

broken int

second thr

When

My

Transp

In w

In all these

syllables; an

more melodi

Be wise to-day, 'tis madness to defer:
 Next day the fatal precedent will plead:
 Thus on, till wisdom is pushed out of life.

This is called the *Heroic measure*. In its simplest form it consists of five Iambuses; but by the admission of other feet, as Trochees, Dactyls, Anapaests, &c. it is capable of many varieties. Indeed, most of the English common measures may be varied in the same way, as well as by the different position of their pauses.

6. The sixth form of our Iambic is commonly called the *Alexandrine measure*. It consists of six Iambuses.

For thou art but of dust; be humble and be wise.
 The Alexandrine is sometimes introduced into heroic rhyme; and when used sparingly, and with judgment, occasions an agreeable variety.

The seas shall waste, the skies in smoke decay,
 Rocks fall to dust, and mountains melt away;
 But fix'd his word, his saving pow'r remains:
 Thy realm for ever lasts, thy own Messiah reigns.

7. The seventh and last form of our Iambic measure, is made up of seven Iambuses.

The Lord descended from above, and bow'd the heavens high.

This was anciently written in one line; but it is now broken into two; the first containing four feet, and the second three:

When all thy mercies, O my God!

My rising soul surveys,

Transported with the view, I'm lost

In wonder, love, and praise.

In all these measures, the accents are to be placed on even syllables; and every line considered by itself, is, in general, more melodious, as this rule is more strictly observed.

TROCHAIC verse is of several kinds.

1. The shortest Trochaic verse in our language, consists of one Trochee and a long syllable.

Tumult cease,

Sink to peace.

This measure is defective in dignity, and can seldom be used on serious occasions.

2. The second English form of the Trochaic consists of two feet; and is likewise so brief, that it is rarely used for any very serious purpose.

On the mountain

By a fountain

It sometimes contains two feet or trochees, with an additional long syllable: as,

In the days of old

Fables plainly told.

3. The third species consists of three trochees: as,

When our hearts are mourning:

or of three trochees, with an additional long syllable: as,

Restless mortals toil for nought;

Bliss in vain from earth is sought;

Bliss, a native of the sky,

Never wanders. Mortals, try;

There you cannot seek in vain;

For to seek her is to gain.

4. The fourth Trochaic species consists of four trochees: as,

Round us rolls the tempest louder.

This form may take an additional long syllable, as follows.

Idle after dinner in his chair,

Sat a farmer, ruddy, fat, and fair.

But this measure is very uncommon.

5. The fifth Trochaic species is likewise uncommon. It is composed of *six* trochees.

All that walk on foot or ride in chariots,

All that dwell in palaces or garrets

6. The sixth form of the English Trochaic consists of six trochees: as,

On a mountain, stretch'd beneath a hoary willow,

Lay a shepherd swain, and view'd the rolling billow.

This seems to be the longest Trochaic line that our language admits.

In all these Trochaic measures, the accent is to be placed on the odd syllables.

The DACTYLIC measure being very uncommon, we shall give only one example of one species of it:

From the low pleasures of this fallen nature,

Rise we to higher, &c.

ANAPÆSTIC verses are divided into several species.

1. The shortest anapæstic verse must be a single anapæst; as,

But in vain,

They complain.

This measure is, however, ambiguous; for, by laying the stress of the voice on the first and third syllables, we might make a trochaic. And therefore the first and simplest form of our genuine Anapæstic verse, is made up of two Anapæsts: as,

But his courage 'gan fail;

For no arts could avail.

This form admits of an additional short syllable.

Then his courage 'gan fail him,

For no arts could avail him.

2. The second species consists of *three* Anapæsts.

Oh ye woods; spread your branches wide;

To your deepest recesses I fly;

I would hide with the beasts of the chase;

I would vanish from every eye.

This is a very pleasing measure, and much used, both in solemn and cheerful subjects.

3. The third kind of the English Anapaestic, consists of *four Anapaests*.

May I govern my passions with absolute sway;
And grow wiser and better as life wears away.

This measure will admit of a short syllable at the end: as,
On the warm cheek of youth, smiles and roses are blinding.

The preceding are the different kinds of the principal feet, in their more simple forms. They are capable of numerous variations, by the intermixture of those feet with each other; and by the admission of the secondary feet.

We have observed, that English verse is composed of feet formed by accent; and that when the accent falls on vowels, the feet are equivalent to those formed by quantity. That the student may clearly perceive this difference, we shall produce a specimen of each kind.

O'er heaps of ruins stalk'd the stately hind.

Here we see the accent is upon the vowel in each second syllable. In the following line, we shall find the same *isometric* movement, but formed by accent on consonants, except the last syllable.

Then rustling, crackling, crashing-thunder down.

Here the time of the short accented syllables, is compensated by a short pause, at the end of each word to which they belong.

We now proceed to show the manner in which poetry is varied and improved, by the admission of secondary feet into its composition.

Murmuring, and with him fled the shades of night.

The first foot here is a *Dactyl*; the rest are *Iambics*.

O'er many a frozen, many a fiery Alp.

This line contains three *Amphibrachs* mixed with *Iambics*.

Immense before th' Almighty's throne.

Here, in the second foot, we find a Tribrach.

Set the bold youth strain up the threatening step.

In this line, the first foot is a Trochee; the second a genuine Spondee by quantity; the third a Spondee by accent.

In the following line, the first foot is a Pyrrhic, the second a Spondee.

That on weak wings from A. pursues your flight.

From the preceding view of English versification, we may see what a copious stock of materials it possesses. For we are not only allowed the use of all the ancient poetic feet, in our heroic measure, but we have, as before observed, duplicates of each, agreeing in movement, though differing in measure,* and which make different impressions on the ear; an opulence peculiar to our language, and which may be the source of a boundless variety.

OF POETICAL PAUSES.

There are two sorts of pauses, one for sense, and one for melody, perfectly distinct from each other. The former may be called *sentential*, the latter, *harmonic* pauses.

The *sentential* pauses are those which are known to us by the name of stops, and which have names given them; as the comma, semicolon, colon, and period.

The *harmonic* pauses may be subdivided into the *final* pause, and the *cæsural* pause. These sometimes coincide with the *sentential* pause, sometimes have an independent state, that is, exist where there is no stop in the sense.

The *final* pause takes place at the end of the line, closes the verse, and marks the measure: the *cæsural* divides it into equal or unequal parts.

* Movement and measure are thus distinguished. *Movement* expresses the progressive order of sounds, whether from strong to weak, from long to short, or vice versa. *Measure* signifies the proportion of time both in sounds and pauses.

The final pause preserves the melody, without interfering with the sense. For the pause itself perfectly marks the bound of the metre; and being made only by a suspension of the voice, not by any change of note, it can never affect the sense. This is not the only advantage gained to numbers, by this final pause or stop of suspension. It also prevents that monotony, that sameness of note at the end of lines, which, however pleasing to a rude, is disgusting to a delicate ear. For as this final pause has no peculiar note of its own, but always takes that which belongs to the preceding word, it changes continually with the matter, and is as various as the sense.

It is the final pause which alone, on many occasions, marks the difference between prose and verse; which will be evident from the following arrangement of a few poetical lines.

Of man's first disobedience, and the fruit of that forbidden tree, whose mortal taste brought death into the world, and all our wo, with loss of Eden, till one greater man restore us, and regain the blissful seat, sing heavenly muse!"

A stranger to the poem would not easily discover that this was verse; but would take it for poetical prose. By properly adjusting the final pause, we shall restore the passage to its true state of verse.

Of man's first disobedience, and the fruit
Of that forbidden tree, whose mortal taste
Brought death into the world, and all our wo,
With loss of Eden, till one greater man
Restore us, and regain the blissful seat,
Sing, heavenly muse!

These examples show the necessity of reading blank verse, in such a manner, as to make every line sensible to the ear; for, what is the use of melody, or for what end has the poet composed in verse, if, in reading his lines, we suppress his numbers, by omitting the final pause; and degrade them, by our pronunciation, into mere prose?

Verse
The
syllable
On the
Ti
Ti
On the
Ro
O
On the
On
Co
A line
res : as,
Out
Loc
There
the nature
which
may be
The fo
Glow
Reas
Ride

Having
constituted
ticularly,
Melody
jects of po
effect prod
constituent
and move
action of t
a verse with

Verseification.)

anacrost.

The Cæsura is commonly on the fourth, fifth, or sixth syllable of heroic verse.

On the fourth syllable, or at the end of the second foot: as,

The silver cel" in shining volumes roll'd,

The yellow carp" in scales bedropp'd with gold.

On the fifth syllable, or in the middle of the third foot: as,

Round broken columns" clasping ivy twin'd,

O'er heaps of ruin" stalk'd the stately hind.

On the sixth syllable, or at the end of the third foot: as,

On say what stranger cause" yet unexplor'd,

Could make a gentle belle" reject a lord.

A line may be divided into three portions, by two cæsuras: as,

Outstretch'd he lay" on the cold ground" and oft"

Look'd up to heav'n.

There is another mode of dividing lines, well suited to the nature of the couplet, by introducing semi-pauses, which divide the line into four pauses. This semi-pause may be called a *semi-cæsura*.

The following lines admit of, and exemplify it.

Glow's' while he reads" but trembles' as he writes.

Reason' the card" but passion' is the gale.

Rides' in the whirlwind" and directs' the storm.

OF MELODY, HARMONY, AND EXPRESSION.

Having shown the general nature of feet and pauses, the constituent parts of verse, we shall now point out, more particularly, their use and importance.

Melody, harmony, and expression, are the three great objects of poetic numbers. By melody, is meant, a pleasing effect produced on the ear, from an apt arrangement of the constituent parts of verse, according to the laws of measure and movement. By harmony, an effect produced by an action of the mind, in comparing the different members of a verse with each other, and perceiving a due and beautiful

proportion between them. By expression, such a choice and arrangement of the constituent parts of verse, as serve to enforce and illustrate the thought or the sentiment.

We shall consider each of these three objects in versification, both with respect to the feet and the pauses.

1st, With regard to melody.

From the examples which we have given of verses composed in all the principal feet, it is evident that a considerable portion of melody is found in each of them, though in different degrees. Verses made up of pure Iambics have an excellent melody.

That the final and caesural pauses contribute to melody, cannot be doubted by any person who reviews the instances, which we have already given of those pauses. To form lines of the first melody, the caesura must be at the end of the second, or of the third foot, or in the middle of the third.

2d, With respect to harmony.

Verses composed of Iambics have indeed a fine harmony; but as the stress of the voice, in repeating such verses, is always in the same places, that is, on every second syllable, such a uniformity would disgust the ear in a long succession; and therefore such changes were sought for, as might introduce the pleasure of variety, without prejudice to melody; or which might even contribute to its improvement. Of this nature was the introduction of the Trochee, to form the first foot of an heroic verse: as,

Favours to none, to all the smiles extends,

Oft she rejects, but never once offends.

Each of these lines begins with a Trochee; the remaining feet are in the Iambic movement. In the following line of the same movement, the fourth foot is a Trochee.

All these our notions vain, sees and derides.

The next change admitted for the sake of variety, without prejudice to melody, is the intermixture of Pyrrhics

Verses
and S
make
syllab
of the

O

S

S

The

W

In this
and thro

We h
lody of
importa
in numb

The f
the caes
same li
seen in t
of prop
divisions
to three-

The n
a couple

See

Rue

Here
the seco
last line.

Har

And

In this
in the fir

and Spondee; in which, two impressions in the one foot make up for the want of one in the other; and two long syllables compensate two short ones, so as to make the sum of the quantity of the two feet, equal to two Iambics.

On the green bank to look into the clear
Smoother like that to me seem'd another sky.

Stood roll'd stood vast infinitude confin'd.

The next variety admitted is that of the Amphibrach.

Which many a bard had chaunted many a day.

In this line, we find that two of the feet are Amphibrachs; and three, Iambics.

We have before shown that the cæsura improves the melody of verse; and we shall now speak of its other more important office, that of being the chief source of harmony in numbers.

The first and lowest perception of harmony, by means of the cæsura, arises from comparing two members of the same line with each other, divided in the manner to be seen in the instances before mentioned; because the beauty of proportion in the members, according to each of these divisions, is founded in nature; being as one to two—two to three—or three to two.

The next degree arises from comparing the members of a couplet, or two contiguous lines: as,

See the bold youth strain up the threat'ning steep,
Rush thro' the thickets down the valleys sweep.

Here we find the cæsura of the first line, at the end of the second foot; and in the middle of the third foot, in the last line.

Hang o'er their couriers' heads with eager speed,
And earth rolls back beneath the flying steed.

In this couplet, the cæsura is at the end of the third foot, in the first line; and of the second, in the latter line.

The next perception of harmony arises from comparing a greater number of lines, and observing the relative proportion of the couplets to each other, in point of similarity and diversity, as:

Thy forests Windsor" and thy green retreats,
At once the monarch's" and the muse's seats,
Invite my lays." Be present Sylvan maids,
Unlock your springs" and open all your shades.

Not half so swift" the trembling doves can fly,
When the fierce eagle" cleaves the liquid sky ;
Not half so swiftly" the fierce eagle moves,

When through the clouds" he drives the trembling doves.

In this way, the comparison of lines variously apportioned by the different seats of the three cæsuras, may be the source of a great variety of harmony, consistent with the finest melody. This is still increased by the introduction of two cæsuras, and much more by that of semi-pauses. The semi-pauses double every where the terms of comparison ; give a more distinct view of the whole and the parts ; afford new proportions of measurement, and an ampler scope for diversity and equality, those sources of beauty in harmony.

Warms' in the sun" refreshes' in the breeze,
Glow's in the stars" and blossoms' in the trees ;
Lives' through all life" extends' through all extent,
Spreads' undivided" operates' unspent.

3d. The last object in versification regards expression.

When men express their sentiments by words, they naturally fall into that sort of movement of the voice, which is consonant to that produced by the emotion in the mind ; and the Dactylic or Anapestic, the Trochaic, Iambic, or Spondaic, prevails even in common discourse, according to the different nature of the sentiments expressed. To imitate nature, therefore, the poet, in arranging his words in the artificial composition of verse, must take care to make

the m
use of
most g

Tha
may
sentim
select

In th
are sho
which
posture

85

The
Trochee

Lig

Lea

The
of light
on his fe

The sa
us see th
act of lea
to be atte
this is str
follows—

by a Pyr
which ind

The fol
cæsuras,
portions :
semipede.

Seaso

Day"

the movement correspond to the sentiment, by the proper use of the several kinds of feet: and this is the first and most general source of expression in numbers.

That a judicious management of the feet and pauses, may be peculiarly expressive of particular operations and sentiments, will sufficiently appear to the learner, by a few select examples under each of those heads.

In the following instance, the vast dimensions of Satan are shown by an uncommon succession of long syllables, which detain us to survey the huge arch fiend, in his fixed posture.

So stretch'd out huge in length the arch fiend lay.

The next example affords instances of the power of a Trochee beginning a line, when succeeded by an Iambus.

— and sheer within

Lights on his feet: as when a prowling wolf

Leaps o'er the fence with ease into the fold.

The trochee which begins the line shows Satan in the act of lighting: the Iambus that follows, fixes him—"Lights on his feet."

The same artifice, in the beginning of the next line, makes us see the wolf—"leap o'er the fence."—But as the mere act of leaping over the fence, is not the only circumstance to be attended to, but also the facility with which it is done, this is strongly marked, not only by the smooth foot which follows—"with ease"—itself very expressive, but likewise by a Pyrrhic preceding the last foot—"into the fold"—which indeed carries the wolf—"with ease into the fold."

The following instances show the effects produced by cæsuras, so placed as to divide the line into very unequal portions: such as that after the first, and before the last semipede.

— thus with the year

Seasons return, but not to me returns

Day" or the sweet approach of even or morn.

Here the caesura after the first semipede Day, stops us unexpectedly, and forcibly impresses the imagination with the greatness of the author's loss, the loss of sight.

No sooner had th' Almighty ceas'd, but all
The multitude of angels, with a shout
Loud" as from numbers without number" sweet
As from blest voices uttering joy.—

There is something very striking in this uncommon caesura, which suddenly stops the reader, to reflect on the importance of a particular word.

We shall close the subject, with an example containing the united powers of many of the principles which have been explained.

Dire was the tossing" deep the groans" Dèspair"
Tended the sick" busiest from couch to couch"
And, o'er them triúphant death" his dart"
Shook" but delay'd to strike.

Many of the rules and observations respecting Prosody, are taken from "Sheridan's Art of Reading;" to which book the Compiler refers the ingenious student, for more extensive information on the subject.

As punishment, it is proscribed, mathematical knowledge subsequent

PUNCTUATION.*

Punctuation is the art of dividing a written composition into sentences, or parts of sentences, by points or stops, for the purpose of marking the different pauses which the sense, and an accurate pronunciation require.

The Comma represents the shortest pause; the Semicolon, a pause double that of the comma; the Colon, double that of the semicolon; and the Period, double that of the colon.

This precise quantity or duration of each pause, cannot be defined; for it varies with the time of the whole. The same composition may be rehearsed in a quicker or a slower time, but the proportion between the pauses should be ever invariable.

In order more clearly to determine the proper application of the points, we must distinguish between an *imperfect phrase*, a *simple sentence*, and a *compound sentence*.

An imperfect phrase contains no assertion, or does not amount to a proposition or sentence: as, "Therefore; in haste; studious of praise."

A simple sentence has but one subject, and one finite verb, expressed or implied: as, "Temperance preserves health."

A compound sentence has more than one subject, or one finite verb, either expressed or understood; or it consists of two or more simple sentences connected together: as, "Good nature mends and beautifies all objects;" "Virtue refines the affections, but vice debases them."

In a sentence, the subject and the verb, or either of them, may be accompanied with several adjuncts: as, the object,

* As punctuation is intended to aid both the sense, and the pronunciation of a sentence, it could not have been exclusively discussed under the part of Syntax, or of Prosody. The nature of the subject, its extent and importance, and the grammatical knowledge which it presupposes, have induced us to make it a distinct and subsequent article.

the end, the circumstance of time, place, manner, and the like: and the subject or verb may be either immediately connected with them, or mediately; that is, by being connected with something which is connected with some other, and so on: as, "The mind, preoccupied with useful knowledge, becomes a magazine of trifles and follies."

Members of sentences may be divided into simple and compound members. See page 137.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE COMMA.

The Comma usually separates those parts of a sentence, which, though very closely connected in sense and construction, require a pause between them.

Rule 1. With respect to a simple sentence, the several words of which it consists have so near a relation to each other, that, in general, no points are requisite, except a full stop at the end of it: as, "The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom." "Every part of matter swarms with living creatures."

A simple sentence, however, when it is a long one, and the nominative case is accompanied with inseparable adjuncts, may admit of a pause immediately before the verb: as, "The good taste of the present age, has not allowed us to neglect the cultivation of the English language:" "To be totally indifferent to praise or censure, is a real defect in character."

Rule 2. When the connexion of the different parts of a simple sentence is interrupted by an imperfect phrase, a comma is usually introduced before the beginning, and at the end of this phrase: as, "I remember, *with gratitude*, his goodness to me:" "His work is, *in many respects*, very imperfect. It is, *therefore*, not much approved." But when these interruptions are slight and unimportant, the comma is better omitted; as, "Flattery is *certainly* pernicious;" "There is *surely* a pleasure in beneficence."

In the generality of compound sentences, there is frequent occasion for commas. This will appear from the following rules; some of which apply to simple, as well as to compound sentences.

RULE III. When two or more nouns occur in the same construction, they are parted by a comma: as, "Reason, virtue, answer one great aim." "The husband, wife, and children, suffered extremely." "They took away their furniture, clothes, and stock in trade." "He is alternately supported by his father, his uncle, and his elder brother."

From this rule there is mostly an exception, with regard to two nouns closely connected by a conjunction: as, "Virtue *and* vice form a strong contrast to each other." "Libertines call religion bigotry *or* superstition;" "There is a natural difference between merit *and* demerit, virtue *and* vice, wisdom *and* folly." But if the parts connected are not short, a comma may be inserted, though the conjunction is expressed: as, "Romances may be said to be miserable rhapsodies, *or* dangerous incentives to evil;" "Intemperance destroys the strength of our bodies, *and* the vigour of our minds."

RULE IV. Two or more adjectives belonging to the same substantive are likewise separated by commas: as, "Plain, honest truth, wants no artificial covering;" "David was a brave, wise, and pious man;" "A woman, gentle, sensible, well-educated, and religious;" "The most innocent pleasures are the sweetest, the most rational, the most affecting, and the most lasting."

But two adjectives, immediately connected by a conjunction, are not separated by a comma: as, "True worth is modest *and* retired;" "Truth is fair *and* artless, simple *and* sincere, uniform *and* consistent." "We must be wise *or* foolish; there is no medium."

* As a considerable pause in pronunciation, is necessary between the last noun and the verb, a comma should be inserted to denote it. But as no pause is allowable between the last adjective and the noun, under Rule IV. the comma is there properly omitted.

See WALKER'S Elements of Rhetoric.

RULE VI. Two or more verbs, having the same nominative case, and immediately following one another, are also separated by commas: as, "Virtue supports in adversity, moderates in prosperity;" "In a letter, we may advise, exhort, comfort, request, and discuss."

Two verbs immediately connected by a conjunction are an exception to the above rule: as, "The study of natural history expands and elevates the mind;" "Whether we eat or drink, labour or sleep, we should be moderate."

Two or more participles are subject to a similar rule, and exception: as, "A man, fearing, serving, and loving his Creator;" "He was happy in being loved, esteemed, and respected;" "By being admired and flattered, we are often corrupted."

RULE VI. Two or more adverbs immediately succeeding one another, must be separated by commas: as, "We are fearfully, wonderfully framed;" "Success generally depends on acting prudently, steadily, and vigorously, in what we undertake."

But when two adverbs are joined by a conjunction, they are not parted by the comma: as, "Some men sin deliberately and presumptuously;" "There is no middle state; we must live virtuously or viciously."

RULE VII. When participles are followed by something that depends on them, they are generally separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma: as, "The king, approving the plan, put it in execution;" "His talents, forming for great enterprises, could not fail of rendering him conspicuous;" "All mankind compose one family, assembled under the eye of one common Father."

RULE VIII. When a conjunction is divided by a phrase or sentence from the verb to which it belongs, such intervening phrase has usually a comma at each extremity: as, "They set out early, and, before the close of the day, arrived at the destined place."

RULE IX. Expressions in a direct address, are separated

from the rest of the sentence by commas: as, "My son, give me thy heart;" "I am obliged to you, my friends, for your many favours."

RULE X. The case absolute, and the infinitive mood absolute, are separated by commas from the body of the sentence: as, "His father dying, he succeeded to the estate;" "At length, their ministry performed, and race well run, they left the world in peace;" "To confess the truth, I was much in fault."

RULE XI. Nouns in apposition, that is, nouns added to other nouns in the same case, by way of explication or illustration, when accompanied with adjuncts, are set off by commas: as, "Paul, the apostle of the Gentiles, was eminent for his zeal and knowledge;" "The butterfly, child of the summer, flutters in the sun."

But if such nouns are single, or only form a proper name, they are not divided: as, "Paul the apostle;" "The emperor Antoninus wrote an excellent book."

RULE XII. Simple members of sentences connected by comparatives, are for the most part distinguished by a comma: as, "As the hart panteth after the water brooks, so doth my soul pant after thee;" "Beller is a dinner of herbs with love, *than* a stalled ox and hatred with it."

If the members in comparative sentences are short, the comma is, in general, better omitted: as, "How much better is it to get wisdom *than* gold!" "Mankind act *oftener* from caprice *than* reason."

RULE XIII. When words are placed in opposition to each other, or with some marked variety, they require to be distinguished by a comma: as,

"Tho' deep, yet clear; tho' gentle, yet not dull;

Strong, without rage; without overflowing, full."

"Good men, in this frail, imperfect state, are often found, not only in union *with*, but in opposition *to*, the views and conduct of one another."

Sometimes when the word with which the last preposition agrees, is single, it is better to omit the comma before

it: as, "Many states were in alliance with, and under the protection of Rome."

The same rule and restriction must be applied when two or more nouns refer to the same preposition: as, "He was composed both under the threatening, and at the approach, of a cruel and lingering death;" "He was not only the king, but the father of his people."

RULE XIV. A remarkable expression, or a short observation, somewhat in the manner of a quotation, may be properly marked with a comma: as, "It hurts a man's pride to say, I do not know;" "Plutarch calls lying, the vice of slaves."

RULE XV. Relative pronouns are connective words, and generally admit a comma before them: as, "He preaches sublimely, *who* lives a sober, righteous, and pious life;" "There is no charm in the female sex, *which* can supply the place of virtue."

But when two members, or phrases, are closely connected by a relative, restraining the general notion of the antecedent to a particular sense, the comma should be omitted: as, "Self-denial is the sacrifice which virtue must make;" "A man who is of a detracting spirit, will misconstrue the most innocent words that can be put together." In the latter example, the assertion is not of "a man in general," but of "a man who is of a detracting spirit;" and therefore they should not be separated.

The fifteenth rule applies equally to cases in which the relative is not expressed, but understood: as, "It was from piety, warm and unaffected, that his morals derived strength." "This sentiment, habitual and strong, influenced his whole conduct." In both of these examples, the relative and verb *which was*, are understood.

RULE XVI. A simple member of a sentence, contained within another, or following another, must be distinguished by the comma: as, "To improve time whilst we are blessed with health, will smooth the bed of sickness." "Very often, while we are complaining of the vanity, and the

evils of those

If, he

very c

"Revel

When

verb, w

generall

become

another.

Seven

depende

by comm

afflicted,

are huma

RULE 1

the infin

the nomi

from the

remedy is

"The fir

is, to with

RULE X

portance,

verted, the

be formed

daily and

towards the

"Our inter

"By threat

RULE XI

often be pro

besides con

ply to man

"From law

curiosity, k

evils of human life, we make that vanity, and we increase those evils."

If, however, the members succeeding each other, are very closely connected, the comma is unnecessary: as, "Revelation tells us how we may attain happiness."

When a verb in the infinitive mood, follows its governing verb, with several words between them, those words should generally have a comma at the end of them; as, "It ill becomes good and wise men, to oppose and degrade one another."

Several verbs in the infinitive mood, having a common dependence, and succeeding one another, are also divided by commas: as, "To relieve the indigent, to comfort the afflicted, to protect the innocent, to reward the deserving, are humane and noble employments."

RULE XVII. When the verb *to be* is followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, which, by transposition, might be made the nominative case to it, the former is generally separated from the latter verb, by a comma: as, "The most obvious remedy is, to withdraw from all associations with bad men." "The first and most obvious remedy against the infection, is, to withdraw from all associations with bad men."

RULE XVIII. When adjuncts or circumstances are of importance, and often when the natural order of them is inverted, they may be set off by commas: as, "Virtue must be formed and supported, not by unfrequent acts, but by daily and repeated exertions." "Vices, like shadows, towards the evening of life, grow great and monstrous." "Our interests are interwoven by threads innumerable;" "By threads innumerable, our interests are interwoven."

RULE XIX. Where a verb is understood, a comma may often be properly introduced. This is a general rule, which, besides comprising some of the preceding rules, will apply to many cases not determined by any of them: as, "From law arises security; from security, curiosity; from curiosity, knowledge." In this example, the verb "arises"

is understood before "curiosity" and "knowledge;" at which words a considerable pause is necessary.

RULE IX. The words, *nay, so, hence, again, first, secondly, formerly, now, lastly, once more, above all, on the contrary, in the next place, in short*, and all other words and phrases of the same kind, must generally be separated from the context by a comma: as, "Remember thy best and first friend; *formerly*, the supporter of thy infancy, and the guide of thy childhood; *now*, the guardian of thy youth, and the hope of thy coming years." "He feared want, *hence*, he over-valued riches." "This conduct may heal the difference, *nay*, it may constantly prevent any in future." "Finally, I shall only repeat what has been often justly said." "If the spring put forth no blossoms, in summer there will be no beauty, and in autumn, no fruit; *so*, if youth be trifled away without improvement, riper years may be contemptible, and old age miserable."

In many of the foregoing rules and examples, great regard must be paid to the length of the clauses, and the proportion which they bear to one another. An attention to the sense of any passage, and to the clear, easy communication of it, will, it is presumed, with the aid of the preceding rules, enable the student to adjust the proper pauses, and the places for inserting the commas.

CHAPTER II.

OF THE SEMICOLON.

THE Semicolon is used for dividing a compound sentence into two or more parts, not so closely connected as those which are separated by a comma, nor yet so little dependent on each other, as those which are distinguished by a colon.

The semicolon is sometimes used, when the preceding member of the sentence does not of itself give a complete sense, but depends on the following clause: and sometimes when the sense of that member would be complete without

the
desir
impr
is la
is go
"I
world
even
"S
bottom
"P
opera
that k
future
which

THE
more
rated b
rate di
The
cases.

1. W
but follo
tation o
tricate b
reveals
confesse
discover

2. W
greater
or concl
his voice
forth his
tual rest

the concluding one: as in the following instances: "As the desire of approbation, when it works according to reason, improves the amiable part of our species in every thing that is laudable; so nothing is more destructive to them when it is governed by vanity and folly."

"Experience teaches us, that an entire retreat from worldly affairs, is not what religion requires; nor does it even enjoin a long retreat from them"

"Straws swim upon the surface; but pearls lie at the bottom."

"Philosophers assert, that Nature is unlimited in her operations; that she has inexhaustible treasures in reserve; that knowledge will always be progressive; and that all future generations will continue to make discoveries, of which we have not the least idea."

CHAPTER III.

OF THE COLON.

THE Colon is used to divide a sentence into two or more parts, less connected than those which are separated by a semicolon; but not so independent as separate distinct sentences.

The Colon may be properly applied in the three following cases:

1. When a member of a sentence is complete in itself, but followed by some supplemental remark, or further illustration of the subject: as, "Nature felt her inability to extricate herself from the consequences of guilt: the gospel reveals the plan of Divine interposition and aid." "Nature confessed some atonement to be necessary: the gospel discovers that the necessary atonement is made."

2. When several semicolons have preceded, and a still greater pause is necessary, in order to mark the connecting or concluding sentiment: as, "A divine legislator, uttering his voice from heaven; an almighty governor, stretching forth his arm to punish or reward; informing us of perpetual rest prepared hereafter for the righteous, and of indig-

nation and wrath awaiting the wicked : these are the considerations which overawe the world, which support integrity, and check guilt."

3. The Colon is commonly used when an example, a quotation, or a speech is introduced : as, "The Scriptures give us an amiable representation of the Deity, in these words: 'God is love.'" "He was often heard to say: 'I have done with the world, and I am willing to leave it.'"

The propriety of using a colon, or semicolon, is sometimes determined by a conjunction's being expressed, or not expressed : as, "Do not flatter yourselves with the hope of perfect happiness: there is no such thing in the world." "Do not flatter yourselves with the hope of perfect happiness; for there is no such thing in the world."

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE PERIOD.

WHEN a sentence is complete and independent, and not connected in construction with the following sentence, it is marked with a Period.

Some sentences are independent of each other, both in their sense and construction : as, "Fear God. Honour the king. Have charity towards all men." Others are independently in their grammatical construction : as, "The Supreme Being changes not, either in his desire to promote our happiness, or in the plan of his administration. One light always shines upon us from above. One clear and direct path is always pointed out to man."

A period may sometimes be admitted between two sentences, though they are joined by a disjunctive or copulative conjunction. For the quality of the point does not always depend on the connective particle, but on the sense and structure of sentences : as, "Recreation though they may be of an innocent kind, require steady government, to keep them within a due and limited province. But such as are of an irregular and vicious nature, are not to be governed, but to be banished from every well-regulated mind."

Interrogation.) **INTERROGATION.**

257

"He who lifts himself up to the observation and notice of the world, is, of all men, the least likely to avoid censure. For he draws upon himself a thousand eyes, that will narrowly inspect him in every part."

The period should be used after every abbreviated word: as, "M. S. P. S. N. B. A. D. O. S. N. S." &c.

CHAPTER V.

Of the Dash, Notes of Interrogation and Exclamation, &c.

THE DASH.

THE DASH, though often used improperly by hasty and incoherent writers, may be introduced with propriety, where the sentence breaks off abruptly; where a significant pause is required; or where there is an unexpected turn in the sentiment: as, "If thou art he, so much respected once—but, oh! how fallen! how degraded!" "If acting conformably to the will of our Creator;—if promoting the welfare of mankind around us;—if securing our own happiness;—are objects of the highest moment:—then we are loudly called upon, to cultivate and extend the great interests of religion and virtue."

"Here lies the great—False marble, where!

Nothing but sordid dust lies here."

Besides the points which mark the pauses in discourse, there are others, which denote a different modulation of voice, in correspondence to the sense. These are,

The Interrogation point.

The Exclamation point.

The Parenthesis.

INTERROGATION.

A note of Interrogation is used at the end of an interrogative sentence; that is, when a question is asked: as, "Who will accompany me?" "Shall we always be friends?"

Questions which a person asks himself in contemplation, ought to be terminated by points of interrogation: as, "Who adorned the heavens with such exquisite beauty?"

"At whose command do the planets perform their constant revolutions?"

A point of interrogation is improper after sentences which are not questions, but only expressions of admiration, or of some other emotion.

"How many instances have we of chastity and excellence in the fair sex!"

"With what prudence does the son of Sirach advise us in the choice of our companions!"

A note of interrogation should not be employed, in cases where it is only said a question has been asked, and where the words are not used as a question. "The Cyprians asked me, why I wept." To give this sentence the interrogative form, it should be expressed thus: "The Cyprians said to me, 'Why dost thou weep?'"

EXCLAMATION.

The note of Exclamation is applied to expressions of sudden emotion, surprise, joy, grief, &c. and also to invocations or addresses: as, "My friend! this conduct amazes me!" "Bless the Lord, O my soul! and forget not all his benefits!"

"Oh! had we both our humble state maintain'd,
And safe in peace and poverty remain'd!"

"Hear me, O Lord! for thy loving kindness is great!"

It is difficult, in some cases, to distinguish between an interrogative and exclamatory sentence; but a sentence, in which any wonder or admiration is expressed, and no answer either expected or implied, may be always properly terminated by a note of exclamation: as, "How much vanity in the pursuits of men!" "Who can sufficiently express the goodness of our Creator?" "What is more amiable than virtue!"

The interrogation and exclamation points are indeterminate as to their quantity or time, and may be equivalent in that respect to a semicolon, a colon, or a period, as the sense may require. They mark an elevation of the voice.

The utility of the points of Interrogation and Exclamation, appears from the following examples, in which the meaning is signified and discriminated solely by the points.

"What condescension!"

"What condescension?"

"How great was the sacrifice!"

"How great was the sacrifice?"

PARENTHESIS.

A Parenthesis is a clause containing some necessary information, or useful remark, introduced into the body of a sentence obliquely, and which may be omitted without injuring the grammatical construction: as,

"Know then this truth, (enough for man to know,)

Virtue alone is happiness below."

"And was the ransom paid? It was; and paid

(What can exalt his bounty more?) for thee."

"To gain a posthumous reputation, is to save four or five letters (for what is a name besides?) from oblivion."

"Know ye not, brethren, (for I speak to them that know the law,) how that the law hath dominion over a man as long as he liveth?"

If the incidental clause is short, or perfectly coincides with the rest of the sentence; it is not proper to use the parenthetical characters. The following instances are therefore improper uses of the parenthesis. "Speak you (who saw) his wonders in the deep." "Every planet (as the Creator has made nothing in vain) is most probably inhabited." "He found them asleep again; (for their eyes were heavy;) neither knew they what to answer him."

The parenthesis marks a moderate depression of the voice, and may be accompanied with every point which the sense would require, if the parenthetical characters were omitted. It ought to terminate with the same kind of stop which the member has, that precedes it; and to contain that stop within the parenthetical marks. We must however, except cases of interrogation and exclamation: as, "While they

wish to please, (and why should they not wish it?) they disdain dishonourable means." "It was represented by an analogy, (Oh, how inadequate!) which was borrowed from paganism." See the *Oclavo Grammar*, on this subject.

There are other characters, which are frequently made use of in composition, and which may be explained in this place, viz.

An Apostrophe, marked thus ' is used to abbreviate or shorten a word : as, 'tis for it is : tho' for though : e'en for even : judg'd for judged. Its chief use is to show the genitive case of nouns : as, "A man's property ; a woman's ornament."

A Caret, marked thus ^ is placed where some word happens to be left out in writing, and which is inserted over the line. This mark is also called a circumflex, when placed over a particular vowel, to denote a long syllable : as, "Euphrates."

A Hyphen, marked thus - is employed in connecting compounded words ; as, "Lap-dog, tea-pot, pre-existence, self-love, to-morrow, mother-in-law."

It is also used when a word is divided, and the former part is written or printed at the end of one line, and the latter part at the beginning of another. In this case, it is placed at the end of the first line, not at the beginning of the second.

The Acute Accent, marked thus ' : as, "Fancy." The Grave thus ` as, "Favour."

In English, the Accentual marks are chiefly used in spelling-books and dictionaries, to mark the syllables which require a particular stress of the voice in pronunciation.

The stress is laid on long and short syllables indiscriminately. In order to distinguish the one from the other, some writers of dictionaries have placed the grave on the former, and the acute on the latter, in this manner : "Minor, mineral, lively, lived, rival, river."

The proper mark to distinguish a long syllable, is this " : as, "Rāy:" and a short one this " : as, "Fōly." This last mark is called a breve.

A Dieresis, thus marked " , consists of two points placed over one of the two vowels that would otherwise make a diphthong, and parts them into two syllables : as, "Crēator, cōldjutor, aērīal."

A Section, marked thus §, is the division of a discourse, or chapter, into less parts or portions.

A Paragraph ¶ denotes the beginning of a new subject, or a sentence not connected with the foregoing. This character is chiefly used in the Old, and in the New Testaments.

A Quotation " ". Two inverted commas are generally placed at the beginning of a phrase or a passage, which is quoted or transcribed from the speaker or author in his own words ; and two commas in their direct position, are placed at the conclusion : as,

"The proper study of mankind is man."

Crotchets or Brackets [] serve to enclose a word or sentence, which is to be explained in a note, or the explanation itself, or a word or a sentence which is intended to supply some deficiency, or to rectify some mistake.

An Index or Hand { points out a remarkable passage, or something that requires particular attention.

A Brace } is used in poetry at the end of a triplet or three lines, which have the same rhyme.

Braces are also used to connect a number of words with one common term, and are introduced to prevent a repetition in writing or printing.

An Asterisk, or little star *, directs the reader to some note in the margin, or at the bottom of the page. Two or three asterisks generally denote the omission of some letters in a word, or of some bold or indelicate expression, or some defect in the manuscript.

An Ellipsis — is also used, when some letters in a word, or some words in a verse, are omitted: as, "The k—g," for "the king."

An Obelisk, which is marked thus †, and Parallels thus ‖, together with the letters of the Alphabet, and figures, are used as references to the margin, or bottom of the page.

PARAGRAPHS.

It may not be improper to insert, in this place, a few general directions respecting the division of a composition into paragraphs.

Different subjects, unless they are very short, or very numerous in small compass, should be separated into paragraphs.

When one subject is continued to a considerable length, the larger divisions of it should be put into paragraphs. And it will have a good effect to form the breaks, when it can properly be done, at sentiments of the most weight, or that call for peculiar attention.

The facts, premises, and conclusions, of a subject, sometimes naturally point out the separations into paragraphs: and each of these, when of great length, will again require subdivisions at their most distinctive parts.

In cases which require a connected subject to be formed into several paragraphs, a suitable turn of expression, exhibiting the connexion of the broken parts, will give beauty and force to the division. See the *Octavo Grammar*.

DIRECTIONS respecting the use of CAPITAL LETTERS.

It was formerly the custom to begin every noun with a capital: but as this practice was troublesome, and gave the writing or printing a crowded and confused appearance, it has been discontinued. It is, however, very proper to begin with a capital,

1. The first word of every book, chapter, letter, note, or any other piece of writing.

2. The first word after a period; and, if the two sentences

are to
clam
But
are th
the la
excep
long,
scorne
ledge
3.
Alm
Mess
4. Pr
rivers,
Thame
5. Ad
as, "Gr
6. Th
or when
ancient
says, "T
when a c
capital is
goes bef
The f
begin wit
7. Eve
books:
guage;"
tory."
8. The
9. The
capitals:
Other
pitals, wh
nal subject

are *totally independent*, after a note of interrogation or exclamation.

But if a number of interrogative or exclamatory sentences, are thrown into one general group; or if the construction of the latter sentences depends on the former, all of them, except the first, may begin with a small letter: as, "How long, ye simple ones, will ye love simplicity? and the scornors delight in their scorning? and fools hate knowledge?" "Alas! how different! yet how like the same!"

3. Appellations of the Deity: as, "God, Jehovah, the Almighty, the Supreme Being, the Lord, Providence, the Messiah, & Holy Spirit."

4. Proper names of persons, places, streets, mountains, rivers, ships: as, "George, York, the Strand, the Alps, the Thames, the Seahorse."

5. Adjectives derived from the proper names of places; as, "Grecian, Roman, English, French, and Italian."

6. The first word of a quotation, introduced after a colon, or when it is in a direct form: as, "Always remember this ancient maxim: 'Know thyself.'" "Our great Lawgiver says, 'Take up thy cross daily, and follow me.'" But when a quotation is brought in obliquely after a comma, a capital is unnecessary: as, "Solomon observes, 'that pride goes before destruction.'"

The first word of an example may also very properly begin with a capital: as, "Temptation proves our virtue."

7. Every substantive and principal word in the titles of books: as, "Johnson's Dictionary of the English Language;" "Thomson's Seasons;" "Rollin's Ancient History."

8. The first word of every line in poetry.

9. The pronoun *I*, and the interjection *O*, are written in capitals: as, "I write:" "Hear, O earth!"

Other words, besides the preceding, may begin with capitals, when they are remarkably emphatical, or the principal subject of the composition.

APPENDIX.

CONTAINING RULES AND OBSERVATIONS FOR ASSISTING
YOUNG PERSONS TO WRITE WITH PERSPICUITY AND ACCU-
RACY: TO BE STUDIED AFTER THEY HAVE ACQUIRED A
COMPETENT KNOWLEDGE OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

PERSPICUITY

IS the fundamental quality of style : a quality essential
in every kind of writing, that for the want of it nothing can
atone. It is not to be considered as merely a sort of nega-
tive virtue, or freedom from defect. It has higher merit :
it is a degree of positive beauty. We are pleased with an
author, and consider him as deserving praise, who frees us
from all fatigue of searching for his meaning ; who carries
us through his subject without any embarrassment or con-
fusion ; whose style flows always like a limpid stream,
through which we see to the very bottom.

The study of perspicuity and accuracy of expression con-
sists of two parts : and requires attention, first, to *Single
Words and Phrases* ; and then, to the *Construction of Sen-
tences*.

PART I.

*Of PERSPICUITY and ACCURACY of EXPRESSION, with
respect to single Words and Phrases.*

THESE qualities of style, considered with regard to words
and phrases, require the following properties : PURITY, PRO-
PRIETY, and PRECISION.

CHAPTER I.

OF PURITY.

PURITY of style consists in the use of such words, and
such constructions, as belong to the idiom of the language
which we speak ; in opposition to words and phrases that
are taken from other languages, or that are ungrammatical.

Proper
obsole
All su
avoids
delicate
for ha
encum
Fore

quires t
Barren
one of
have, of
occasion
to style ;
In gener
readers ;
made as
any forei

PROPR
the best
intend to
and to wo
the ideas
e, it may
licisms, o
kind, and
the words
nor fully e
To pres
we must a
ing ; be c
avoid the
ambiguous
words and

obsolete, new-coined, or used without proper authority. All such words and phrases as the following, should be avoided: *Quoth he*; *I wish you*; *while*; *behest*; *selfsame*; *delicatesse*, for delicacy; *politeness*, for politeness; *hauteur*, for haughtiness; *incumberment*, *connexity*, *martyrised*, for encumbrance, connexion, martyred.

Foreign and learned words, unless where necessity requires them, should never be admitted into our composition. Barren languages may need such assistance, but ours is not one of these. A multitude of Latin words, in particular, have, of late, been poured in upon our language. On some occasions, they give an appearance of elevation and dignity to style; but they often render it stiff and apparently forced. In general, a plain, native style, is more intelligible to all readers; and, by a proper management of words, it can be made as strong and expressive as this Latinised English, or any foreign idioms.

CHAPTER II. OF PROPRIETY.

PROPRIETY of language is the selection of such words as the best usage has appropriated to those ideas, which we intend to express by them; in opposition to low expressions, and to words and phrases which would be less significant of the ideas that we mean to convey. Style may be pure, that is, it may be strictly English, without Scotticisms or Gallicisms, or ungrammatical, irregular expressions of any kind, and may, nevertheless, be deficient in propriety: for the words may be ill chosen, not adapted to the subject, nor fully expressive of the author's sense.

To preserve propriety, therefore, in our words and phrases, we must avoid *low expressions*; *supply words that are wanting*; be careful not to use the same word in different senses; avoid the *injudicious use of technical phrases, equivocal or ambiguous words, unintelligible expressions, and all such words and phrases as are not adapted to our meaning*.

1. *Avoid low expressions* : such as, "Topsy turvy, hurly burly, pellmell; having a month's mind for a thing; currying favour with a person; attending on the great," &c.

"Meantime the Britons, left to shift for themselves, were forced to call in the Saxons for their defence." The phrase "*left to shift for themselves*," is rather a low phrase, and too much in the familiar style to be proper in a grave treatise.

2. *Supply words that are wanting*. "Arbitrary power I look upon as a greater evil than anarchy itself, as much as a savage is a happier state of life than a slave at the oar." it should have been, "as much as *the state* of a savage is happier than *that* of a slave at the oar." "He has not treated this subject liberally, by the views of others as well as his own." "By *adverting* to the views of others," would have been better. "This generous action greatly increased his former services;" it should have been, "greatly increased *the merit* of his former services." "By the pleasures of the imagination or fancy (which I shall use promiscuously) I here mean," &c. This passage ought to have had the word "terms" supplied, which would have made it correct: "*terms* which I shall use promiscuously."

It may be proper in this place to observe, that articles and prepositions are sometimes improperly omitted; as in the following instances: "How immense the difference between the pious and profane!" "Death is the common lot of all; of good men and bad." They should have had the article and preposition repeated: "How immense the difference between *the* pious and *the* profane!" "Death is the common lot of all; *of* good men and *of* bad."

The repetition of articles and prepositions is proper, when we intend to point out the objects of which we speak, as distinguished from each other, or in contrast; and when we wish that the reader's attention should rest on that distinction: as, "Our sight is at once *the* most delightful, and *the* most useful of all our senses."

3. *In the same sentence, be careful not to use the same word too frequently.* — “One may have an air of such plainness, simplicity and knowledge of the matter, that it may naturally produce some motions of the head and body, which might become the hebetude of the bar.”

The pronoun *it* is here twice used, in such a manner as to destroy perspicuity in the sentence.

Gregory favoured the undertaking, for no other reason than this, that the manager, in countenance, favoured his friend.” It should have been, “resembled his friend.”

“Charity expands our hearts in love to God and man: it is by the virtue of charity that the rich are blessed, and the poor supplied. In this sentence, the word “charity” is improperly used in two different senses; for the highest benevolence, and for almsgiving.

4. *Avoid the injudicious use of technical terms.* To inform those who do not understand sea-phrases, that “We tacked to the larboard, and stood off to sea,” would be expressing ourselves very obscurely. Technical phrases not being in current use, but only the peculiar dialect of a particular class, we should never use them but when we know they will be understood.

5. *Avoid equivocal or ambiguous words.* The following sentences are exceptionable in this respect. “As for such animals as are mortal or noxious, we have a right to destroy them.” “I long since learned to like nothing but what you do.” “He aimed at nothing less than the crown,” may denote either, “Nothing was less aimed at by him than the crown,” or “Nothing inferior to the crown could satisfy his ambition.” “I will have mercy, and not sacrifice.” The first part of this sentence denotes, “I will exercise mercy;” whereas it is in this place employed to signify, “I require others to exercise it.” The translation should therefore have been accommodated to these different meanings. “There were both much more ancient among the

Persians, than Zoroaster or Zerdusht." The or in this sentence is equivocal, and may be either as a copulative to synonymous words, or as a copulative to different things. If, therefore, the reader does not know that Zoroaster and Zerdusht mean the same person, he will mistake the sense. "The rising tomb is lofty, and the base?" "And thus the son the servant" &c. &c. &c. Did the tomb bear the column, or the column the tomb? Did the son address the sire, or the sire the son?

6. *Avoid unintelligible and inconsistent words or phrases.*

"I have observed," says Steele, "that the superiority among these coffeehouse politicians, proceeds from an opinion of gallantry and fashion." This sentence, considered in itself, evidently conveys no meaning. First, it is not said whose opinion, their own, or that of others: Secondly, it is not said what opinion, or of what sort, favourable or unfavourable, true or false, but in general, "an opinion of gallantry and fashion," which contains no definite expression of any meaning. With the joint assistance of the context, reflection, and conjecture, we shall perhaps conclude that the author intended to say; "That the rank among these politicians was determined by the opinion generally entertained of the rank, in point of gallantry and fashion, that each of them had attained."

"This temper of mind," says an author, speaking of humility, "keeps our understanding tight about us." Whether the author had any meaning in this expression, or what it was, is not easy to determine.

Sometimes a writer runs on in a specious verbosity, amusing his reader with synonymous terms and identical propositions, well-turned periods, and high sounding words; but at the same time, using those words so indefinitely, that the reader can either affix no meaning at all to them, or may affix to them almost any meaning he pleases.

"If it is asked," says a late writer, "whence arises the harmony, or beauty of language? what are the rules for obtaining

It? the answer is obvious. Whatever renders a period sweet and pleasant, makes it agreeable. A good ear is the gift of nature; it may be improved, but not acquired by art. Whoever is not a poet, should scarcely need dry critical precepts to enable him to write a true *Strophæus*, and melody of verse. Just numbers, accurate proportions, a musical harmony, significant figures, and that decorum which is the result of all these, are unison with the human mind.

The following is a poetical example of the same in which there is scarcely a glimpse of meaning, though it was composed by an eminent poet.

From harmony, from heavenly harmony,

This universal frame began:

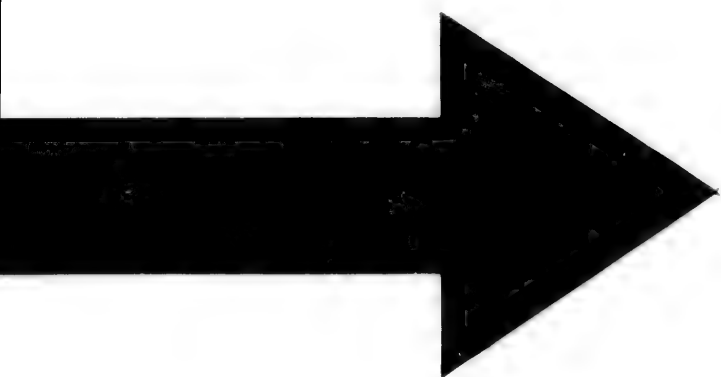
From harmony to harmony

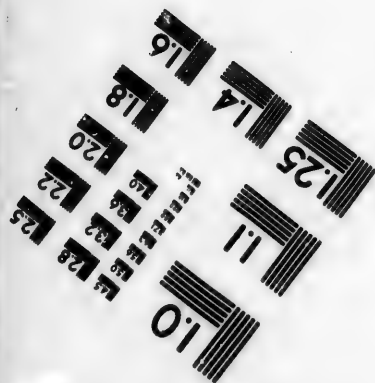
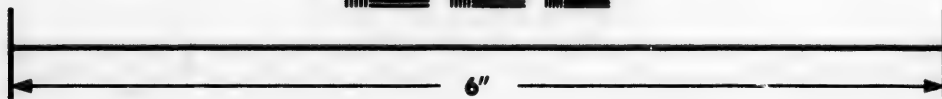
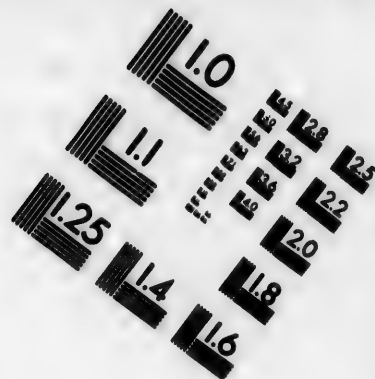
Thro' all the compass of the notes it ran,

The diapason closing full in man.

In general, it may be said, that in writings of this stamp, we must accept of sound instead of sense; being assured, that if we meet with little that can inform the judgment, we shall at least find nothing that will offend the ear. And perhaps this is one reason that we pass over such smooth language, without suspecting that it contains little or no meaning. In order to write or speak clearly and intelligibly, two things are especially requisite: one, that we have clear and distinct ideas of our subject; and the other, that our words be approved signs of those ideas. That persons who think confusedly, should express themselves obscurely, is not to be wondered at; for embarrassed, obscure, and feeble sentences, are generally, if not always, the result of embarrassed, obscure, and feeble thought; but that persons of judgment, who are accustomed to scrutinize their ideas, and the signification of their words, should sometimes write without any meaning, is, at first sight, matter of admiration. This, however, when further considered, appears to be an effect derived from the same cause, indistinctness of conception, and inattention to the exact import of words. The







Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5
3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100

10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100

occasions on which we are most apt to speak and write in this unintelligible manner, are the following.

The *first* is, when we are under the influence of metaphor. Writers who are fond of this mode of style, are generally disposed to continue it too long, and to pursue it too far.

They are often misled by a desire of fastening on the several properties of a metaphor which they have ushered into the discourse, without taking the trouble to examine whether there are any qualities in the subject, to which these properties can, with justice and perspicuity, be applied. The following instance of this sort of writing is from an author of considerable eminence. "Man must acquire a very peculiar and strong habit of turning their view inward, in order to explore the interior regions and recesses of the mind, the hollow caverns of deep thought, the private seats of fancy, and the wastes and wildernesses, as well as the more fruitful and cultivated tracts of this obscure climate." A most wonderful way of telling us, that it is difficult to trace the operations of the mind. The author having determined to represent the human mind under the metaphor of a country, revolved in his thoughts the various objects which might be found in a country, without considering whether there are any things in the mind properly analogous to these. Hence the strange parade he makes with *regions and recesses, hollow caverns and private seats, wastes and wildernesses, fruitful and cultivated tracts*; words which, though they have a precise meaning, as applied to country, have no definite signification, as applied to mind.

The *second* occasion of our being apt to write unintelligibly, is that wherein the terms most frequently occurring, denote things which are of a complicated nature, and to which the mind is not sufficiently familiarised. Of these the instances are numberless in every tongue; such as Government, church, state, constitution, power, legislature, jurisdiction, &c.

The *third* and principal occasion of unintelligible writing, is, when the terms employed are very abstract, and conse-

quently of very extensive signification. Thus the word *lion* is more distinctly apprehended by the mind than the word *beast*, because the *lion* is more *proper* than *being*.

The 7th and last rule for propriety in our words and phrases, is, *to avoid all those which are not adapted to the ideas we mean to communicate, or which are less significant than others of those ideas.* "He feels any sorrow that may arise at man;" better "happen to man." "The consciousness of approving one's self a benefactor, is the best recompense for being so;" it should have been "consciousness." He firmly believed the divine precept, "There is not a sparrow falls to the ground," &c. It should have been "*doctrine*."

"It is but opening the eye, and the scene enters." A scene cannot be said to *enter*: an actor enters; but a scene *appears* or *presents itself*.

"We immediately assent to the beauty of an object, without inquiring into the causes of it." It is proper to say, that we *assent* to the truth of a proposition; but it cannot so well be said, that we *assent to the beauty of an object*. *Acknowledge* would have expressed the sense with propriety.

"The sense of feeling, can, indeed, give us a notion of extension, shape, and all other ideas that enter at the eye, except colours." *Extension* and *shape* can, with no propriety, be called *ideas*; they are properties of matter. Neither is it accurate, to speak of any sense giving us a *notion of ideas*: our senses give us the ideas themselves. The meaning of the sentence would have been proper, and much clearer, if the author had expressed himself thus: "The sense of feeling can, indeed, give us the idea of extension, figure, and all the other properties of matter, which are perceived by the eye, except colours."

"The covetous man never has a sufficiency; although he has what is enough for nature," is much inferior to, "The covetous man never has enough; although he has what is sufficient for nature."

"A traveller observes the most striking objects he sees; he

general remarks all the motions of his enemy ;" better thus :
 " A traveller remarks," &c. : " A general observes," &c.

" This measure enlarged his school, and obliged him to
 increase the buildings." It should be, " increased his school ;"
 and " *enlarge* the buildings."

" He applied a medicine before the poison had time to
 work ;" better thus : " He applied an *antidote*," &c.

" The poison of a suspicious temper frequently throws out
 its bad qualities, on all who are within its reach ;" better,
 " throws out its *malignant* qualities."

" I will go except I should be ill ;" " I saw them all un-
 less two or three : " corrected thus : " *unless* I should be
 ill ;" " *except* two or three."

A selection of words and phrases, which are peculiarly
 expressive of the ideas we design to communicate ; or which
 are as particular and determinate in their signification, as is
 consistent with the nature and the scope of the discourse ;
 possesses great beauty, and cannot fail to produce a good
 effect.

CHAPTER III.

OF PRECISION.

Precision is the third requisite of perspicuity with respect
 to words and phrases. It signifies retrenching superfluities,
 and pruning the expression, so as to exhibit neither more
 nor less than an exact copy of the person's idea who uses it.

The words used to express ideas may be faulty in three
 respects. 1st, They may not express the idea which the
 author intends, but some other which only resembles it ;
 secondly, They may express that idea, but not fully and
 completely ; thirdly, They may express it, together with
 something more than is intended. Precision stands opposed
 to these three faults, but chiefly to the last. Propriety im-
 plies a freedom from the two former faults. The words
 which are used may be *proper* ; that is, they may express
 the idea intended, and they may express it fully ; but to
 be *precise*, signifies that they express *that idea and no more*.

The use and importance of precision may be deduced from the nature of the human mind. It never can view, clearly and distinctly, more than one object at a time. If it must look at two or three together, especially objects that have resemblance or connexion, it finds itself confused and embarrassed. It cannot clearly perceive in what they agree, and in what they differ. Thus, were any object, suppose some animal, to be presented to my view, of whose structure I wished to form a distinct notion, I should desire all its trappings to be taken off; I should require it to be brought before me by itself, and to stand alone, that there might be nothing to divide my attention. The same is the case with words. If, when any one would inform me of his meaning, he also tells me more than what conveys it; if he joins foreign circumstances to the principal objects; if, by unnecessarily varying the expression, he shifts the point of view, and makes me see sometimes the object itself, and sometimes another thing that is connected with it, he thereby obliges me to look on several objects at once, and I lose sight of the principal. He loads the animal he is showing me, with so many trappings and collars, that I cannot distinctly view it; or he brings so many of the same species before me, somewhat resembling, and yet somewhat differing, that I see none of them clearly. When an author tells me of his hero's courage in the day of battle, the expression is precise, and I understand it fully: but if, from the desire of multiplying words, he should praise his courage and fortitude; at the moment he joins these words together, my idea begins to waver. He means to express one quality more strongly, but he is in truth expressing two: courage resists danger; fortitude supports pain. The occasion of exerting each of these qualities is different; and being led to think of both together, when only one of them should be considered, my view is rendered unsteady, and my conception of the object indistinct.

All subjects do not equally require precision. It is sufficient, on many occasions, that we have a general view of

the meaning. The subject, perhaps, is of the known and familiar kind, and we are in no hazard of mistaking the sense of the author, though every word which he uses is not precise and exact.

Many authors offend against this rule of precision. A considerable one, in describing a bad action, expresses himself thus: "It is to remove a good and orderly affection, and to introduce an ill or disorderly one; to commit an action that is ill, immoral, and unjust; to do ill, or to act in prejudice of integrity, good nature, and worth."

A crowd of unmeaning or useless words is brought together by some authors, who, afraid of expressing themselves in a common and ordinary manner, and allured by an appearance of splendour, surround every thing which they mean to say with a certain copious loquacity.

The great source of a loose style in opposition to precision, is the injudicious use of the words termed *synonymous*. They are called synonymous, because they agree in expressing one principal idea; but, for the most part, if not always, they express it with some diversity in the circumstances.

The following instances show a difference in the meaning of words reputed synonymous, and point out the use of attending with care and strictness, to the exact import of words.

Custom, habit.—Custom, respects the action; habit, the actor. By custom, we mean the frequent repetition of the same act; by habit, the effect which that repetition produces on the mind or body. By the custom of walking often in the streets, one acquires a habit of idleness.

Pride, vanity.—Pride makes us esteem ourselves; vanity, makes us desire the esteem of others. It is just to say, that a man is too proud to be vain.

Haughtiness, disdain.—Haughtiness is founded on the high opinion we entertain of ourselves; disdain, on the low opinion we have of others.

Only, alone.—Only, imports that there is no other of the same kind; alone, imports being accompanied by no other. An only child, is one that has neither brother nor sister; a

child alone, is one who is left by itself. There is a difference, therefore, in precise language, between these two phrases: "Virtue only makes us happy;" and "Virtue alone makes us happy."

Wisdom, prudence.—Wisdom leads us to speak and act what is most proper. Prudence, prevents our speaking or acting improperly.

Entire, complete.—A thing is entire, by wanting none of its parts: complete, by wanting none of the appendages that belong to it. A man may have an entire house to himself, and yet not have one complete apartment.

Surprised, astonished, amazed, confounded.—I am surprised with what is new or unexpected; I am astonished at what is vast or great; I am amazed at what is incomprehensible; I am confounded by what is shocking or terrible.

Tranquillity, peace, calm.—Tranquillity, respects a situation free from trouble, considered in itself; peace, the same situation with respect to any causes that might interrupt it; calm, with regard to a disturbed situation going before or following it. A good man enjoys tranquillity, in himself; peace, with others; and calm, after the storm.

These are some of the numerous instances of words, in our language, whose significations approach, but are not precisely the same. The more the distinction in the meaning of such words is attended to, the more clearly and forcibly shall we speak or write. It may not, on all occasions, be necessary to pay a great deal of attention to very nice distinctions; yet the foregoing instances show the utility of some general care to understand the distinct import of our words.

While we are attending to precision, we must be on our guard, lest, from the desire of pruning too closely, we retrench all copiousness. Scarcely in any language are there two words that convey precisely the same idea; a person thoroughly conversant in the propriety of the language, will always be able to observe something that distinguishes them. As they are like different shades of the same colour,

an accurate writer can employ them to great advantage, by using them so as to heighten and complete the object which he presents to us. He supplies by one what was wanting in the other, to the strength, or to the finishing, of the image which he means to exhibit. But for this purpose, he must be attentive to the choice of his words, and not employ them carelessly, merely for the sake of filling up a period, or of rounding or diversifying his language, as if their signification were exactly the same, while in truth it is not. To unite copiousness and precision, to be full and easy, and at the same time correct and exact in the choice of every word, is no doubt one of the highest and most difficult attainments in writing.

PART II.

OF PERSPICUITY AND ACCURACY OF EXPRESSION, WITH RESPECT TO THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

SENTENCES, in general, should neither be very long, nor very short: long ones require close attention to make us clearly perceive the connexion of the several parts; and short ones are apt to break the sense, and weaken the connexion of thought. Yet occasionally they may both be used with force and propriety; as may be seen in the following sentences.

"If you look about you, and consider the lives of others as well as your own; if you think how few are born with honour, and how many die without name or children; how little beauty we see, and how few friends we hear of; how much poverty, and how many diseases there are in the world; you will fall down upon your knees, and instead of repining at one affliction, will admire so many blessings which you have received from the Divine hand." This is a sentence composed of several members linked together, and hanging upon one another, so that the sense of the whole is not brought out till the close. The following is an example of one in which the sense is formed into short, independent propositions, each complete within itself. "I confess, it was want of consideration that made me an author. I

Clear
wrote b
as pleas
I was to

A tra
and wh
allowed
either lo
the ear t

Where
and of
gratified

We no
an accur
four toll
& a JUDGE

PURITY
separately
shown to
ting. Th
tences, to
whole, ar

THE FI
Whatever
the mean
two cause
arrangeme
as far as r
The dispo

The fir
priety. E
tively not
where the
The relati
m, ascert

wrote because it amused me. I corrected, because it was as pleasant to me to correct as to write. I published, because I was told I might please such as it was a credit to please."

A train of sentences, constructed in the same manner, and with the same number of members, should never be allowed to succeed one another. A long succession of either long or short sentences should also be avoided; for the ear tires of either of them when too long continued.

Whereas, by a proper mixture of long and short periods, and of periods variously constructed, not only the ear is gratified; but animation and force are given to our style.

We now proceed to consider the things most essential to an accurate and a perfect sentence. They appear to be the four following: 1. CLEARNESS. 2. UNITY. 3. STRENGTH. 4. A JUDICIOUS USE OF THE FIGURES OF SPEECH.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE CLEARNESS OF A SENTENCE.

PURITY, propriety, and precision, in words and phrases separately considered, have already been explained, and shown to be necessary to perspicuous and accurate writing. The just relation of sentences, and the parts of sentences, to one another, and the due arrangement of the whole, are the subjects which remain to be discussed.

THE FIRST requisite of a perfect sentence is *Clearness*.

Whatever leaves the mind in any sort of suspense as to the meaning, ought to be avoided. Obscurity arises from two causes; either from a wrong choice of words, or a wrong arrangement of them. The choice of words and phrases, as far as regards perspicuity, has been already considered. The disposition of them comes now under consideration.

The first thing to be studied here, is grammatical propriety. But as the grammar of our language is comparatively not extensive, there may be an obscure order of words, where there is no transgression of any grammatical rule. The relations of words, or members of a period, are, with us, ascertained only by the position in which they stand.

Hence a capital rule in the arrangement of sentences is, that the words or members, most closely related, should be placed in the sentence as near to each other as possible, so as to make their mutual relation clearly appear. It will be proper to produce some instances, in order to show the importance of this rule.

1. *In the position of adverbs.* "The Romans understood liberty, at least, as well as we." These words are capable of two different senses, according as the emphasis, in reading them, is laid upon *liberty*, or upon *at least*. The words should have been thus arranged: "The Romans understood liberty as well, at least, as we."

"Theism can only be opposed to polytheism, or atheism." Is it meant that theism is capable of nothing else besides being opposed to polytheism, or atheism? This is what the words literally import, through the wrong placing of the adverb *only*. It should have been, "Theism can be opposed only to polytheism or atheism."

"By the pleasures of the imagination, I mean only such pleasures as arise originally from sight." When it is said, "*I mean only such pleasures*," it may be remarked, that the adverb *only* is not properly placed. It is not intended here to qualify the word *mean*, but *such pleasures*; and therefore should have been placed in as close connexion as possible with the word which it limits or qualifies. The style becomes more clear and neat, when the words are arranged thus: "By the pleasures of the imagination, I mean such pleasures only as arise from sight."

In the following sentence, the word *more* is not in its proper place. "There is not perhaps, any real beauty or deformity *more* in one piece of matter than another." The phrase ought to have stood thus: "Beauty or deformity in one piece of matter *more* than in another."

2. *In the position of circumstances, and of particular members.* "An author, in his dissertation on justice, that exercises

Clearness

himself :
a Briton
be ashamed
whether
tion," are
circumstances
his design
may be
tended, t
thus : "
Briton, o
any circu

The fo
of circum
after a lo
chor." O
sea shore
found by
"A great
by the re

It is a
together,
the senter
depend.
mentionin
was not a
time ago,
ther, wou
I had the
friend in

Here fo
member
less by hi
pedestal,
Here, so f
doubtful v
relates to

himself: "Are these designs which any man, who is born a Briton, in any circumstances, in any situation, ought to be ashamed or afraid to avow?" Here we are left at a loss, whether these words, "in any circumstances, in any situation," are connected with "a man born in Britain, in any circumstances or situation," or with that man's "avowing his designs in any circumstances or situation into which he may be brought." As it is probable that the latter was intended, the arrangement ought to have been conducted thus: "Are these designs which any man, who is born a Briton, ought to be ashamed or afraid, in any situation, in any circumstances, to avow?"

The following is another instance of a wrong arrangement of circumstances. "A great stone that I happened to find, after a long search, by the sea shore, served me for an anchor." One would think that the search was confined to the sea shore; but as the meaning is, that the great stone was found by the sea shore, the period ought to have run thus: "A great stone, that, after a long search, I happened to find by the sea shore, served me for an anchor."

It is a rule, too, never to crowd many circumstances together, but rather to intersperse them in different parts of the sentence, joined with the principal words on which they depend. For instance: "What I had the opportunity of mentioning to my friend, sometime ago, in conversation, was not a new thought." These two circumstances, "*sometime ago*," and "*in conversation*," which are here put together, would have had a better effect disjoined, thus: "What I had the opportunity, sometime ago, of mentioning to my friend in conversation, was not a new thought."

Here follows an example of the wrong arrangement of a member of a sentence. "The minister of state who grows less by his elevation, like a little statue placed on a mighty pedestal, will always have his jealousy strong about him." Here, so far as can be gathered from the arrangement, it is doubtful whether the object introduced, by way of simile, relates to what goes before, or to what follows. The ambi-

guity is removed by the following order. "The minister of state who, like a little statue placed on a mighty pedestal, grows less by his elevation, will always," &c.

Words expressing things connected in the thought, ought to be placed as near together as possible, even when their separation would convey no ambiguity. This will be seen in the following passages from Addison. "For the English are naturally fanciful, and very often disposed by that gloominess and melancholy of temper, which are so frequent in our nation, to many wild notions and extravagancies, to which others are not so liable." Here the verb or assertion is, by a pretty long circumstance, separated from the subject to which it refers. This might have been easily prevented, by placing the circumstance before the verb, thus: "For the English are naturally fanciful, and by that gloominess and melancholy of temper which are so frequent in our nation, are often disposed to many wild notions," &c.

"For as no mortal author, in the ordinary fate and vicissitude of things, knows to what use his works may, some time or other, be applied," &c. Better thus: "For as, in the ordinary fate and vicissitude of things, no mortal author knows to what use, some time or other, his works may be applied," &c.

From these examples, the following observations will occur: that a circumstance ought never to be placed between two capital members of a period; but either between the parts of the member to which it belongs, or in such a manner as will confine it to its proper member. When the sense admits it, the sooner a circumstance is introduced, generally speaking, the better, that the more important and significant words may possess the last place, quite disencumbered. The following sentence is, in this respect, faulty. "The Emperor was so intent on the establishment of his absolute power in Hungary, that he exposed the empire doubly to desolation and ruin for the sake of it." Better thus: "That, for the sake of it, he exposed the empire doubly to desolation and ruin."

Clear

This
differ
respec
regard
unless

The c
respec
as is p
qualifi
order i
been r
ous.—

The
confor
largest
greate
out bei
This p
the vari
the min
jects; a
action.

The c
especial
but, per
line of s

3. In
what, w
conne

A and
the mea
meaning
and disj
relatives
says an
countrym
it for a

This appears to be a proper place to observe, that when different things have an obvious relation to each other, in respect to the order of nature or time, that order should be regarded, in assigning them their places in the sentence ; unless the scope of the passages require it to be varied. The conclusion of the following lines is inaccurate in this respect : " But still there will be such a mixture of delight, as is proportioned to the degree in which any one of these qualifications is most conspicuous and prevailing." The order in which the two last words are placed, should have been reversed, and made to stand, *prevailing and conspicuous*.—They are *conspicuous*, because they *prevail*.

The following sentence is a beautiful example of strict conformity to this rule. " Our sight fills the mind with the largest variety of ideas, converses with its objects at the greatest distance, and continues the longest in action, without being tired or satiated with its proper enjoyments." This passage follows the order of nature. First, we have the variety of objects mentioned, which sight furnishes to the mind ; next, we have the action of sight on those objects ; and lastly, we have the time and continuance of its action. No order could be more natural or exact.

The order which we now recommend, is, in single words especially, frequently violated, for the sake of better sound ; but, perhaps in no instances, without a deviation from the line of strict propriety.

3. *In the disposition of the relative pronouns, who, which, what, whose, and of all those particles which express the connexion of the parts of speech with one another.*

A small error in the position of these words may cloud the meaning of the whole sentence ; and even where the meaning is intelligible, we always find something awkward and disjointed in the structure of the sentence, when these relatives are out of their proper place. " This kind of wit," says an author, " was very much in vogue among our countrymen, about an age or two ago ; who did not practise it for any oblique reason, but purely for the sake of being

witty." We are at no loss about the meaning here ; but the construction would evidently be mended by disposing the circumstance, " about an age or two ago," in such a manner as not to separate the relative *who* from its antecedent, *our countrymen* ; in this way : " About an age or two ago this kind of wit was very much in vogue among our countrymen, who did not practise it," &c.

The following passage is still more censurable. " It is folly to pretend to arm ourselves against the accidents of life, by heaping up treasures, *which* nothing can protect us against, but the good providence of our Creator." *Which* always refers grammatically to the substantive immediately preceding ; and that, in the instance just mentioned, is " treasures." The sentence ought to have stood thus : " It is folly to pretend, by heaping up treasures, to arm ourselves against the accidents of life, which nothing can protect us against," &c.

With regard to relatives, it may be farther observed, that obscurity often arises from the too frequent repetition of them, particularly of the pronouns *who* and *they*, and *them* and *theirs*, when we have occasion to refer to different persons ; as in the following sentence of Tillotson. " Men look with an evil eye upon the good that is in others, and think that *their* reputation obscures *them*, and *their* commendable qualities stand in *their* light ; and therefore *they* do what *they* can to cast a cloud over *them*, that the bright shining of *their* virtues may not obscure *them*." This is altogether careless writing. When we find these personal pronouns crowding too fast upon us, we have often no method left, but to throw the whole sentence into some other form, which may avoid those frequent references to persons who have before been mentioned.

To have the relation of every word and member of a sentence marked in the most proper and distinct manner, not only gives clearness to it, but makes the mind pass smoothly and agreeably along all the parts of it.—See the APPENDIX to the Exercises.

Uni

Tr

In

princ

and b

is req

cente

consi

bound

of one

senten

In t

scene

be hur

from s

tence,

This s

ning to

The

came t

comed

kindne

in it ha

this ma

the plac

appear

is much

unity, b

come t

comed

kindnes

Here

"The s

to his

they pu

CHAPTER II. OF THE UNITY OF A SENTENCE.

THE SECOND requisite of a perfect sentence, is its *Unity*.

In every composition, there is always some connecting principle among the parts. Some one object must reign and be predominant. But most of all, in a single sentence, is required the strictest unity. For the very nature of a sentence implies that one proposition is expressed. It may consist of parts, indeed, but these parts must be so closely bound together, as to make the impression upon the mind of one object, not of many. To preserve this unity of a sentence, the following rules must be observed.

In the *first* place, *During the course of the sentence, the scene should be changed as little as possible.* We should not be hurried by sudden transitions from person to person, nor from subject to subject. There is commonly, in every sentence, some person or thing which is the governing word. This should be continued so, if possible, from the beginning to the end of it.

The following sentence varies from this rule: "After we came to anchor, they put me on shore, where I was welcomed by all my friends, who received me with the greatest kindness." In this sentence, though the objects contained in it have a sufficient connexion with each other, yet, by this manner of representing them, by shifting so often both the place and the person, *we* and *they*, and *I* and *who*, they appear in so disunited a view, that the sense of connexion is much impaired. The sentence is restored to its proper unity, by turning it after the following manner. "Having come to an anchor, I was put on shore, where I was welcomed by all my friends, and received with the greatest kindness."

Here follows another instance of departure from the rule. "The sultan being dangerously wounded, they carried him to his tent; and, upon hearing of the defeat of his troops, they put him into a litter, which transported him to a place

of safety, at the distance of about fifteen leagues." Better thus : " The sultan being dangerously wounded, was carried to his tent ; and, on hearing of the defeat of his troops, was put into a litter, and transported to a place of safety about fifteen leagues distant."

A second rule under the head of unity, is, *Never to crowd into one sentence, things which have so little connexion, that they could bear to be divided into two or three sentences.*

The violation of this rule tends so much to perplex and obscure, that it is safer to err by too many short sentences, than by one that is overloaded and embarrassed. Examples abound in authors. " Archbishop Tillotson," says an author, " died in this year. He was exceedingly beloved by king William and queen Mary, who nominated Dr. Tension, bishop of Lincoln, to succeed him." Who would expect the latter part of this sentence to follow in consequence of the former ? " He was exceedingly beloved by both king and queen," is the proposition of the sentence. We look for some proof of this, or at least something related to it to follow ; when we are on a sudden carried off to a new proposition.

The following sentence is still worse. The author, speaking of the Greeks under Alexander, says : " Their march was through an uncultivated country, whose savage inhabitants fared hardly, having no other riches than a breed of lean sheep, whose flesh was rank and unsavoury, by reason of their continual feeding upon sea-fish." Here the scene is changed upon us again and again. The march of the Greeks, the description of the inhabitants through whose country they travelled, the account of their sheep, and the cause of their sheep being ill-tasted food, form a jumble of objects, slightly related to each other, which the reader cannot, without much difficulty, comprehend under one view.

These examples have been taken from sentences of no great length, yet very crowded. Writers who deal in long sentences, are very apt to be faulty in this article. Take, for an instance, the following from Temple. " The usual

Unity
accept
and ne
severa
facult
ing the
Wit ;
Spania
both fr
signifie
Runic
this pe
so grea
Long
mishes
ness, w
compre
a discou
progress
on in th
which e
religion
was not
made up
as had f
altogeth
men wh
the cour
propriety
continue
plishmen
the educ
the world
qualify th
The au
dissertati
reasoning
at once !

acceptation takes profit and pleasure for two different things, and not only calls the followers or votaries of them by the several names of busy and idle men ; but distinguishes the faculties of the mind, that are conversant about them, calling the operations of the first, *Wisdom* ; and of the other, *Wit* ; which is a Saxon word, used to express what the Spaniards and Italians call *Ingenio*, and the French *Esprit*, both from the Latin, though I think wit more particularly signifies that of poetry, as may occur in remarks on the Runic language." When the reader arrives at the end of this perplexed sentence, he is surprised to find himself at so great distance from the object with which he set out.

Long, involved, and intricate sentences, are great blemishes in composition. In writers of considerable correctness, we find a period sometimes running out so far, and comprehending so many particulars, as to be more properly a discourse than a sentence. An author, speaking of the progress of our language after the time of Cromwell, runs on in this manner : " To this succeeded that licentiousness which entered with the restoration, and, from infecting our religion and morals, fell to corrupt our language ; which last was not like to be much improved by those who at that time made up the court of king Charles the Second ; either such as had followed him in his banishment, or who had been altogether conversant in the dialect of these times, or young men who had been educated in the same country : so that the court, which used to be the standard of correctness and propriety of speech, was then, and I think has ever since continued, the worst school in England for that accomplishment ; and so will remain, till better care be taken in the education of our nobility, that they may set out into the world with some foundation of literature, in order to qualify them for patterns of politeness."

The author, in place of a sentence, has here given a loose dissertation upon several subjects. How many different facts, reasonings, and observations, are here presented to the mind at once ! and yet so linked together by the author that they

all make parts of a sentence, which admits of no greater division in pointing than a colon, between any of its members.

It may be of use here to give a specimen of a long sentence, broken down into several periods; by which we shall more clearly perceive the disadvantages of long sentences, and how easily they may be amended. Here follows the sentence in its original form: "Though in yesterday's paper we showed how every thing that is great, new, or beautiful, is apt to affect the imagination with pleasure, we must own, that it is impossible for us to assign the necessary cause of this pleasure, because we know neither the nature of an idea, nor the substance of a human soul: and therefore, for want of such a light, all that we can do, in speculations of this kind, is, to reflect on those operations of the soul that are most agreeable; and to range, under their proper heads, what is pleasing or displeasing to the mind, without being able to trace out the several necessary and efficient causes, from whence the pleasure or displeasure arises."

The following amendment, besides breaking down the period into several sentences, exhibits some other useful alterations: "In yesterday's paper, we showed that every thing which is great, new, or beautiful, is apt to affect the imagination with pleasure. We must own, that it is impossible for us to assign the efficient cause of this pleasure, because we know not the nature either of an idea, or of the human soul. All that we can do, therefore, in speculations of this kind, is to reflect on the operations of the soul which are most agreeable, and to range under proper heads what is pleasing or displeasing to the mind."

A third rule for preserving the unity of sentences, is, to keep clear of all unnecessary parentheses.

On some occasions, when the sense is not too long suspended by them, and when they are introduced in a proper place, they may add both to the vivacity and to the energy of the sentence. But for the most part their effect is extremely bad. They are wheels within wheels; sen-

Stre
tence
dispo
to in
Th

But i
impro
proac
is tim
is alw
not im
separa
thus:
choic
not irr
treat;
See the

THE
By t
the sev
to the
membe
A se
its part
cumsta
pression
The
is, to pr
It is
some in
jure it.
synony
and the

tences in the midst of sentences ; the perplexed method of disposing of some thought, which a writer wants judgment to introduce in its proper place.

The parenthesis in this sentence is striking and proper ;

“ And was the ransom paid ? It was ; and paid

“ (What can exalt the bounty more ?) for thee.”

But in the following sentence, we become sensible of an impropriety in the use of it. “ If your hearts secretly reproach you for the wrong choice you have made, (as there is time for repentance and retreat ; and a return to wisdom is always honourable,) bethink yourselves that the evil is not irreparable.” It would be much better to express in a separate sentence, the thoughts contained in this parenthesis ; thus : “ If your hearts secretly reproach you for the wrong choice you have made, bethink yourselves that the evil is not irreparable. Still there is time for repentance and retreat ; and a return to wisdom is always honourable.”——
See the APPENDIX to the Exercises.

CHAPTER III.

OF THE STRENGTH OF A SENTENCE.

THE THIRD requisite of a perfect sentence, is, *Strength*.

By this is meant such a disposition and management of the several words and members, as shall bring out the sense to the best advantage, and give every word and every member, its due weight and force.

A sentence may be clear, it may also be compact in all its parts, or have the requisite unity, and yet, by some circumstance in the structure, it may fail in that strength of impression, which a better management would have produced.

The *first* rule for promoting the strength of a sentence, is, *to prune it of all redundant words and members.*

It is a general maxim, that any words which do not add some importance to the meaning of a sentence, always injure it. Care should therefore be exercised with respect to synonymous words, expletives, circumlocutions, tautologies, and the expressions of unnecessary circumstances. The

attention becomes remiss, when words are multiplied without a correspondent multiplication of ideas. "Content with deserving a triumph, he refused the honour of it;" is better language than to say, "Being content with deserving it;" &c.

"In the Attic commonwealth," says an author, "it was the privilege and birthright of every citizen and poet, to rail aloud and in public." Better simply thus: "In the Attic commonwealth, it was the privilege of every citizen to rail in public."

Another expresses himself thus: "They returned back again to the same city from whence they came forth;" instead of, "They returned to the city whence they came." The five words, *back, again, same, from, and forth*, are mere expletives, that have neither use nor beauty, and are therefore to be regarded as encumbrances.

The word *but* is often improperly used with *that*: as, "There can be no doubt *but that* he seriously means what he says." It is not only useless, but cumbersome: "There can be no doubt *that* he seriously means what he says." By transposing the parts of the sentence, we shall immediately perceive the propriety of omitting this word: "That he seriously means what he says, there can be no doubt."

"I am honestly, seriously, and unalterably of opinion, that nothing can possibly be more incurably and emphatically destructive, or more decisively fatal, to a kingdom, than the introduction of thoughtless dissipation, and the pomp of lazy luxury." Would not the full import of this noisy sentence be better expressed thus: "I am of opinion, that nothing is more ruinous to a kingdom, than luxury and dissipation?"

Some writers use much circumlocution in expressing their ideas. A considerable one, for so very simple a thing as a man's wounding himself, says, "To mangle, or wound, his outward form and constitution, his natural limbs or body."

But, on some occasions, circumlocution has a peculiar

Strength
force; a
of all the
In the
appear.

"So it
stealth, a
"Never
sal love a

The su
circumsta
went out,
town."

formation

This m
characteri
books of
not at all
tural phras
opened his
they are
some impo
rable signa
casion, be
translation
ceptionable
obsolete.

come so fa
allusions, e
ought to be
remarked, t
of scripture
propriety.

Though i
tract a rou
excrecence
too closely
round the fi

Strength.)

ERASPICUITY, &c.

299

force ; as in the following sentence : " Shall not *the Judge of all the earth* do right ? "

In the sentences which follow, the ill effects of tautology appear.

" So it is, that I must be *forced* to get home, partly by stealth, and partly by *force*."

" Never did Atticus succeed better in gaining the *universal* love and esteem of *all* men."

The subsequent sentence contains several unnecessary circumstances. " On receiving this information, he arose, went out, saddled his horse, mounted him, and rode to town." All is implied in saying, " On receiving this information, he rode to town."

This manner, however, in a certain degree, is so strongly characteristic of the simple style of remote ages, that, in books of the highest antiquity, particularly the Bible, it is not at all ungraceful. Of this kind are the following scriptural phrases. " He lifted up his voice, and wept." " He opened his mouth, and said." It is true, that, in strictness, they are not necessary to the narration, but they are of some importance to the composition, as bearing the venerable signature of ancient simplicity. It may, on this occasion, be further observed, that the language of the present translation of the Bible, ought not to be viewed in an exceptionable light, though some parts of it may appear to be obsolete. From universal admission, this language has become so familiar and intelligible, that in all transcripts and allusions, except where the sense is evidently injured, it ought to be carefully preserved. And it may also be justly remarked, that, on religious subjects, a frequent recurrence of scripture-language is attended with peculiar force and propriety.

Though it promotes the strength of a sentence, to contract a roundabout method of expression, and to lop off excrescences, yet we should avoid the extreme of pruning too closely : some leaves should be left to shelter and surround the fruit. Even synonymous expressions may, on

Public Archives of Nova Scotia

HALIFAX, N. S.

some occasions, be used with propriety. One is, when an obacurer term, which we cannot well avoid employing, needs to be explained by one that is clearer. The other is, when the language of the emotions is exhibited. Emotion naturally dwells on its object: and when the reader also feels interested, repetition and synonymy have frequently an agreeable effect.

The following passage, taken from Addison, who delighted in a full and flowing style, may, by some persons, be deemed not very exceptionable. "But there is nothing that makes its way more directly to the soul than beauty, which immediately diffuses a secret satisfaction and complacency through the imagination, and gives a finishing to any thing that is great or uncommon. The very first discovery of it strikes the mind with inward joy, and spreads a cheerfulness and delight through all its faculties." Some degree of verbosity may be discovered in these sentences, as phrases are repeated which seem little more than the echo of one another; such as—*diffusing satisfaction and complacency through the imagination—striking the mind with inward joy—spreading cheerfulness and delight through all its faculties.* But, perhaps, some redundancy is more allowable on such lively subjects, than it would be on other occasions.

After removing superfluities, the *second* rule for promoting the strength of a sentence, is, to *attend particularly to the use of copulatives, relatives, and all the particles employed for transilion and connexion.*

These little words *but, and, or, which, whose, where, then, therefore, because, &c.* are frequently the most important words of any; they are the joints or hinges upon which all sentences turn; and, of course, much of their strength must depend upon such particles. The varieties in using them are, indeed, so many, that no particular system of rules respecting them can be given. Some observations, tending to illustrate the rule, may, however, be mentioned.

What is called *splitting particles*, or separating a preposition from the noun which it governs, is to be avoided.

Streng
As if
from
of fort
oblig
at the
its prop
Som
lative p
thia: "
amply
lying
attention
occasio
briefly
of langu
Other
where t
It: as, "
and the
style is
epistol
fied kin
should
struction
ons whic
With
so frequ
tions are
cessary
tence fro
He is spe
"The ac
wits of
into his p
the Frenc
to the res
with such

As I should say, "Though virtue borrows no assistance from, yet it may often be accompanied by, the advantages of fortune." Here we are put to a stand in thought, being obliged to rest a little on the preposition by itself, which, at the same time, carries no significancy, till it is joined to its proper substantive.

Some writers needlessly multiply demonstrative and relative particles, by the frequent use of such phraseology as this: "There is nothing which disgusts us sooner than the empty pomp of language." In introducing a subject, or laying down a proposition, to which we demand particular attention, this sort of style is very proper; but, on common occasions, it is better to express ourselves more simply and briefly: "Nothing disgusts us sooner than the empty pomp of language."

Other writers make a practice of omitting the relative, where they think the meaning can be understood without it: as, "The man I love;" "The dominions we possessed, and the conquests we made." But though this elliptical style is intelligible, and is allowable in conversation and epistolary writing, yet in all writings of a serious and dignified kind, it ought to be avoided. There, the relative should always be inserted in its proper place, and the construction filled up. "The man whom I love." "The dominions which we possessed, and the conquests which we made."

With regard to the copulative particle *and*, which occurs so frequently in all kinds of composition, several observations are to be made. First, it is evident, that the unnecessary repetition of it enfeebles style. The following sentence from Sir William Temple, will serve for an instance. He is speaking of the refinement of the French language; "The academy, set up by Cardinal Richelieu, to amuse the wits of that age and country, and divert them from raking into his politics and ministry, brought this into vogue; and the French wits have, for this last age, been wholly turned to the refinement of their style and language; and, indeed, with such success, that it can hardly be equalled, and runs

equally through their verse and their prose." Here are no fewer than eight *ands* in one sentence. Some writers often make their sentences drag in this manner, by a careless multiplication of copulatives.

But, in the next place, it is worthy of observation, that though the natural use of the conjunction *and*, is to join objects together, yet, in fact, by dropping the conjunction, we often mark a closer connexion, a quicker succession of objects, than when it is inserted between them. "I came, I saw, I conquered," expresses with more force the rapidity and quick succession of conquest, than if connecting particles had been used.

On the other hand, when we seek to prevent a quick transition from one object to another, when we are making some enumeration, in which we wish that the objects should appear as distinct from each other as possible, and that the mind should rest, for a moment, on each object by itself, copulatives may be multiplied with peculiar advantage. As when an author says, "Such a man might fall a victim to power; but truth, and reason, and liberty, would fall with him." Observe, in the following enumeration made by the Apostle Paul, what additional weight and distinctness are given to each particular, by the repetition of a conjunction: "I am persuaded that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God."

The words designed to mark the transition from one sentence to another, and the connexion between sentences, are sometimes very incorrect, and perform their office in an imperfect and obscure manner. The following is an example of this kind of inaccuracy. "By greatness, I do not mean the bulk of any single object only, but the largeness of a whole view. Such are the prospects of an open champaign country, a vast uncultivated desert," &c. The word *such* signifies of that nature or quality, which necessarily presupposes some adjective or word descriptive of a quality

Strength
going
tence,
of great
no disti
tence
the pro
As co
by whic
same me
the sent
and then
too freq
made up
convey t
forasmuc
tend to o
We sh
subject o
is, that th
live, wher
with than
of copulat
of the the
mostly in
deemed n
distant, th
close, sup
The thi
is, to dispo
make the g
That th
which the
and that th
tinguished
us, the im
sentence.

going before, to which it refers. But, in the foregoing sentence, there is no such adjective. The author had spoken of *greatness* in the abstract only; and, therefore, *such* has no distinct antecedent to which we can refer it. The sentence would have been introduced with more propriety, by *such*. *To this class belong, or under this head are ranged, the prospects, &c.*

As connective particles are the hinges, tacks, and pins, by which the words in the same clause, the clauses in the same member, the members in the same sentence, and even the sentences in the same discourse, are united together, and their relations suggested, so they should not be either too frequently repeated, awkwardly exposed to view, or made up of polysyllables, when shorter words would as well convey the meaning. *Notwithstanding that, inasmuch that, forasmuch as, furthermore, &c.* are tedious words, which tend to overload and perplex a sentence.

We shall conclude this head with two remarks on the subject of inserting or omitting the conjunctions. The first is, that the illative conjunctions, the causal, and the disjunctive, when they suit the sense, can more rarely be dispensed with than the copulative. The second is, that the omission of copulatives always succeeds best, when the connexion of the thoughts is either very close, or very distant. It is mostly in the intermediate cases that the conjunction is deemed necessary. When the connexion in thought is very distant, the copulative appears absurd; and when very close, superfluous.

The third rule for promoting the strength of a sentence, is, *to dispose of the capital word, or words, so that they may make the greatest impression.*

That there are, in every sentence, such capital words on which the meaning principally rests, every one must see; and that these words should possess a conspicuous and distinguished place, is equally plain. For the most part, with us, the important words are placed in the beginning of the sentence. So in the following passages: "Silver and gold

have I none; but such as I have, give I unto thee," &c.
 "Your fathers, where are they? and the prophets, do they live for ever?"

Sometimes, however, when we intend to give weight to a sentence, it is of advantage to suspend the meaning for a little, and then bring it out full at the close. "Thus says an author, "on whatever side we contemplate this ancient writer, what principally strikes us, is his wonderful invention."

To accomplish this end, the placing of capital words in a conspicuous part of the sentence, the natural order of our language must sometimes be inverted. According to this natural order, the nominative has the first place, the verb the second, and the objective, if it be an active verb that is employed, has the third. Circumstances follow the nominative, the verb, or the objective, as they happen to belong to any of them. "Diana of the Ephesians is great," is the natural order of the sentence. But its strength is increased by inversion, thus: "Great is Diana of the Ephesians." "I profess, in the sincerity of my heart," &c. is the natural order of a circumstance. Inverted thus: "In the sincerity of my heart, I profess," &c.

Some authors greatly invert the natural order of sentences; others write mostly in a natural style. Each method has its advantages. The inverted possesses strength, dignity, and variety: the other, more nature, ease, and simplicity. We shall give an instance of each method, taken from writers of considerable eminence. The first is of the inverted order. The author is speaking of the misery of vice. "This, as to the complete immoral state, is, what of their own accord, men readily remark. Where there is this absolute degeneracy, this total apostacy from all honour, truth, or equity, there are few who do not see and acknowledge the misery which is consequent. Seldom is the case misconstrued when at worst. The misfortune is, that we look not on this depravity, nor consider how it abounds in less degrees. As if, to be absolutely immoral, were,

Stru
inde
shoul
just
Ledy
that
some
tics."
there
The
"Or
all cur
ideas,
and co
satist
can, b
other i
the san
operati
But
part of
always
should
that wo
stances
cipal ob
it, we m
that pri
cances.
whilst t
give inst
he este
among a
tains a
to qualif
with jus
neither
which is

indeed, the greatest misery; but to be so in a little degree should be no misery or harm at all. Which, to allow, is just as reasonable as to own, that it is the greatest ill of a body to be in the utmost manner maimed or distorted; but that to lose the use only of one limb, or to be impaired in some single organ or member, is an ill worthy the least notice." Here is no violence done to the language, though there are many inversions.

The following is an example of natural construction:

"Our sight is the most perfect, and the most delightful, of all our senses. It fills the mind with the largest variety of ideas, converses with its objects at the greatest distance, and continues the longest in action, without being tired, or satiated with its proper enjoyments. The sense of feeling can, indeed, give us a notion of extension, shape, and all other ideas that enter at the eye, except colours; but, at the same time, it is very much straitened and confined in its operations," &c.

But whether we use inversion or not, and in whatever part of the sentence we dispose of the capital words, it is always a point of consequence, that these capital words should stand clear and disentangled from any other words that would clog them. Thus, when there are any circumstances of time, place, or other limitations, which the principal object of our sentence requires to have connected with it, we must take care to dispose of them, so as not to cloud that principal object, nor to bury it under a load of circumstances. This will be made clearer by an example. "If, whilst they profess only to please, they secretly advise, and give instruction, they may now perhaps, as well as formerly, be esteemed, with justice, the best and most honourable among authors." This is a well constructed sentence. It contains a great many circumstances and adverbs necessary to qualify the meaning; *only, secretly, as well, perhaps, now, with justice, formerly*; yet these are placed so properly, as neither to embarrass, nor weaken the sentence; while that which is the capital object in it, viz. "being justly esteemed

the best and most honourable among authors," comes out in the conclusion clear and detached, and possesses its proper place: See, now, what would have been the effect of a different arrangement: "If, whilst they profess to please only, they advise and give instruction secretly, they may be esteemed the best and most honourable among authors, with justice, perhaps, now as well as formerly." Here we have precisely the same words, and the same sense; but by means of the circumstances being so intermingled as to clog the capital words, the whole becomes feeble and perplexed.

The *fourth* rule for promoting the strength of sentences, is, that *a weaker assertion or proposition should never come after a stronger one; and that, when our sentence consists of two members, the longer should, generally, be the concluding one.*

Thus, to say, "When our passions have forsaken us, we flatter ourselves with the belief that we have forsaken them," is both more easy and more clear, than to begin with the longer part of the proposition: "We flatter ourselves with the belief that we have forsaken our passions, when they have forsaken us."

In general, it is agreeable to find a sentence rising upon us, and growing in its importance, to the very last word when this construction can be managed without affectation "If we rise yet higher," says Addison, "and consider the fixed stars as so many oceans of flame, that are each of them attended with a different set of planets; and still discover new firmaments and new lights, that are sunk further in those unfathomable depths of ether; we are lost in such a labyrinth of suns and worlds, and confounded with the magnificence and immensity of nature."

The *fifth* rule for the strength of sentences is, to avoid concluding them with an adverb, a preposition, or any inconsiderable word.

Agreeably to this rule, we should not conclude with any of the particles, *of, to, from, with, by.* For instance, it is a

Streng
great
men
which
which
the m
word
be left
duce
For
pound
not so
as, bring
other
simple
streng
ed in the
of the p
sible of
my opin
in religio
makes to
riving at
sentence
word per
Beside
presses
rear of a
passage
division
alone ca
this union
so success
neglected
no worse
dispositio
tention, i
with the

great deal better to say, "Avarice is a crime of which wise men are often guilty," than to say, "Avarice is a crime which wise men are often guilty of." This is a phraseology which all correct writers shun; and with reason. For as the mind cannot help resting a little on the import of the word which closes the sentence, it must be disagreeable to be left pausing on a word, which does not, by itself, produce any idea.

For the same reason, verbs which are used in a compound sense, with some of these prepositions, are, though not so bad, yet still not proper conclusions of a period: such as, *bring about, lay hold of, come over to, clear up*, and many other of this kind; instead of which, if we can employ a simple verb, it always terminates the sentence with more strength. Even the pronoun *it*, should, if possible, be avoided in the conclusion: especially when it is joined with some of the prepositions; as, *with it, in it, to it*. We shall be sensible of this in the following sentence. "There is not, in my opinion, a more pleasing and triumphant consideration in religion, than this, of the perpetual progress which the soul makes towards the perfection of its nature, without ever arriving at a period *in it*." How much more agreeable the sentence, if it had been so constructed as to close with the word *period*!

Besides particles and pronouns, any phrase, which expresses a circumstance only, always appears badly in the rear of a sentence. We may judge of this by the following passage: "Let me therefore conclude by repeating, that division has caused all the mischief we lament; that union alone can retrieve it; and that a great advance towards this union, was the coalition of parties, so happily begun, so successfully carried on, and of late so unaccountably neglected; to say no worse." This last phrase, "to say no worse," occasions a falling off at the end. The proper disposition of such circumstances in a sentence, requires attention, in order to adjust them so as shall consist equally with the perspicuity and the strength of the period.

Though necessary parts, they are, however, like irregular stones in a building, which try the skill of an artist, where to place them with the least offence. But it must be remembered, that the close is always an unsuitable place for them. Notwithstanding what has been said against concluding a period with an adverb, &c. this must not be understood to refer to such words, when the stress and significance of the sentence rest chiefly upon them. In this case they are not to be considered as circumstances, but as the principal objects : as in the following sentence. "In their prosperity, my friends shall never hear of me, in their adversity, always." Here, "never" and "always" being emphatical words, were to be so placed as to make a strong impression.

The sixth rule relating to the strength of a sentence, is, *that, in the members of a sentence, where two things are compared or contrasted with one another ; where either a resemblance or an opposition is intended to be expressed ; some resemblance, in the language and construction, should be preserved. For when the things themselves correspond to each other, we naturally expect to find a similar correspondence in the words.*

Thus, when it is said, "The wise man is happy when he gains his own approbation ; the fool, when he recommends himself to the applause of those about him ;" the opposition would have been more regular, if it had been expressed thus : "The wise man is happy when he gains his own approbation ; the fool, when he gains that of others."

"A friend exaggerates a man's virtues : an enemy inflames his crimes." Better thus : "A friend exaggerates a man's virtues ; an enemy, his crimes."

The following passage from Pope's Preface to his Homer, fully exemplifies the rule just given : "Homer was the greater genius ; Virgil, the better artist : in the one, we most admire the man ; in the other, the work. Homer hurries us with a commanding impetuosity ; Virgil leads us with an attractive majesty. Homer scatters with a generous

Blat
prop
Hon
over
stree
prop
beav
this b
died,
leads
all on
produ
tires (t
The
senten
flow, q
Soun
must n
vehicle
conside
vayed,
Fleas
mitted
sounds.
pression
The obs
respect t
and disp
of senten
We be
words ar
posed of
per inter
many har
many op
agreeable
It may
sounds ar

profusion; Virgil bestows with a careful magnificence. Homer, like the Nile, pours out his riches with a sudden overflow; Virgil, like a river in its banks, with a constant stream.—Periods thus constructed, when introduced with propriety, and not returning too often, have a sensible beauty. But we must beware of carrying our attention to this beauty too far. It ought only to be occasionally studied, and our comparison or opposition of objects naturally leads to it. If such a construction as this be aimed at, in all our sentences, it leads to a disagreeable uniformity; produces a regularly returning clink in the period, which tires the ear; and plainly discovers affectation.

The seventh rule for promoting the strength and effect of sentences, is, *to attend to the sound, the harmony and easy flow, of the words and members.*

Sound is a quality much inferior to sense; yet such as must not be disregarded. For, as long as sounds are the vehicle or conveyance for our ideas, there will be a very considerable connexion between the idea which is conveyed, and the nature of the sound which conveys it.—Pleasant ideas, and forcible reasoning, can hardly be transmitted to the mind, by means of harsh and disagreeable sounds. The mind revolts at such sounds, and the impression of the sentiment must consequently be weakened. The observations which we have to make on this subject, respect the choice of words; their arrangement; the order and disposition of the members; and the cadence or close of sentences.

We begin with the choice of words. It is evident, that words are most agreeable to the ear, when they are composed of smooth and liquid sounds, in which there is a proper intermixture of vowels and consonants; without too many harsh consonants rubbing against each other; or too many open vowels in succession, to cause a hiatus, or disagreeable aperture of the mouth.

It may always be assumed as a principle, that whatever sounds are difficult in pronunciation, are, in the same pro-

portion, harsh and painful to the ear. Vowels give softness; consonants, strength to the sound of words. The melody of language requires a just proportion of each; and the construction will be hurt, will be rendered either grating or effeminate, by an excess of either. Long words are commonly more agreeable to the ear than monosyllables. They please it by the composition or succession of sounds which they present to it; and accordingly, the most harmonious languages abound most in them. Among words of any length, those are the most melodious, which do not run wholly either upon long or short syllables, but are composed of an intermixture of them: such as, *repent, profess, powerful, velocity, celerity, independent, impetuosity.*

If we would speak forcibly and effectually, we must avoid the use of such words as the following; 1. Such as are composed of words already compounded, the several parts of which are not easily, and therefore not closely united: as, "*Unsuccessfulness, wrongheadedness, tenderheartedness.*" 2. Such as have the syllables which immediately follow the accented syllable, crowded with consonants that do not easily coalesce; as, "*Questionless, chroniclers, concentriclers.*" 3. Such as have too many syllables following the accented syllable: as, "*Primarily, cursorily, summarily, peremptoriness.*" 4. Such as have a short or unaccented syllable repeated, or followed by another short or unaccented syllable very much resembling: as, "*Holily, silkily, lowlily, farriery.*" A little harshness, by the collision of consonants, which nevertheless our organs find no difficulty in articulating, and which do not suggest to the hearer the disagreeable idea either of precipitation or of stammering, is by no means a sufficient reason for suppressing a useful term. The words *hedg'd, fledg'd, wedg'd, drudg'd, grudg'd, adjudg'd*, which some have thought very offensive, are not exposed to the objections which lie against the words above mentioned. We should not do well to introduce such hard and strong sounds too frequently; but when they are used sparingly and properly, they have even a good effect. They

Stre
cont
lang
Th
from
nicet
chos
melo
That
ing ex
the be
pleasu
the re
thus,
versat
guidan
easily
comm
that it
examp
as to p
best of
roundl
grimag
encum
better,
cannot
subject
out all
dent to
laved a
We n
harmoni
cation:
deed, at
of good
that the
thing in

contribute to that variety in sound which is advantageous to language.

The next head, respecting the harmony which results from a proper arrangement of words, is a point of greater nicety. For, let the words themselves be ever so well chosen, and well sounding, yet, if they be ill disposed, the melody of the sentence is utterly lost, or greatly impaired. That this is the case, the learners will perceive by the following examples. "Pleasures simple and moderate always are the best." It would be better to say, "Simple and moderate pleasures are always the best." "Office or rank may be the recompense of intrigue, versatilitiy, or flattery;" better thus, "Rank or office may be the recompense of flattery, versatilitiy, or intrigue." "A great recommendation of the guidance offered by integrity to us, is, that it is by all men easily understood:" better in this form; "It is a great recommendation of the guidance offered to us by integrity, that it is easily understood by all men." In the following examples, the words are neither selected nor arranged, so as to produce the most agreeable effect. "If we make the best of our life, it is but as a pilgrimage, with dangers surrounding it:" better thus, "Our life, at the best, is a pilgrimage, and dangers surround it." "We see that we are encumbered with difficulties, which we cannot prevent:" better, "We perceive ourselves involved in difficulties that cannot be avoided." "It is plain to any one who views the subject, even slightly, that there is nothing here that is without alloy and pure:" improved by this form; "It is evident to the slightest inspection, that nothing here is unalloyed and pure."

We may take, for an instance of a sentence remarkably harmonious, the following from Milton's *Treatise on Education*: "We shall conduct you this hill-side, laborious indeed, at the first ascent; but else so smooth, so green, so full of goodly prospects, and melodious sounds on every side, that the harp of Orpheus was not more charming." Every thing in this sentence conspires to promote the harmony

The words are well chosen ; full of liquids, and soft sounds ; *laborious, smooth, green, goodly, melodious, charming* ; and these words so artfully arranged, that were we to alter the situation of any one of them, we should, presently, be sensible of the melody's suffering.

To promote this harmonious arrangement of words, the following general directions will be found of some use.

1st, When the preceding word ends with a vowel, let the subsequent one begin with a consonant ; and vice versa. A *true friend*, a *cruel enemy*, are smoother and easier to the voice, than a *true union*, a *cruel destroyer*. But when it is more perspicuous or convenient, for vowels or consonants to end one word and begin the next, it is proper that the vowels be a long and short one ; and that the consonants be either a liquid and a mute, or liquids of different sorts : thus, a *lovely offspring* ; a *power design* ; a *calm retreat* ; are more fluent than, a *happy union*, a *brief petition*, a *cheap triumph*, a *putrid distemper*, a *calm malron*, a *dear nurse*. From these examples, the student will perceive the importance of accurately understanding the nature of vowels and consonants, liquids and mutes ; with the connexion and influence which subsist amongst them.

2d, In general, a considerable number of long or short words near one another should be avoided. "Disappointment in our expectations is wretchedness." better thus ; "Disappointed hope is misery." "No course of joy can please us long." better, "No course of enjoyment can delight us long." A succession of words having the same quantity in the accented syllables, whether it be long or short, should also be avoided, "James was needy, feeble, and fearful." improved thus, "James was timid, feeble, and destitute." "They could not be happy ; for he was silly, pettish, and fallen !" better thus ; "They could not be happy ; for he was simple, peevish, and gloomy." 3d, Words which begin alike, or end alike, must not come together ; and the last syllable of the preceding word, should not be the same as the first syllable of the subsequent one. It is not so pleasing and har-

Stren
monio
is an i
mality
parent
We
regard
propo
propo
more
when
gives,
express
this is
and pre
they co
which
Tem
pride is
knowle
about h
to be se
bottom
none ev
own re
and his
Here ov
the ear,
exampl
3d chap
here, th
eially o
rious ar
In the
come se
precedin
siness of
acknow

anxious to say, "This is a convenient contrivance;" "He is an indulgent parent;" "She behaves with uniform formality;" as, "This is a useful contrivance;" "He is a kind parent;" "She behaves with unvaried formality."

We proceed to consider the members of a sentence, with regard to harmony. They should not be too long, nor disproportionate to each other. When they have a regular and proportional division, they are much easier to the voice, are more clearly understood, and better remembered, than when this rule is not attended to: for whatever tires the voice, and offends the ear, is apt to mar the strength of the expression, and to degrade the sense of the author. And this is a sufficient ground for paying attention to the order and proportion of sentences, and the different parts of which they consist. The following passage exhibits sentences in which the different members are proportionally arranged.

Temple, speaking sarcastically of man, says; "But his pride is greater than his ignorance, and what he wants in knowledge he supplies by sufficiency. When he has looked about him as far as he can, he concludes there is no more to be seen; when he is at the end of his line, he is at the bottom of the ocean; when he has shot his best, he is sure none ever did, or ever can, shoot better, or beyond it. His own reason he holds to be the certain measure of truth; and his own knowledge, of what is possible in nature." Here every thing is at once easy to the breath, grateful to the ear, and intelligible to the understanding. See another example of the same kind, in the 17th and 18th verses of the 3d chapter of the prophet Habakkuk. We may remark here, that our present version of the Holy Scriptures, especially of the Psalms, abounds with instances of an harmonious arrangement of the words and members of sentences.

In the following quotation from Tillotson, we shall become sensible of an effect very different from that of the preceding sentences. "This discourse, concerning the easiness of the Divine commands, does all along suppose and acknowledge the difficulties of the first entrance upon a re-

ligious course; except only in those persons who have had the happiness to be trained up to religion, by the easy and insensible degrees of a pious and virtuous education. Here there is some degree of harshness and unpleasantness, owing principally to this, that there is properly no more than one pause or rest in the sentence, falling betwixt the two members into which it is divided: each of which is so long as to occasion a considerable stretch of the breath in pronouncing it.

With respect to the cadence or close of a sentence, care should be taken, that it be not abrupt, or unpleasant. The following instances may be sufficient to show the propriety of some attention to this part of the rule. "Virtue, diligence, and industry, joined with good temper and prudence, are prosperous in general." It would be better thus: "Virtue, diligence, and industry, joined with good temper and prudence, have ever been found the surest road to prosperity." An author speaking of the Trinity, expresses himself thus: "It is a mystery which we firmly believe the truth of, and humbly adore the depth of." How much better would it have been with this transposition: "It is a mystery, the truth of which we firmly believe, and the depth of which we humbly adore."

In order to give a sentence this proper close, the longest member of it, and the fullest words, should be reserved to the conclusion. But in the distribution of the members, and in the cadence of the period, as well as in the sentences themselves, variety must be observed; for the mind soon tires with a frequent repetition of the same tone.

Though attention to the words and members, and the close of sentences, must not be neglected, yet it must also be kept within proper bounds. Sense has its own harmony, and in no instance should perspicuity, precision, or strength of sentiment, be sacrificed to sound. All unmeaning words, introduced merely to round the period, or fill up the melody, are great blemishes in writing. They are childish and trivial ornaments, by which a sentence always loses more

Figure
is pol
round
the
The
use of
As
sente
and st
to be
their
shall
them
In g
simply
way is
const
sion n
"That
ty," I
possibl
Eight
figurac
is put
to sugg
say, "I
plore t
sition:
out the
tion?
than he
into sty
with it
But,
reckon

in point of weight, than it can gain by such additions to its sound. See the *Octavo Grammar*, on this chapter.

See also the *APPENDIX to the Exercises*, p. 219, &c.

CHAPTER IV.

OF FIGURES OF SPEECH.

THE fourth requisite of a perfect sentence, is a judicious use of the Figures of Speech.

As figurative language is to be met with in almost every sentence; and, when properly employed, confers beauty and strength on composition; some knowledge of it appears to be indispensable to the scholars, who are learning to form their sentences with propriety, accuracy, and force. We shall, therefore, enumerate the principal figures, and give them some explanation.

In general, Figures of Speech imply some departure from simplicity of expression. The idea which we mean to convey is expressed in a plain manner, and with some circumstance added, which is designed to render the impression more strong and vivid. When I say, for instance, "That a good man enjoys comfort in the midst of adversity," I just express my thoughts in the simplest manner possible: but when I say, "To the upright there ariseth light in darkness;" the same sentiment is expressed in a figurative style; a new circumstance is introduced; "light," is put in the place of "comfort," and "darkness" is used to suggest the idea of adversity." In the same manner, to say, "It is impossible, by any search we can make, to explore the Divine Nature fully," is to make a simple proposition: but when we say, "Canst thou, by searching, find out the Lord? Canst thou find out the Almighty to perfection? It is high as heaven, what canst thou do? deeper than hell, what canst thou know?" this introduces a figure into style; the proposition being not only expressed, but with it admiration and astonishment.

But, though figures imply a deviation from what may be reckoned the most simple form of speech, we are not thence

to conclude, that they imply any thing uncommon, or unnatural. On many occasions, they are both the most natural, and the most common method of uttering our sentiments. It would be very difficult to compose any discourse without using them often; nay, there are few sentences of considerable length, in which there does not occur some expression that may be termed a figure. This being the case, we may see the necessity of some attention, in order to understand their nature and use.

At the first rise of language, men would begin with giving names to the different objects which they discerned, or thought of. The stock of words would, then, be very small. As men's ideas multiplied, and their acquaintance with objects increased, their store of words would also increase. But to the vast number of objects and ideas, no language is adequate. No language is so copious, as to have a separate word for every distinct idea. Men naturally sought to abridge this labour of multiplying words without end; and, in order to lay less burden on their memories, made one word, which they had already appropriated to a certain idea or object, stand also for some other idea or object, between which and the primary one, they found, or fancied, some relation. The names of sensible objects, were the words most early introduced; and were, by degrees, extended to those mental objects, of which men had more obscure conceptions, and to which they found it more difficult to assign distinct names. They borrowed, therefore, the name of some sensible idea, where their imagination found some affinity. Thus, we speak of a *piercing* judgment, and a *clear* head; a *soft* or a *hard* heart; a *rough* or a *smooth* behaviour. We say, *inflamed* by anger, *warmed* by love, *swelled* with pride, *melted* into grief; and these are almost the only significant words which we have for such ideas.

The principal advantages of figures of speech, are the two following.

First, They enrich language, and render it more copious.

Figure
By the
presen
differ
which
alone
Se
more
have,
his ac
is ac
made
We
Wh
ment
stance
send
presen
idea,
what
Hav
ceed
import
smy,
Interro
A M
blance
allied
compa
of som
pillar w
make
That
taphor
nister a
without
The
Scriptur

By their means, words and phrases are multiplied, for expressing all sorts of ideas; for describing even the minutest differences; the slightest shades and colours of thought; which no language could possibly do by proper words alone, without assistance from Tropes.

Secondly, They frequently give us a much clearer and more striking view of the principal object, than we could have, if it were expressed in simple terms, and divested of its accessory idea. By a well chosen figure, even conviction is assisted, and the impression of a truth upon the mind, made more lively and forcible than it would otherwise be. We perceive this in the following illustration of Young: "When we dip too deep in pleasure, we always stir a sediment that renders it impure and noxious;" and in this instance: "A heart boiling with violent passions, will always send up insinuating fumes to the head." An image that presents so much congruity between a moral and a sensible idea, serves, like an argument from analogy, to enforce what the author asserts, and to induce belief.

Having considered the general nature of figures, we proceed next to particularise such of them as are of the most importance; viz. Metaphor, Allegory, Comparison, Metonymy, Synecdoche, Personification, Apostrophe, Antithesis, Interrogation, Exclamation, Amplification or Climax, &c.

A *Metaphor* is a figure founded entirely on the resemblance which one object bears to another. Hence, it is much allied to simile or comparison, and is indeed no other than a comparison, expressed in an abridged form. When I say of some great minister, "that he upholds the state, like a pillar which supports the weight of a whole edifice," I fairly make a comparison: but when I say of such a minister, "That he is the pillar of the state," it now becomes a metaphor. In the latter case, the comparison between the minister and a pillar is made in the mind; but it is expressed without any of the words that denote comparison.

The following are examples of metaphor taken from Scripture: "I will be unto her a wall of fire round about,

and will be the glory in the midst of her." "Thou art my rock and my fortress." "Thy word is a lamp to my feet, and a light to my path."

Rules to be observed in the use of metaphors.

1. *Metaphors, as well as other figures, should, on no occasion, be stuck on profusely; and should always be such as accord with the strain of our sentiment.* The latter part of the following passage, from a late historian, is, in this respect, very exceptionable. He is giving an account of the famous act of parliament against irregular marriages in England. "The bill," says he, "underwent a great number of alterations and amendments, which were not effected without violent contest. At length, however, it was passed through both houses on the tide of a great majority, and steered into the safe harbour of royal approbation."

2. Care should be taken that the *similitude*, which is the foundation of the metaphor, be clear and prominent, not far-fetched, nor difficult to discover. The transgression of this rule makes what are called harsh or forced metaphors; which are displeasing, because they puzzle the reader, and instead of illustrating the thought, render it perplexed and intricate.

3. In the third place, we should be careful, in the conduct of metaphors, never to jumble metaphorical and plain language together. An author, addressing himself to the king, says:

To thee the world its present homage pays:

The harvest early, but mature the praise.

It is plain, that, had not the rhyme misled him to the choice of an improper phrase, he would have said,

The harvest early, but mature the crop;

and so would have continued the figure which he had begun. Whereas, by dropping it unfinished, and by employing the literal word "praise," when we were expecting something that related to the harvest, the figure is broken, and the two members of the sentence have no suitable correspondence to each other.

4. We should avoid making two inconsistent metaphors meet on one object. This is what is called mixed metaphor, and is indeed one of the greatest misapplications of this figure. One may be "sheltered under the patronage of a great man;" but it would be wrong to say, "sheltered under the mask of dissimulation;" as a mask conceals, but does not shelter. Addison in his letter from Italy, says:

I bridle in my struggling man with pain,

That longs to lower into a better strain.

The reins, figured as a horse, may be bridled; but when we speak of taming, we make it a ship; and by no force of imagination, can it be supposed both a horse and a ship at one instant; bridled, to hinder it from taming.

The same author, elsewhere, says, "There is not a single view of human nature, which is not sufficient to extinguish the seeds of pride." Observe the incoherence of the things here joined together; making a view extinguish, and extinguish seeds.

As metaphors ought never to be mixed, so they should not be crowded together on the same object; for the mind has difficulty in passing readily through many different views of the same object, presented in quick succession.

The first rule concerning metaphors, is, that they be not too far pursued. If the resemblance, on which the figure is founded, be long dwelt upon, and carried into all its minute circumstances, we tire the reader, who soon grows weary of this stretch of fancy; and we render our discourse obscure. This is called *straining a metaphor*. Authors of a lively and strong imagination are apt to run into this exuberance of metaphor. When they hit upon a figure that pleases them, they are loth to part with it, and frequently continue it so long, as to become tedious and intricate. We may observe, for instance, how the following metaphor is spun out.

Thy thoughts are vagabonds; all outward bound.

'Midst sands, and rocks, and storms, to cruise for pleasure;

If gain'd, dear bought; and better miss'd than gain'd.

Fancy and sense, from an infected shore,
 Thy cargo bring; and pestilence the prize:
 Then such a thirst, insatiable thirst,
 By fond indulgence but inflam'd the more;
 Fancy still cruises, when poor sense is tired.

An *Allegory* may be regarded as a metaphor continued; since it is the representation of some one thing by another that resembles it, and which is made to stand for it. We may take from the Scriptures a very fine example of an allegory, in the 80th psalm; where the people of Israel are represented under the image of a vine: and the figure is carried throughout with great exactness and beauty. "Thou hast brought a vine out of Egypt: thou hast cast out the heathen and planted it. Thou preparedst room before it; and didst cause it to take deep root, and it filled the land. The hills were covered with the shadow of it: and the boughs thereof were like the goodly cedars. She sent out her boughs into the sea, and her branches into the river. Why hast thou broken down her hedges, so that all they which pass by the way do pluck her? The boar out of the wood doth waste it, and the wild beast of the field doth devour it. Return, we beseech thee, O God of Hosts, look down from heaven, and behold, and visit this vine!" See also Ezekiel, xvii. 22—24.

The first and principal requisite in the conduct of an allegory, is, *that the figurative and the literal meaning be not mixed inconsistently together.* Indeed, all the rules that were given for metaphors, may also be applied to allegories, on account of the affinity they bear to each other. The only material difference between them, besides the one being short and the other being prolonged, is, that a metaphor always explains itself by the words that are connected with it in their proper and natural meaning: as, when I say, "Achilles was a lion;" "An able minister is the pillar of the state;" the "lion" and the "pillar" are sufficiently interpreted by the mention of "Achilles" and the "minister," which I join to them; but an allegory is, or may be,

Figure
 allow
 the in
 to our
 All
 in an
 no oth
 to bea
 figures
 or me
 A C
 two of
 more f
 it is sai
 the con
 have b
 about J
 "Beho
 dwell to
 and as t
 The
 which t
 from the
 impress
 effect of
 ing the
 tion in t
 be adequ
 power to
 same ho
 tion. Se
 tive. H
 as wax,
 stantly m
 stantly lo
 In cou
 cerned m
 to be ob

allowed to stand less connected with the literal meaning, the interpretation not being so directly pointed out, but left to our own reflection.

Allegory was a favourite method of delivering instruction in ancient times; for what we call fables or parables, are no other than allegories. By words and actions attributed to beasts or inanimate objects, the dispositions of men were figured; and what we call the moral, is the unfigured sense or meaning of the allegory.

A *Comparison* or *simile*, is, when the resemblance between two objects is expressed in form, and generally pursued more fully than the nature of a metaphor admits: as when it is said, "The actions of princes are like those great rivers, the course of which every one beholds, but their springs have been seen by few." "As the mountains are round about Jerusalem, so the Lord is round about his people." "Behold, how good and how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity! It is like the precious ointment, &c. and as the dew that descended upon the mountains of Zion."

The advantage of this figure arises from the illustration which the simile employed gives to the principal object; from the clearer view which it presents; or the more strong impression which it stamps upon the mind. Observe the effect of it in the following instance. The author is explaining the distinction between the powers of sense and imagination in the human mind. "As wax," says he, "would not be adequate to the purpose of signature, if it had not the power to retain as well as to receive the impression, the same holds of the soul with respect to sense and imagination. Sense is its receptive power; imagination, its retentive. Had it sense without imagination, it would not be as wax, but as water, where, though all impressions are instantly made, yet as soon as they are made, they are instantly lost."

In comparisons of this nature, the understanding is concerned much more than the fancy: and therefore the rules to be observed, with respect to them, are, that they be

clear, and that they be useful; that they tend to render our conception of the principal object more distinct; and that they do not lead our view aside, and bewilder it with any false light. We should always remember that similes are not arguments. However apt they may be, they do no more than explain the writer's sentiments, they do not prove them to be founded on truth.

Comparisons ought not to be founded on likenesses which are too faint and remote. For these, in place of assisting, strain the mind to comprehend them, and throw no light upon the subject. It is also to be observed, that a comparison which, in the principal circumstances, carries a sufficiently near resemblance, may become unnatural and obscure, if pushed too far. Nothing is more opposite to the design of this figure, than to hunt after a great number of coincidences in minute points, merely to show how far the writer's ingenuity can stretch the resemblance.

A Metonymy is founded on the several relations, of cause and effect, container and contained, sign and thing signified. When we say, "They read Milton," the name is put instead of the object; meaning, "Milton's works." On the other hand, when it is said, "Gray hair should be respected," we put the effect for the cause, meaning by "gray hairs," old age. "The bottle boils," is a phrase where the name of the container is substituted for that of the thing contained. "To assume the sceptre" is a common expression for entering on royal authority; the sign being put for the thing signified.

When the whole is put for a part, or a part for the whole; a genus for a species, or a species for a genus; in general, when any thing less, or any thing more, is put for the precise object meant; the figure is then called a *Synecdoche* or *Comprehension*. It is very common, for instance, to describe a whole object by some remarkable part of it: as when we say: "A fleet of twenty sail," in the place of ships; when we use the "head" for the "person," the "waves" for the "sea." In like manner, an attribute may be

Figures
put for a
for the

Person
we attri
of this fi
derful p
animate
"or rain,"
speak of
deceitful;
the mind
tures to th
of its own
from the f
house of J
saw it, and
skipped li
ailed thee,
that thou
ped like n
thou earth
the God of
"The wi
them: and
Milton th
forbidden f
Earth t
In pang
Sky low
Wept, a
The imp
to prompt t
in order to
And tho
Ye hills
And ye t
Tell, if y

put for a subject: as, "Youth" for the "young," the "deep," for the "sea," and sometimes a subject for its attribute.

Personification or *Prosopopœia*, is that figure by which we attribute life and action to inanimate objects. The use of this figure is very natural and extensive: there is a wonderful proneness in human nature, under emotion, to animate all objects. When we say, "the ground *thirsts* for rain," or, "the earth *smiles* with plenty," when we speak of "ambition's being *restless*," or, "a disease's being *deceitful*," such expressions show the facility with which the mind can accommodate the properties of living creatures to things that are inanimate, or to abstract conceptions of its own forming. The following are striking examples from the Scriptures: "When Israel went out of Egypt, the house of Judah from a people of strange language; the sea saw it, and fled: Jordan was driven back! The mountains skipped like rams, and the little hills like lambs. What ailed thee, O thou sea! that thou fleddest? Thou Jordan, that thou wast driven back? Ye mountains, that ye skipped like rams; and ye little hills, like lambs? Tremble, thou earth, at the presence of the Lord, at the presence of the God of Jacob."

"The wilderness and the solitary place shall be glad for them: and the desert shall rejoice, and blossom as the rose."

Milton thus describes the immediate effects of eating the forbidden fruit. Terror produces the figure.

Earth trembled from her entrails, as again
In pangs, and nature gave a second groan;
Sky low'r'd, and, mutt'ring thunder, some sad drops
Wept, at completing of the mortal sin.

The impatience of Adam to know his origin, is supposed to prompt the personification of all the objects he beheld, in order to procure information.

Thou sun, said I, fair light!

And thou enlighten'd earth, so fresh and gay!
Ye hills and dales, ye rivers, woods, and plains,
And ye that live and move, fair creatures, tell,
Tell, if you saw, how came I thus, how here?

We shall give a remarkably fine example of this figure, from bishop Sherlock. He has beautifully personified natural religion; and we may perceive, in the personification, the spirit and grace which the figure, when well conducted, bestows on discourse. The author is comparing together our Saviour and Mahomet. "Go (says he) to your Natural Religion: lay before her Mahomet, and his disciples, arrayed in armour and blood, riding in triumph over the spoils of thousands who fell by his victorious sword. Show her the cities which he set in flames, the countries which he ravaged and destroyed, and the miserable distress of all the inhabitants of the earth. When she has viewed him in this scene, carry her into his retirement; show her the Prophet's chamber; his concubines and his wives; and let her hear him allege revelation, and a Divine command, to justify his adultery and lust."

"When she is tired with this prospect, then show her the blessed Jesus, humble and meek, doing good to all the sons of men. Let her see him in his most retired privacies; let her follow him to the mount, and hear his devotions and supplications to God. Carry her to his table, to view his poor fare; and hear his heavenly discourse. Let her attend him to the tribunal, and consider the patience with which he endured the scoffs and reproaches of his enemies. Lead her to his cross; let her view him in the agony of death, and hear his last prayer for his persecutors; "Father, forgive them, for they know not what they do."—When Natural Religion has thus viewed both, ask her, which is the Prophet of God?—But her answer we have already had, when she saw part of this scene, through the eyes of the Centurion, who attended at the cross. By him she spoke, and said, 'Truly this man was the Son of God.' " This is more than elegant; it is truly sublime. The whole passage is animated; and the Figure rises at the conclusion, when Natural Religion, who, before, was only a spectator, is introduced as speaking by the Centurion's voice.

This figure of speech is sometimes very improperly and

Figure
extra
jects,
stance
which
him d
And
consist
is dest
them.
bowing
poet T
appetit

T
P
N
M
O
F

It is
metaph
the prop
per exp
far mod
transpos
by silen
sionate
part. S
passions
into that
are imp
Apost
subject,
swallow
O grave
The
trophe
will it b

extravagantly applied. A capital error in personifying objects, is, to deck them with fantastic and trifling circumstances. A practice of this sort dissolves the potent charm, which enchants and deceives the reader; and either leaves him dissatisfied, or excites, perhaps, his risibility.

Another error, frequent in descriptive personifications, consists in introducing them, when the subject of discussion is destitute of dignity, and the reader is not prepared to relish them. One can scarcely peruse, with composure, the following use of this figure. It is the language of our elegant poet Thomson, who thus personifies and connects the bodily appetites, and their gratifications.

Then sated Hunger bids his brother Thirst
Produce the mighty bowl:

Nor wanting is the brown October, drawn
Mature and perfect, from his dark retreat
Of thirty years: and now his honest front
Flames in the light resurgent.

It is to be remarked, concerning this figure, and short metaphors and similes, which also have been allowed to be the proper language of high passion, that they are the proper expression of it, only on those occasions when it is so far moderated as to admit of words. The first and highest transports seem to overwhelm the mind, and are denoted by silence or groans: next succeeds the violent and passionate language, of which these figures constitute a great part. Such agitation, however, cannot long continue; the passions having spent their force, the mind soon subsides into that exhausted and dispirited state, in which all figures are improper.

Apostrophe is a turning off from the regular course of the subject, to address some person or thing; as, "Death is swallowed up in victory. O death! where is thy sting? O grave! where is thy victory?"

The following is an instance of personification and *apostrophe* united: "O thou sword of the Lord! how long will it be ere thou be quiet? put thyself up into thy scab-

hard, rest and be still! How can it be quiet, seeing the Lord hath given it a charge against Askelon, and against the sea-shore? there hath he appointed it." See also an extraordinary example of these figures, in the 14th chapter of Isaiah, from the 4th to the 19th verse, where the prophet describes the fall of the Assyrian empire.

A principal error, in the use of the Apostrophe, is, to deck the object addressed with affected ornaments; by which authors relinquish the expression of passion, and substitute for it the language of fancy.

Another frequent error is, to extend this figure to too great length. The language of violent passion is always concise, and often abrupt. It passes suddenly from one object to another. It often glances at a thought, starts from it, and leaves it unfinished. The succession of ideas is irregular, and connected by distant and uncommon relations. On all these accounts, nothing is more unnatural than long speeches, uttered by persons under the influence of strong passions. Yet this error occurs in several poets of distinguished reputation.

The next figure in order, is *Antithesis*. Comparison is founded on the resemblance; antithesis, on the contrast or opposition of two objects. Contrast has always the effect, to make each of the contrasted objects appear in the stronger light. White, for instance, never appears so bright as when it is opposed to black; and when both are viewed together. An author, in his defence of a friend against the charge of murder, expresses himself thus: "Can you believe that the person whom he scrupled to slay, when he might have done so with full justice, in a convenient place, at a proper time, with secure impunity; he made no scruple to murder against justice, in an unfavourable place, at an unseasonable time, and at the risk of capital condemnation?"

The following examples further illustrate this figure.

Tho' deep, yet clear; tho' gentle, yet not dull;
Strong, without rage; without o'erflowing, full.

Figure

"If

his sto

"If

of natu

ard of

A m

form o

to be t

be eng

by the

senten

comes

pressin

laboure

more t

themse

The

Cato m

doning

survive

pursue

to hope

—The

tween t

some o

thesis,

her: "

and giv

The c

figure, i

"He

ousness

make a

grandeur

nor to c

into the

"If you wish to enrich a person, study not to increase his stores, but to diminish his desires."

"If you regulate your desires according to the standard of nature, you will never be poor; if according to the standard of opinion, you will never be rich."

A maxim, or moral saying, very properly receives the form of the two last examples; both because it is supposed to be the fruit of meditation, and because it is designed to be engraven on the memory, which recalls it more easily by the help of such contrasted expressions. But where such sentences frequently succeed each other; where this becomes an author's favourite and prevailing manner of expressing himself, his style appears too much studied and laboured; it gives us the impression of an author attending more to his manner of saying things, than to the things themselves.

The following is a beautiful example of Antithesis. "If Cato may be censured, severely indeed, but justly, for abandoning the cause of liberty, which he would not, however, survive; what shall we say of those, who embrace it faintly, pursue it irresolutely, grow tired of it when they have much to hope, and give it up when they have nothing to fear?" —The capital antithesis of this sentence, is instituted between the zeal of Cato for liberty, and the indifference of some others of her patrons. But, besides the leading antithesis, there are two subordinate ones, in the latter member: "Grow tired of it, when they have much to hope: and give it up, when they have nothing to fear."

The eloquent Burke has exhibited a fine instance of this figure, in his eulogium of the philanthropic Howard.

"He has visited all Europe,—not to survey the sumptuousness of palaces, or the stateliness of temples; not to make accurate measurements of the remains of ancient grandeur, nor to form a scale of the curiosity of modern art; nor to collect medals, or collate manuscripts:—but to dive into the depths of dungeons; to plunge into the infection

of hospitals ; to survey the mansions of sorrow and pain ; to take the rage and dimensions of misery, depression, and contempt ; to remember the forgotten, to attend to the neglected, to visit the forsaken, and compare and collate the distresses of all men, in all countries.

The next figure concerning which we are to treat is called *Hyperbole* or *Exaggeration*. It consists in magnifying an object beyond its natural bounds. In all languages, even in common conversation, hyperbolical expressions very frequently occur: as swift as the wind; as white as the snow; and the like; and the common forms of compliment, are almost all of them extravagant hyperboles. If any thing be remarkably good or great in its kind, we are instantly ready to add to it some exaggerating epithet, and to make it the greatest or best we ever saw. The imagination has always a tendency to gratify itself, by magnifying its present object, and carrying it to excess. More or less of this hyperbolical turn will prevail in language, according to the liveliness of imagination among the people who speak it. Hence young people deal much in hyperboles. Hence the language of the Orientals was far more hyperbolical, than that of the Europeans, who are of more phlegmatic, or, perhaps we may say, of more correct imagination. Hence, among all writers in early times, and in the rude periods of society, we may expect this figure to abound. Greater experience, and more cultivated society, abate the warmth of imagination, and chasten the manner of expression.

Hyperboles are of two kinds: either such as are employed in description, or such as are suggested by the warmth of passion. All passions without exception, love, terror, amazement, indignation, and even grief, throw the mind into confusion, aggravate their objects, and of course prompt a hyperbolical style. Hence the following sentiments of Satan in Milton, as strongly as they are described, contain nothing but what is natural and proper; exhibiting the picture of a mind agitated with rage and despair.

Me, miserable! which way shall I fly
 Infinite wrath, and infinite despair?
 Which way I fly to Hell, myself am Hell;
 And in the lowest depth, a lower deep,
 Still threat'ning to devour me, opens wide,
 To which the Hell I suffer seems a Heaven.

The fear of an enemy augments the conceptions of the size of their leader. "I saw their chief," says the scout of Casian, "tall as a rock of ice; his spear, the blasted fir; his shield, the rising moon: he sat on the shore, like a cloud of mist on the hill."

The errors frequent in the use of Hyperboles, arise either from overtraining, or introducing them on unsuitable occasions. Dryden, in his poem on the Restoration of king Charles the Second, compliments that monarch, at the expense of the sun himself.

That star at your birth shone out so bright,
 It stain'd the duller sun's meridian light.

This is indeed mere bombast. It is difficult to ascertain, by any precise rule, the proper measure and boundary of this figure. Good sense and just taste must determine the point, beyond which, if we pass, we become extravagant.

Vision is another figure of speech, which is proper only in animated and warm composition. It is produced when, instead of relating something that is past, we use the present tense, and describe it as actually passing before our eyes. Thus Cicero, in his fourth oration against Catiline: "I seem to myself to behold this city, the ornament of the earth, and the capital of all nations, suddenly involved in one conflagration. I see before me the slaughtered heaps of citizens, lying unburied in the midst of their ruined country. The furious countenance of Cethegus rises to my view, while, with a savage joy, he is triumphing in your miseries."

This manner of description supposes a sort of enthusiasm, which carries the person who describes, in some measure

out of himself; and, when well executed, must needs, by the force of sympathy, impress the reader or hearer very strongly. But, in order to a successful execution, it requires an uncommonly warm imagination, and to happy a selection of circumstances, as shall make us think we see before our eyes the scene that is described.

Interrogation. The unfigured, literal use of interrogation, is to ask a question: but when men are strongly moved, whatever they would affirm or deny, with great earnestness, they naturally put in the form of a question, expressing thereby the strongest confidence of the truth of their own sentiment, and appealing to their hearers for the impossibility of the contrary. Thus Balaam expressed himself to Balak. "The Lord is not a man that he should lie, neither the son of man that he should repent. Hath he said it? and shall he not do it? Hath he spoken it? and shall he not make it good?"

Interrogation gives life and spirit to discourse. We see this in the animated, introductory speech of Cicero against Catiline: "How long will you, Catiline, abuse our patience? Do you not perceive that your designs are discovered?"—He might indeed have said; "You abuse our patience a long while. You must be sensible, that your designs are discovered." But it is easy to perceive, how much this latter mode of expression falls short of the force and vehemence of the former.

Exclamations are the effect of strong emotions of the mind; such as, surprise, admiration, joy, grief, and the like. "Wo is me that I sojourn in Mesech, that I dwell in the tents of Kedar!" *Psalms*.

"O that my head were waters, and mine eyes a fountain of tears, that I might weep day and night, for the slain of the daughter of my people! O that I had in the wilderness a lodging-place of way-faring men!" *Jeremiah*.

Though Interrogations may be introduced into close and earnest reasoning, exclamations belong only to strong emo-

Figures
tions
late th
is exte
them.
The
guage
or nev
sided
enter
deman
Iron
though
our ob
Agence
Cicero
We
would
Iron
which,
the cle
to pure
fully
ironica
"
The
and th
than se
elined
who an
Jeavop
Even i
of it.
of Bea
and sa
or he i
he slee

ions of the mind. When judiciously employed, they agitate the hearer or the reader with similar passions: but it is extremely improper, and sometimes ridiculous, to use them on trivial occasions, and on mean or low subjects. The unexperienced writer often attempts to elevate his language, by the copious display of this figure: but he rarely or never succeeds. He frequently renders his composition frigid to excess, or absolutely ludicrous, by calling on us to enter into his transports, when nothing is said or done to demand emotion.

Irony is expressing ourselves in a manner contrary to our thoughts, not with a view to deceive, but to add force to our observations. Persons may be reproved for their negligence, by saying: "You have taken great care indeed." Cicero says of the person against whom he was pleading; "We have great reason to believe that the modest man would not ask him for his debt, when he pursues his life."

Ironical exhortation is a very agreeable kind of figure; which, after having set the inconveniences of a thing, in the clearest light, concludes with a feigned encouragement to pursue it. Such is that of Horace, when, having beautifully described the noise and tumults of Rome, he adds ironically;

"Go now, and study tuneful verse at Rome."

The subjects of irony are vices and follies of all kinds: and this mode of exposing them, is often more effectual than serious reasoning. The gravest persons have not declined the use of this figure, on proper occasions. The wise and virtuous Socrates made great use of it, in his endeavours to discountenance vicious and foolish practices. Even in the sacred writings, we have a remarkable instance of it. The prophet Elijah, when he challenged the priests of Baal to prove the truth of their deity, "mocked them, and said: Cry aloud, for he is a god: either he is talking, or he is pursuing, or he is in a journey, or peradventure he sleepeth, and must be awaked."

Exclamations and Irony are sometimes united: as in Cicero's oration for Balbus, where he derides his accuser, by saying; "O excellent interpreter of the law! master of antiquity! corrector and amender of our constitution?"

The last figure of speech that we shall mention, is what writers call *Amplification* or *Olimax*. It consists in heightening all the circumstances of an object or action, which we desire to place in a strong light. Cicero gives a lively instance of this figure, when he says; "It is a crime to put a Roman citizen in bonds; it is the height of guilt to scourge him; little less than parricide to put him to death: what name then shall I give to the act of crucifying him?"

Archbishop Tillotson uses this figure very happily, to recommend good and virtuous actions: "After we have practised good actions a while, they become easy; and when they are easy, we begin to take pleasure in them; and when they please us, we do them frequently; and by frequency of acts, a thing grows into a habit; and confirmed habit is a kind of second nature; and so far as any thing is natural, so far it is necessary; and we can hardly do otherwise; nay, we do it many times when we do not think of it."

We shall conclude this article with an example of a beautiful climax, taken from the charge of a judge to the jury, in the case of a woman accused of murdering her own child. "Gentlemen, if one man had any how slain another; if an adversary had killed his opposer, or a woman occasioned the death of her enemy; even these criminals would have been capitally punished by the Cornelian law; but if this guiltless infant, that could make no enemy, had been murdered by its own nurse, what punishment would not then the mother have demanded? With what cries and exclamations would she have stunned your ears! What shall we say then, when a woman, guilty of homicide, a mother, of the murder of her innocent child, hath comprised all those misdeeds in one single crime? a crime, in

Fig
its o
a mo
age c
affect
fano
We
Persp
compe
under
the la
the p
those
pear n
greater
which
clearly
impress
rately,
feels th
in one
compo
The
which
munica
natural
minds
as do m
tage, n
points
we alw
fully m
be occ
course,
strength
For we
selves h

its own nature, detestable; in a woman, prodigious, in a mother, incredible; and perpetrated against one whose age called for compassion, whose near relation claimed affection, and whose innocence deserved the highest favour."

We have now finished what was proposed, concerning Perspicuity in single words and phrases, and the accurate construction of sentences. The former has been considered under the heads of Purity, Propriety, and Precision; and the latter, under those of Clearness, Unity, Strength, and the proper use of Figurative Language. Though many of those attentions which have been recommended, may appear minute, yet their effect upon writing and style, is much greater than might, at first, be imagined. A sentiment which is expressed in accurate language, and in a period, clearly, neatly, and well arranged, always makes a stronger impression on the mind, than one that is expressed inaccurately, or in a feeble or embarrassed manner. Every one feels this upon a comparison; and if the effect be sensible in one sentence, how much more in a whole discourse, or composition that is made up of such sentences?

The fundamental rule for writing with accuracy, and into which all others might be resolved, undoubtedly is, to communicate, in *correct language, and in the clearest and most natural order, the ideas which we mean to transfuse into the minds of others.* Such a selection and arrangement of words, as do most justice to the sense, and express it to most advantage, make an agreeable and strong impression. To these points have tended all the rules which have been given. Did we always think clearly, and were we, at the same time, fully masters of the language in which we write, there would be occasion for few rules. Our sentences would then, of course, acquire all those properties of clearness, unity, strength, and accuracy, which have been recommended. For we may rest assured, that whenever we express ourselves ill, besides the mismanagement of language, there is,

for the most part, some mistake in our manner of conceiving the subject. Embarrassed, obscure, and feeble sentences, are generally, if not always, the result of embarrassed, obscure and feeble thought. Thought and expression act and re-act upon each other. The understanding and language have a strict connexion; and they who are learning to compose and arrange their sentences with accuracy and order, are learning, at the same time, to think with accuracy and order; a consideration which alone will recompense the student, for his attention to this branch of literature. For a further explanation of the Figures of Speech, see the *Outline Grammar*, on this subject.

THE
language
the nat
address
of it, r
literatur
apply th
In for
trations
by a des
at the s
ples of
in some
vating y
fund of
ment ca
and that
anfecble
youth, a
Witho
others fo
them, yo
writer of
an earne
friends to
This co
gross, wi

ADDRESS

TO YOUNG STUDENTS.

THE Compiler of these elements of the English language, hopes it will not be deemed inconsistent with the nature and design of his work, to make a short address to the young persons engaged in the study of it, respecting their future walks in the paths of literature, and the chief purpose to which they should apply their acquisitions.

In forming this Grammar, and the volume of Illustrations connected with it, the author was influenced by a desire to facilitate your progress in learning, and, at the same time, to impress on your minds principles of piety and virtue. He wished also to assist, in some degree, the labours of those who are cultivating your understandings, and providing for you a fund of rational and useful employment; an employment calculated to exclude those frivolous pursuits, and that love of ease and sensual pleasure, which enfeeble and corrupt the minds of many inconsiderate youth, and render them useless to society.

Without your own best exertions, the concern of others for your welfare, will be of little avail: with them, you may fairly promise yourselves success. The writer of this address, therefore, recommends to you, an earnest co-operation with the endeavours of your friends to promote your improvement and happiness. This co-operation, whilst it secures your own progress, will afford you the heart-felt satisfaction, of

knowing that you are cherishing the hopes, and augmenting the pleasures, of those with whom you are connected by the most endearing ties. He recommends to you also, serious and elevated views of the studies in which you may be engaged. Whatever may be your attainments, never allow yourselves to rest satisfied with mere literary acquisitions. Nor with a selfish or contracted application of them. When they advance only the interests of this stage of being, and look not beyond the present transient scene, their influence is circumscribed within a very narrow sphere. The great business of this life is to prepare, and qualify us, for the enjoyment of a better, by cultivating a pure and humble state of mind, and cherishing habits of piety towards God, and benevolence to men. Every thing that promotes or retards this important work, is of great moment to you, and claims your first and most serious attention.

If, then, the cultivation of letters, and an advancement in knowledge, are found to strengthen and enlarge your minds, to purify and exalt your pleasures, and to dispose you to pious and virtuous sentiments and conduct, they produce excellent effects; which, with your best endeavours to improve them, and the Divine blessing superadded, will not fail to render you not only wise and good yourselves, but also the happy instruments of diffusing wisdom, religion, and goodness around you. Thus improved, your acquisitions become handmaids to virtue; and they may eventually serve to increase the rewards, which the Supreme Being has promised to faithful and well-directed exertions, for the promotion of truth and goodness amongst men.

But if you counteract the hopes of your friends, and the tendency of these attainments; if you grow vain of your real or imaginary distinctions, and regard with contempt, the virtuous, unlettered mind; if you suffer yourselves to be absorbed in over-curious or trifling speculations; if your heart and principles be debased and poisoned, by the influence of corrupting and pernicious books, for which no elegance of composition can make amends; if you spend so much of your time in literary engagements, as to make them interfere with higher occupations, and lead you to forget, that pious and benevolent action is the great end of your being; if such be the unhappy misapplication of your acquisitions and advantages,—instead of becoming a blessing to you, they will prove the occasion of greater condemnation; and, in the hour of serious thought, they may excite the painful reflections,—that it would have been better for you, to have remained illiterate and unaspiring; to have been confined to the humblest walks of life; and to have been even hewers of wood and drawers of water all your days.

Contemplating the dangers to which you are exposed, the sorrows and dishonour which accompany talents misapplied, and a course of indolence and folly, may you exert your utmost endeavours to avoid them! Seriously reflecting on the great end for which you were brought into existence; on the bright and encouraging examples of many excellent young persons; and on the mournful deviations of others, who once were promising; may you be so wise as to choose and follow that path, which leads to honour, usefulness, and true enjoyment! This is the morning of your

life, in which pursuit is ardent, and obstacles readily give way to vigour and perseverance. Embrace this favourable season; devote yourselves to the acquisition of knowledge and virtue; and humbly pray to God that he may bless your labours. Often reflect on the advantages you possess, and on the source from whence they are all derived. A lively sense of the privileges and blessings, by which you have been distinguished, will induce you to render to your Heavenly Father, the just returns of gratitude and love: and these fruits of early goodness will be regarded by him as acceptable offerings, and secure to you his favour and protection.

Whatever difficulties and discouragements may be found in resisting the allurements of vice, you may be humbly confident, that Divine assistance will be afforded to all your good and pious resolutions; and that every virtuous effort will have a correspondent reward. You may rest assured too, that all the advantages arising from vicious indulgences, are light and contemptible, as well as exceedingly transient, compared with the substantial enjoyments, the present pleasures, and the future hopes, which result from piety and virtue. The Holy Scriptures assure us, that "The ways of wisdom are ways of pleasantness, and that all her paths are peace:" "that religion has the promise of the life that now is, and of that which is to come:" and that the truly good man, whatever may be the condition allotted to him by Divine Providence, "in all things gives thanks, and rejoices even in tribulation."—Some of these sentiments have been really illustrated by a celebrated poet. The author of the address presents the illus-

tration
virtue
and
piness

"K

V

T

A

W

I

T

An

W

An

The

Lea

Go

For

Ne

Ne

And

Sin

For

And

Will

It po

ration to you, as a striking and beautiful portrait of virtue: with his most cordial wishes, that your hearts and lives may correspond to it; and that your happiness here, may be an earnest of happiness hereafter.

"Know then this truth, (enough for man to know,)

Virtue alone is happiness below.

The only port where human bliss stands still;

And tastes the good, without the fall to ill;

Where only merit constant pay receives,

Is bless'd in what it takes, and what it gives;

The joy unequal'd, if its end it gain;

And if it lose, attended with no pain;

Without satiety, though e'er so bless'd;

And but more relish'd as the more distress'd;

The broadest mirth unfeeling folly wears;

Less pleasing far than virtue's very tears:

Good, from each object, from each place acquir'd;

For ever exercis'd, yet never tir'd;

Never elated, while one man's oppress'd,

Never dejected, while another's bless'd;

And where no wants, no wishes can remain;

Since but to wish more virtue, is to gain.—

For him alone hope leads from goal to goal,

And opens still, and opens on his soul;

'Till lengthen'd on to faith, and unconfin'd,

It pours the bliss that fills up all the mind."

THE END.

